BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

https://archive.org/details/cu31924012536243

DATE DUE

JAN 2 2 2007

GAYLORD PRINTED IN U.S.A.

Cornell University Library
PA 258.B46
Beginner's Greek book,

3 1924 012 536 243 olin

Α Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ
Μ Ν Ξ Ο Π Ρ Σ Τ Υ Φ
Χ Ψ Ω

α α β γ δ ε ζ η θ ι κ λ
μ ν ο π ρ σ (ς) τ υ φ
ψ ω ξ

δς
οστις - indefinite
οσπερ - precise.
οιος - qualitative
οἷος - qualitative

μὲν, δε, — — whereas, one idea always subordinate in thought

Infinitive with article, (articular infinitive corresponds to nominal action and abstract noun corresponds to rest at rest).

Ιησους Χριστος θεου
Υιος Σωτηρ

1 φαίνεται τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγων
2 " " λέγειν

1 He evidently (obviously) speaks the truth.
2. He appears to speak the truth.

Henry Caplan.

PHASED
DETERIORATION

FRAGILE DOES NOT
CIRCULATE

GREEK SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS

EDITED

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, PH.D.

ELIOT PROFESSOR OF GREEK LITERATURE IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

GREEK GRAMMAR. By the Editor.

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK. Prof. Allen R. Benner, Phillips Academy, Andover; and the Editor. $1.25.

BRIEF GREEK SYNTAX. Prof. Louis Bevier, Jr., Rutgers College. $0.90.

GREEK PROSE READER. Prof. F. E. Woodruff, Bowdoin College, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR SCHOOLS. Clarence W. Gleason, Volkmann School, Boston. $0.80.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR COLLEGES. Prof. Edward H. Spieker, Johns Hopkins University. $1.30.

AESCHYLUS. AGAMEMNON. Prof. Paul Shorey, University of Chicago.

AESCHYLUS. PROMETHEUS. Prof. J. E. Harry, University of Cincinnati. $1.50.

ARISTOPHANES. CLOUDS. Dr. L. L. Forman, Cornell University.

DEMOSTHENES. ON THE CROWN. Prof. Milton W. Humphreys, University of Virginia.

EURIPIDES. IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Prof. William N. Bates, University of Pennsylvania. $1.25.

EURIPIDES. MEDEA. Prof. Mortimer Lamson Earle, Columbia University. $1.25.

HERODOTUS. Books VII.–VIII. Prof. Charles Forster Smith and Prof. Arthur Gordon Laird, University of Wisconsin. $1.75.

HOMER. ILIAD. Prof. J. R. S. Sterrett, Cornell University.
BOOKS I.–III. AND SELECTIONS. $1.60. BOOKS I.–III. $1.20.

HOMER. ODYSSEY. Prof. Charles B. Gulick, Harvard University.

LYSIAS. Prof. Charles D. Adams, Dartmouth College. $1.50.

PLATO. APOLOGY AND CRITO. Prof. Isaac Flagg, University of California. $1.40.

PLATO. EUTHYPHRO. Prof. William A. Heidel, Wesleyan University. $1.00.

THEOCRITUS. Prof. Henry R. Fairclough and Prof. Augustus T. Murray, Leland Stanford Jr. University.

THUCYDIDES. Books II.–III. Prof. W. A. Lamberton, University of Pennsylvania. $1.75.

THUCYDIDES. Books VI.–VII. Prof. E. D. Perry, Columbia University.

XENOPHON. ANABASIS. Books I.–IV. Dr. M. W. Mather, late Instructor in Harvard University, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University. $1.50.

XENOPHON. HELLENICA (Selections). Prof. Carleton L. Brownson, College of the City of New York. $1.65.

XENOPHON. MEMORABILIA. Prof. W. W. Baker, Haverford College.

GREEK ARCHAEOLOGY. Prof. Harold N. Fowler, Western Reserve University, and Prof. James R. Wheeler, Columbia University. $2.00.

GREEK LITERATURE. Dr. Wilmer Cave Wright, Bryn Mawr College. $1.50.

GREEK PUBLIC LIFE. Prof. Henry A. Sill, Cornell University.

GREEK RELIGION. Arthur Fairbanks, Ph.D., Litt.D., Director of the Boston Museum of Fine Arts. $1.50.

GREEK SCULPTURE. Prof. Rufus B. Richardson, formerly Director of the American School of Classical Studies, Athens. $1.50.

INTRODUCTION TO THE GREEK DRAMA. William Fenwick Harris, late Assistant Professor in Harvard University.

BEGINNER'S NEW TESTAMENT GREEK BOOK. Prof. William H. P. Hatch, General Theological Seminary, New York.

Others to be announced later.

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

GREEK GRAMMAR. By the Editor.

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK. Prof. Allen R. Benner, Phillips Academy, Andover; and the Editor. $1.25.

BRIEF GREEK SYNTAX. Prof. Louis Bevier, Jr., Rutgers College. $0.90.

GREEK PROSE READER. Prof. F. E. Woodruff, Bowdoin College, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR SCHOOLS. Clarence W. Gleason, Volkmann School, Boston. $0.80.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR COLLEGES. Prof. Edward H. Spieker, Johns Hopkins University. $1.30.

AESCHYLUS. AGAMEMNON. Prof. Paul Shorey, University of Chicago.

AESCHYLUS. PROMETHEUS. Prof. J. E. Harry, University of Cincinnati. $1.50.

ARISTOPHANES. CLOUDS. Dr. L. L. Forman, Cornell University.

DEMOSTHENES. ON THE CROWN. Prof. Milton W. Humphreys, University of Virginia.

EURIPIDES. IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Prof. William N. Bates, University of Pennsylvania. $1.25.

EURIPIDES. MEDEA. Prof. Mortimer Lamson Earle, Columbia University. $1.25.

HERODOTUS. Books VII.–VIII. Prof. Charles Forster Smith and Prof. Arthur Gordon Laird, University of Wisconsin. $1.75.

HOMER. ILIAD. Prof. J. R. S. Sterrett, Cornell University.
BOOKS I.–III. AND SELECTIONS. $1.60. BOOKS I.–III. $1.20.

HOMER. ODYSSEY. Prof. Charles B. Gulick, Harvard University.

LYSIAS. Prof. Charles D. Adams, Dartmouth College. $1.50.

PLATO. APOLOGY AND CRITO. Prof. Isaac Flagg, University of California. $1.40.

PLATO. EUTHYPHRO. Prof. William A. Heidel, Wesleyan University. $1.00.

THEOCRITUS. Prof. Henry R. Fairclough and Prof. Augustus T. Murray, Leland Stanford Jr. University.

THUCYDIDES. Books II.–III. Prof. W. A. Lamberton, University of Pennsylvania. $1.75.

THUCYDIDES. Books VI.–VII. Prof. E. D. Perry, Columbia University.

XENOPHON. ANABASIS. Books I.–IV. Dr. M. W. Mather, late Instructor in Harvard University, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University. $1.50.

XENOPHON. HELLENICA (Selections). Prof. Carleton L. Brownson, College of the City of New York. $1.65.

XENOPHON. MEMORABILIA. Prof. W. W. Baker, Haverford College.

GREEK ARCHAEOLOGY. Prof. Harold N. Fowler, Western Reserve University, and Prof. James R. Wheeler, Columbia University. $2.00.

GREEK LITERATURE. Dr. Wilmer Cave Wright, Bryn Mawr College. $1.50.

GREEK PUBLIC LIFE. Prof. Henry A. Sill, Cornell University.

GREEK RELIGION. Arthur Fairbanks, Ph.D., Litt.D., Director of the Boston Museum of Fine Arts. $1.50.

GREEK SCULPTURE. Prof. Rufus B. Richardson, formerly Director of the American School of Classical Studies, Athens. $1.50.

INTRODUCTION TO THE GREEK DRAMA. William Fenwick Harris, late Assistant Professor in Harvard University.

BEGINNER'S NEW TESTAMENT GREEK BOOK. Prof. William H. P. Hatch, General Theological Seminary, New York.

Others to be announced later.

THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS.
(The "Theseum" in the foreground.)

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK

BY

ALLEN ROGERS BENNER

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN PHILLIPS ACADEMY, ANDOVER

AND

HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, PH.D.

ELIOT PROFESSOR OF GREEK LITERATURE IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

OLIN
PA
258
B46
C. 1

COPYRIGHT, 1906, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK.
W. P. 7

PREFATORY SUGGESTIONS

THIS book contains all the grammar that is needed by beginners in the first year of Greek. It is not at all designed, however, to restrict or to replace the use of a larger Greek Grammar in connection with the study of the *Anabasis* and of Homer. Experience has shown that the systematic (but not merely mechanical) study of grammar is indispensable throughout the preparatory course if the student is to deal successfully with the authors commonly read at a more advanced stage of his education. With the view, therefore, that the larger grammar will be used by the student after his first year, the makers of this book have felt free to limit its contents to the strict essentials of the language. The result has been to eliminate some matters that are usually found in books intended for beginners.

It has been found possible, and in fact advisable, to omit altogether the paradigms of certain infrequent words. Such are nouns and adjectives of the "Attic second declension," rare contract nouns like *ὀστοῦν*, and, in particular, the adjectives *χαρίεις* and *μέλας*. While adjectives in *-εις*, *-εσσα*, *-εν* are usual in Homer, *χαρίεις* alone is relatively common in standard Attic prose, but even there the form *χαρίεσσα* (and *not χαρίεττα*) shows that the word was poetic in character. Of *χαρίεις* there is but one occurrence in the *Anabasis* (iii. 5. 12). A similar case is presented by *μέλας*, which occurs twice in the same work (iv. 5. 13, iv. 5. 15). The only other adjective which is declined like

μέλας, namely the poetic τάλας, does not occur in the *Anabasis* at all. It is obviously inadvisable to impede the beginner's progress by requiring him to memorize paradigms of these and similar words.

In the case of some words which are generally required of beginners, opinions may justly differ. Such words, if omitted from the Lessons of this book, are printed in the Summary of Forms (after the Lessons), out of deference to the opinion of teachers who may wish to use them. The list includes ναῦς, omitted from the Lessons with some hesitation; also κέρας, Ἡρακλῆς, Ζεύς, the verb κάθημαι, and one word not found in the *Anabasis*, νεᾱνίᾱς (for which Ξενίᾱς is substituted in the paradigms of Lesson XII).

The retention of the dual number in the paradigms may be thought inconsistent with the design of a simple book, particularly as first-rate books, like Kaegi's *Kurzgefasste griechische Schulgrammatik*, regularly omit the dual from the paradigms proper. In this book the dual has been retained out of respect to a widespread opinion among American teachers, that since the dual is needed for the study of Homer, it is most economically memorized at the outset. Those teachers, however, who prefer to omit the forms of the dual may readily do so, inasmuch as no instances of its use have been introduced into the exercises.

Regarding the development of the forms of the verb, special attention is called to the fact that the most frequent tenses as well as the tenses adapted to initial study are the present (and imperfect), future, and aorist. Only after these have been in some degree mastered are the perfect tenses introduced in the Lessons.[1] And the per-

[1] Regard to the symmetrical development of the subject has caused the introduction of the comparatively uncommon future passive before the perfect is taken up.

fect itself is much simplified by the omission of some forms which are commonly given in the Grammars (*e.g.* λελύκω, λελύκοιμι), but which rarely occur in the reading of most students. Attention is also called to the early introduction of infinitives and participles and of compound verbs. In the first fifty Lessons the prefix of a compound verb is regularly separated from the verb proper by a hyphen.

In matters of syntax the rule of the Editors has been to give early preference to the most common idioms as far as is possible in a book where precedence must obviously be given to the development of forms. In determining questions of the relative frequency of syntactical usages, the exhaustive work of Joost (*Sprachgebrauch Xenophons in der Anabasis*) has been of great assistance, and the placing of several usages has been settled by it. The Editors wish also to make mention of Bennett and Bristol's manual on *The Teaching of Latin and Greek in the Secondary School*, which they have found suggestive as to the presentation of both forms and syntax.

Certain constructions that are shown by Joost to be comparatively rare in the *Anabasis* are omitted from the Lessons. φθάνω with the participle will serve as an example, a construction regularly set before beginners and invariably difficult to them. Yet this construction occurs but four times in the seven books of the *Anabasis*, and in the first four books only twice (i. 3. 14, iii. 4. 49). Further, these instances are regularly explained, where they occur, in the notes of our best American editions.

A glance at the Table of Contents will show the early prominence given to certain important constructions.

It is suggested that the teacher should not assign the whole Introduction at the outset, but only such parts of

it as are immediately necessary, particularly the alphabet and the subjects of pronunciation and accent. The arrangement in Lessons or Chapters is solely for convenience, to mark divisions of the subject where exercises may properly be introduced. One class may do a whole Chapter, another class may do no more than half a Chapter, for a day's lesson. The ability of the class will therefore determine the length of the lessons, which should be assigned by the numbered sections.

The vocabularies contain only such words as are used by Xenophon, with preference given to the commoner words of the *Anabasis*.

The exercises for translation from English into Greek have been made short designedly. For it is desirable that the teacher should have the class turn the English rendering of the Greek sentences themselves back into Greek without the aid of the book, — an unexcelled method of teaching this part of the subject. Teachers who so desire may omit some sentences if time fails for all. Lessons L to LX have been specially arranged so that the second division of each exercise may be omitted altogether, or may be taken up in connection with review work.

On the completion of the sixty Lessons, the student should be able to translate, without much difficulty, simple Attic prose. Many students will be found competent to begin at once the first Book of Xenophon's *Anabasis*. But if, in the judgment of the teacher, the class is not ripe for this work, a simplified text of the *Anabasis* will make the transition from the Beginner's Book easier.

For the use of such teachers and classes there have been provided the simplified Selections from the *Anabasis* which follow the Greek Lessons in this book. It is hoped that they are so remote from the introductory chapters of

the *Anabasis* as not utterly to spoil the freshness of Xenophon's narrative when the student takes up the original work. On the other hand, they are passages that will well stand re-reading when the student meets them again. All the new words that occur in the Selections will be found in the Vocabulary.

The directions about Greek pronunciation in §§ 1 and 22 are for practical use. As a matter of fact, they are not designed to reproduce, in every particular, the pronunciation of Greek current in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C., — partly because we do not know how every letter was then sounded, and partly because some of the known sounds are too difficult for beginners. Pedantry in pronunciation is an abomination; but every teacher should be at least familiar with the fact that, while most of the pronunciations recommended in this book are approximately those of the period from Pericles to Demosthenes, certain others are distinctly later and concessions to established usage.

Thus a divergence between the ancient and the modern practice of pronunciation is illustrated by the sounds *φ*, *χ*, and *θ*. These letters were anciently pronounced respectively as *ph* in 'u*ph*eaval,' *kh* in 'ba*kkh*and,' and *th* in 'ho*th*ouse'; in Greek, however, both sounds occur in the same syllable. When two aspirates (*φ*, *χ*, *θ*) came together, probably only one *h* (the second) was heard; thus, δίφθογγος was pronounced δίπθογγος (διπτόγγος). Probably not until after 300 A.D. were *φ*, *χ*, and *θ* pronounced as in '*Ph*ilip,' German '*ach*,' and '*th*eater.' The latter are the sounds in modern Greek. *ζ* was probably sounded *zd*, though there is some evidence that it was sounded as *dz*; in Hellenistic times it certainly was equivalent to *z* in '*z*eal,' and is so sounded in modern Greek.

Short *α, ι, υ* differed in sound from the long *α, ι, υ* only in being less prolonged. The vowel *ε* was evidently sounded like French *é*, as in *bonté*. *ω* was not diphthongal like English *ō* (i.e. *o* with a vanishing *u* sound), but rather like *o* in the French *encore*. Greek *ο* was sounded like *o* in French *mot*.

The teacher is urged to make every effort to preserve the proper quantity, which is often disregarded in American pronunciation of Greek; special care is required to prevent an *accented* vowel from being sounded as long when it is short; *e.g.* φίλος may easily be mispronounced *fēlos*, instead of *fĭlos*.

These Lessons are the result of considerable experience in teaching Greek to beginners; and each section has been tested in the class room before it was incorporated in this book.

The Editors gratefully acknowledge the criticisms which they have received from Mr. Horace M. Poynter of Phillips Academy and Mr. Louis E. Lord of Oberlin College, who have read the proof sheets of the Lessons.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Introduction: the alphabet of Attic Greek; pronunciation; accent; Greek words in English; classification of consonants (mutes and liquids); elision; crasis; aspiration; -ν movable; punctuation marks; number; gender; case; voice; mood; tense . . . 17

LESSON

I. Present indicative and infinitive of ω-verbs in the active voice. Recessive accent 29

II. Declension of o-stems. Common constructions. Article as possessive pronoun 31

III. Declension of o-stems (*continued*) 34

IV. Declension of o-stems (*continued and reviewed*). Nouns and adjectives declined together. Attributive position. Predicate position. Attributive phrases. Agreement of verb with neuter plural subject. Position of possessive genitive . 37

V. Imperfect indicative of ω-verbs in the active voice. Augment. Second aorist indicative and infinitive of ω-verbs in the active voice. Article with name of person 40

VI. Declension of ᾱ-stems. Nominatives in -η. Infinitive used as object of verbs meaning *wish, command,* etc. 45

VII. Present indicative and infinitive of εἰμί *I am*. Enclitics. Simple conditions. Predicate substantive without article . . 48

VIII. Simple sentences in indirect discourse after verbs of *saying* (φησί and ἔφη) and *thinking*. Dative with adjectives . 51

IX. Declension of ᾱ-stems (*continued*). Nominatives in -ᾱ. Review of adjectives of the o- and ᾱ-declensions. Adjectives of two endings in -ος, -ον. Dative of possession 54

X. Some pronouns: αὐτός, meanings and uses; ἄλλος, ὅς. Possessive adjectives. Compound verbs. Rules of euphony (applying to σύν and ἐν in composition). Agreement of relative. Dative with compounds 58

XI. Declension of ᾱ-stems (*continued*). Nominatives in -ᾰ. Instrumental dative (*means* and *manner*). Accusative of extent of time or space. Article with name of country . 63

LESSON		PAGE
XII.	Declension of ā-stems (*continued*). Masculines in -ης and -ᾱς. Clauses of result.	66
XIII.	Future indicative and infinitive of ω-verbs in the active voice. Rules of writing and euphony (applying to mute themes): mutes before *sigma*. Genitive of time. Future infinitive in indirect discourse and after μέλλω	69
XIV.	First aorist indicative and infinitive of ω-verbs in the active voice. ἐπεί and ἐπειδή meaning *when* with imperfect or aorist indicative	72
XV.	The demonstrative pronouns. Uses of the demonstratives. Predicate position of the demonstratives. Name of river in attributive position. Partitive genitive. Dative of time. Cognate accusative	75
XVI.	General review. Summary of previous vocabularies. Alpha privative	80
XVII.	Consonant declension. Stems ending in a mute (palatal or labial). μέσος in predicate position	83
XVIII.	Consonant declension (*continued*). Stems ending in a mute (lingual). Genitive of separation	87
XIX.	Declension of present, future, and aorist active participles of the ω-verb. Declension of ὤν. Attributive participles. Substantive participles. Circumstantial participles of time, cause, etc. Supplementary participles with τυγχάνω	91
XX.	Consonant declension (*continued*). Stems ending in a liquid. Declension of adjectives in -ων, -ον. Infinitive with δεῖ, χρή, ἔξεστιν, etc.	98
XXI.	Pronouns (*continued*). The interrogative τίς. The indefinite τις. The indefinite relative ὅστις. The predicate genitive. Infinitive with ἀνάγκη and ὥρᾱ	102
XXII.	The subjunctive (present and aorist) active of ω-verbs. Tenses of the subjunctive. More vivid future conditions. Warning future conditions. Purpose clauses. Hortatory subjunctive	105
XXIII.	Present subjunctive of εἰμί. Uses of the subjunctive (*continued*). Conditional relative sentences: more vivid future	110
XXIV.	The optative (present, future, and aorist) active of ω-verbs. Tenses of the optative. Simple sentences in indirect discourse after verbs that take ὅτι or ὡς *that*	113
XXV.	Present optative of εἰμί. Uses of the optative (*continued*). Potential optative. Less vivid future conditions. Purpose clauses in the secondary sequence	118

LESSON PAGE

XXVI. Consonant declension (*continued*). Stems ending in *sigma*. Adjectives of two endings with stems in -εσ. Potential optative in indirect discourse. Genitive of measure. Accusative of specification 120

XXVII. Declension of stems ending in *iota* or *upsilon* (included under the consonant declension). Adverbial accusative. Attraction of the relative 126

XXVIII. Adjectives of the consonant declension and ᾱ-declension combined. Declension of ἡδύς and πᾶς. Nouns with stems in -ευ or -ου. Omission of the copula. βασιλεύς without the article. πᾶς in predicate position, etc. . 129

XXIX. The imperative active of ω-verbs. Imperative of εἰμί. Tenses of the imperative. Declension of ἐγώ and σύ. Uses of personal pronouns. Accent of successive enclitics. Predicate position of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Prohibitions. ἐπεί and ὅτι causal 133

XXX. The present middle system of ω-verbs. Meanings of the middle voice. Deponent verbs. Dative of association 138

XXXI. Syncopated nouns. Dative of respect 142

XXXII. The second aorist middle and the future middle systems of ω-verbs. Future system of εἰμί. Future participle expressing purpose. ὡς with future participle. Infinitive with adjectives of *fitness* and *ability* 145

XXXIII. Consonant declension (*continued*). Some important irregular nouns. μέγας and πολύς 150

XXXIV. The first aorist middle system of ω-verbs. Indirect questions introduced by the interrogative τίς, the indefinite relative ὅστις, and other interrogative words . . . 153

XXXV. Comparison of adjectives. Declension of comparatives in -ων. Genitive of comparison. Accusative of the *way by which*. Superlative translated by *very* . . . 157

XXXVI. Comparison of adjectives (*continued*). Irregular comparison. Double questions 161

XXXVII. Formation and comparison of adverbs. Irregular adverbs. Genitive after adverbs of place 164

XXXVIII. Reflexive pronouns. The reciprocal pronoun. The indirect reflexive οἷ. Attributive position of the possessive genitive of reflexive pronouns 168

XXXIX. The passive voice of ω-verbs. First aorist passive system. Euphonic laws of mutes before mutes. Declension of

LESSON		PAGE
	participles in *-εἰς*. Deponent passives. Agent expressed by *ὑπό* and genitive. Construction after passive of *λέγω say*	172
XL.	The first future passive system. Present general conditions. Conditional relative protasis in present time. Genitive absolute. Genitive of value. Dative of cause . . .	177
XLI.	The second aorist passive system. Dative of degree of difference	181
XLII.	The second future passive system. Past general conditions. Conditional relative protasis in past time. Imperfect indicative in protasis of past general relative condition .	184
XLIII.	Numerals. Declension of numerals. Article with "round" numbers. Emphatic negations	188
XLIV.	The first perfect and first pluperfect in the active voice. Reduplication. Declension of the perfect participle. Object clauses after verbs of *fearing*. Supplementary participle after verbs of *beginning*, etc.; after verbs of *perception*. Supplementary participle in indirect discourse . . .	192
XLV.	The second perfect and the second pluperfect active. Attic reduplication. Reduplication with *εἰ-*. Supplementary participle with *δῆλός ἐστιν*, etc.	199
XLVI.	The perfect and pluperfect middle and passive of vowel themes. Infinitive with *μέμνημαι remember how*, etc. Dative of agent	202
XLVII.	Perfect middle and passive of mute themes. Euphonic rules: mutes before *μ*. *Sigma* dropped between two consonants	206
XLVIII.	The future perfect middle and passive. Meaning of future perfect. Verbal adjectives in *-τός* and *-τέος*. Dative of agent with verbals in *-τέος*	211
XLIX.	Synopsis of the *ω*-verb. Principal parts of typical verbs. Some common suffixes of nouns and adjectives . . .	215
L.	Contract nouns of the *ᾱ*-declension and of the *ο*-declension. Contract adjectives. The infinitive with the article used as a noun	221
LI.	Contract verbs. Present system of *ποιέω*. Dissyllabic verbs in *-έω*. Two accusatives after verbs of *making, appointing; asking, depriving*. Construction of *δοκέω* . .	224
LII.	Present system of *τῑμάω*. Irregular contract verbs in *-άω*. Infinitive after verbs of *promising, hoping*, and *swearing*. Clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning *while, until*, and *before*	228

LESSON		PAGE
LIII.	Present system of δηλόω. Complex sentences in indirect discourse	233
LIV.	Declension of contract participles. Object clauses introduced by ὅπως. Various idioms	237
LV.	The future and aorist of liquid themes. Some other verbs that contract in the future, including verbs in -ίζω. Unreal suppositions	240
LVI.	The inflection of μι-verbs: ἵστημι, ἐπριάμην, ἔβην, ἀπ-έδρᾱν. Meanings of the tenses and voices of ἵστημι	244
LVII.	The inflection of μι-verbs (*continued*): τίθημι, ἵημι. Deliberative subjunctive. Accusative absolute	249
LVIII.	The inflection of μι-verbs (*continued*): δίδωμι, ἐάλων or ἥλων, ἔγνων	253
LIX.	The inflection of μι-verbs (*continued*): δείκνῡμι, ἔδῡν, κεῖμαι. Wishes	257
LX.	Irregular μι-verbs: εἶμι, φημί, οἶδα, and εἰμί (*completed and reviewed*)	260
	Selections from the *Anabasis*	263
	Summary of Forms	280
	Summary of Syntax	328
	Important Lists	337
	Abbreviations	340
	English-Greek Vocabulary	341
	Greek-English Vocabulary and Index to the Lessons	357
	English Index	391

INTRODUCTION

THE ALPHABET OF ATTIC GREEK

	NAME	FORM *Capitals*	FORM *Small Letters*	SOUND AS IN	LATIN EQUIVALENT
1.	*alpha*	A	*α*	(*ᾱ*) f*a*ther (*ă*) h*a*ha′	a
	beta	B	*β*	*b*oy	b
	gamma	Γ	*γ*	*g*irl	g
	delta	Δ	*δ*	*d*ay	d
	epsilon	E	*ε*	m*e*t	ĕ
	zeta	Z	*ζ*	*z*eal, da*z*e	z
	eta	H	*η*	f*ê*te	ē
	theta	Θ	*θ*	*th*eater	th
	iota	I	*ι*	(*ī*) mach*i*ne (*ĭ*) the first *e* in *e*ternal	i
	kappa	K	*κ*	*k*eep	c
	lambda	Λ	*λ*	*l*ed	l
	mu	M	*μ*	*m*an	m
	nu	N	*ν*	*n*ow	n
	xi	Ξ	*ξ*	a*x*	x
	omicron	O	*ο*	*o*mit	ŏ
	pi	Π	*π*	*p*in	p
	rho	P	*ρ*	*r*un	r
	sigma	Σ	*σ ς*	*s*it	s
	tau	T	*τ*	*t*in	t
	upsilon	Υ	*υ*	Ger. T*ü*r, Fr. t*u*[1]	y
	phi	Φ	*φ*	*Ph*ilip	ph
	chi	X	*χ*	Ger. a*ch*, Scotch lo*ch*	ch
	psi	Ψ	*ψ*	to*ps*y	ps
	omega	Ω	*ω*	v*o*te	ō

[1] The short vowel (*υ*) is less prolonged in sound than the long vowel (*ῡ*).

2. The form ς is used at the end of a word; in other places σ is used.

The capital letters are used as initials of proper names. In current practice they are not used at the beginning of a sentence unless the sentence begins a paragraph or a quotation.

3. There is no separate letter to represent English *h*. But many Greek words begin with this sound, which is indicated by writing a sign called the **rough breathing** over the initial vowel of a word; as ὁρίζων *horizon*. If an initial vowel is not pronounced with *h*, a **smooth breathing** is written over it; as ἀντίθεσις *antithesis*. These breathings are not written over capital letters, but in front of them; as Ὁρίζων, Ἀντίθεσις.

4. Initial ρ regularly has the rough breathing (ῥ = *rh*); as ῥήτωρ *rhetor*.

5. The letter γ is pronounced *ng* when it comes before κ, γ, χ, or ξ. It is then called **gamma nasal**. Thus ἄγκῡρα *anchor*, σφίγξ *sphinx*.

6. **Double consonants**, so called because they unite two sounds in one character, are ζ, which equals [redacted] *dz*; ξ, which equals *ks* (i.e. *x*); and ψ, which equals *ps*.

7. The **vowels** are Α Ε Η Ι Ο Υ Ω; in small letters, α ε η ι ο υ ω. Η (or η) is the long form of Ε (or ε); Ω (or ω) is the long form of Ο (or ο). So this list corresponds to the English: *a e i o u*. The long and short forms of α, ι, and υ are not distinguished by separate characters; but it is usual in grammars to mark these vowels when *long*, thus: ᾱ, ῑ, ῡ. This is the practice in this book.

8. Each Greek word has as many **syllables** as it has separate vowels or diphthongs (§ 22). This rule is the same in Latin also.

9. In dividing a word into syllables a consonant is regularly written after the hyphen; and if there are two or three consonants, they too are written after the hyphen, *provided* they represent a combination which may begin a Greek word. For illustrations see § 11.

a. A group formed of a mute (§ 27) and μ or ν, or $\mu\nu$, belongs after the hyphen; as *πρᾶ-γμα thing.*

10. Greek words may end only in a vowel or in one of these consonants: ν, ρ, ς with ξ and ψ.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

11. Pronounce *aloud* the following words, referring to the table under § 1 for the equivalent English sounds. The English transliterations in the second column may be pronounced like Latin words (except in respect to accent) after the Roman method; *ü* is the Latin *y*.

	TO BE ACCENTED THUS	MEANING
νέ-κταρ	*ne'-ktar*	nectar
δε-σπό-της	*de-spo'-tēs*	despot
πο-τα-μός	*po-ta-mos'*	river
λο-χᾱ-γός	*lo-chā-gos'*	captain
χω-ρί-ον	*chō-ri'-on*	stronghold
φί-λος	*phi'-los*	friend
θε-ός	*the-os'*	god
κώ-μη	*kō'-mē*	village
θά-λατ-τα	*tha'-lat-ta*	sea
ὁ ἀ-νήρ	*ho a-nēr'*	the man
ἡ γυ-νή	*hē gü-nē'*	the woman

	TO BE ACCENTED THUS	MEANING
ἡ-μέ-ρᾱ	*hē-me'-rā*	day
ὑ-ψη-λός	*hü-psē-los'*	lofty
φά-λαγξ	*pha'-langks*	phalanx
ὀ-πι-σθο-φύ-λαξ	*o-pi-stho-phü'-laks*	rear-guard
πε-ζός	*pe-zos'*	afoot
τύ-πτω	*tü'-ptō*	I strike
ἄ-στρον	*a'-stron*	star
Βα-βυ-λών	*Ba-bü-lōn'*	Babylon

ACCENT

12. Most Greek words are written with accents. The **acute accent** is illustrated by the words in the preceding exercise (§ 11). On inspection it will be seen that this accent stands sometimes on the last syllable of a word, sometimes on the last but one, and again on the last but two.

13. When a word having the acute accent on its final syllable is immediately followed by another word, without any intervening mark of punctuation, the accent of the first word is written thus, ` ; this is called the **grave accent**. Thus *ὑψηλὸν χωρίον a lofty stronghold.* The grave accent is written on the last syllable only, and only under the conditions just stated.

14. There is a third common mark of accentuation, called the **circumflex** (ˆ). It may stand on the last syllable of a word, or on the last but one. It may not stand on the last but two, as the acute may. And, what is very important, it may stand only on a *long* vowel or a diphthong (§ 22). Hence, if a vowel has the circumflex accent, no other mark to indicate its quantity is needed or used. Thus *σῖ-τος food.*

15. The last syllable of a word is called the **ultima**; the last but one, the **penult**; and the one before the penult, the **antepenult**.

16. The acute accent may stand on the ultima or the penult or the antepenult. The circumflex accent may stand on the ultima or the penult. The grave accent stands on the ultima only.

17. There are three important rules of accent that must be mastered at the outset, in addition to the principles already stated.

1. The acute accent cannot stand on the antepenult when the ultima is long.

2. The circumflex accent cannot stand on the penult when the ultima is long.

3. When the ultima is short, an accented penult has the circumflex if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong (§ 14).

Illustrations of these rules are provided in §§ 11 and 24.

a. What accent a word has and *where* it stands must be learned with the letters that spell the word itself.

18. Accent means to us a *stress* of the voice, *i.e.* force of utterance. This is also what an accent mark means to the native Greeks of to-day. So far as pronunciation goes, we make no distinction between the acute, the grave, and the circumflex accent. When originally invented and introduced, however, the accent marks interpreted to foreigners the *tone* or *pitch* of the voice in pronouncing syllables. The acute indicated a *higher* pitch; the grave, a *lower* pitch; and the circumflex, a higher followed by a lower pitch of the voice on the same syllable. The spoken language was therefore melodious.

19. When marks of both accent and breathing (§ 3) belong to the same vowel, the accent mark, if acute, follows the breathing; if circumflex, is written directly over the breathing. The accent, like the breathing, is written in front of a capital letter, but over a small one. Thus ἔξω *outside;* ἦσαν *they were;* Ἶρις *Iris.* In the case of a diphthong, both the accent and the breathing must be written over the second vowel. Thus οἶνος *wine.*

a. The mark of diaeresis (¨) indicates a separate pronunciation of two successive vowels. Thus ἰχθΰϊ *to* or *for a fish.*

20. Not all Greek words have accents. There is one small class of monosyllables, called **proclitics**, that are pronounced with the words that follow them and so lack accents of their own. Thus ὁ and ἡ of § 11.

21. There is another class of words, called **enclitics**, that are pronounced with the words that precede them. These, too, usually have no accents of their own. This subject is taken up in §§ 103, 104, 105, 305.

DIPHTHONGS

22. The diphthongs are:

	English Value		English Value
αι	*ai*sle	ηυ	ê (fête) + oo (m*oo*n), pronounced in close succession
ει	v*ei*l	ου	m*oo*n
οι	*oi*l	υι	French h*ui*t, English *we*
αυ	h*ou*se		
ευ	e (met) + oo (m*oo*n), pronounced in close succession		

ᾳ	like simple	ᾱ	}	This *iota*, which is written beneath the other vowel and not pronounced, is called *iota subscript.*
ῃ	" "	η		
ῳ	" "	ω		

With capitals *iota subscript* is written in the same line, but not pronounced. Thus Ἅιδης (*i.e.* ᾄδης) *Hades.*

23. In quantity all diphthongs are long. But final *-οι* and *-αι* are reckoned short in influencing the accent of a penult or antepenult, — thus ἄνθρωποι *men*, and οἶνοι *wines*, — except the adverb οἴκοι *at home* and certain verb forms (§ 253).

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

24. Pronounce aloud the following words, referring to the tables under §§ 1 and 22 for the equivalent English sounds :

βα-σι-λεύς	king	*ἡ-μεῖς*	we
Ζεύς	Zeus	*ἑ-αυ-τοῦ*	of himself
στρά-τευ-μα	army	*παί-ω*	I strike
πλοῖ-ον	boat	*δι-καί-ως*	justly
πο-ρεί-ᾱ	journey	*λε-λυ-κυῖ-α*	having loosed
χείρ	hand	*πο-τα-μῷ*	to *or* for a river
οἶ-νος	wine	*κώ-μῃ*	to *or* for a village
οὗ-τος	this	*ἡ-μέ-ρᾳ*	to *or* for a day
αὐ-τός	self, same	*λύ-ου-σιν*	they loose

GREEK WORDS IN ENGLISH

25. 1. Some scholars prefer to transliterate Greek proper names directly into English. Thus Αἰσχύλος *Aischylos;* Θουκῡδίδης *Thoukydides;* Κλέαρχος *Klearchos;* Ἀλκαῖος *Alkaios;* ὁ Βοιώτιος *the Boiotian.*

2. Others prefer to follow the fashion of the Romans of the Augustan age, and to interpret the Greek names through the Latin equivalents. This has been a long prevailing custom. The table of Latin equivalents for the Greek letters has already been given (§ 1). It must

be supplemented, however, by calling attention to the following letters or combinations:

γ nasal (§ 5) = *n*	but final *-οι* = *ī*	final *-ος* = *us*
αι = *ae*	*ου* = *ū*	" *-ον* = *um*
οι = *oe*	*ει* = *ī* or *ē*	" *-ρος* = *er*

a. At the present time *ει* is often transliterated *ei*, pronounced like *i* in *mine*. Words in *-ειον* are best transliterated *-ēum*; as Θησεῖον *Thesēum*.

26. ILLUSTRATIONS OF TRANSLITERATION THROUGH LATIN INTO ENGLISH

Κῦρος	= *Cyrus*	Αἰσχύλος	= *Aeschylus*
Κλέαρχος	= *Clearchus*	Θουκῡδίδης	= *Thucydides*
Αἰνείᾱς	= *Aenēas* (anglicized)	Ἀλκαῖος	= *Alcaeus*
		Τεῦκρος	= *Teucer*
Δᾱρεῖος	= *Darīus* (anglicized)	Ἀλέξανδρος	= *Alexander*
		Σπερχειός	= *Spercheius* (or *Sperchēus*)
Ἀρταξέρξης	= *Artaxerxes*		
Παρύσατις	= *Parysatis*	Ῥῆσος	= *Rhesus*
Ἰκόνιον	= *Iconium*	Δελφοί	= *Delphi*
ὁ Βοιώτιος	= *the Boeotian*	Σαγγάριος	= *Sangarius*

LIQUIDS AND MUTES (OR STOPS)

27. The following classification of consonants is important, and should be committed to memory:

LIQUIDS, so called from their smoothly "flowing" sounds, are λ μ ν ρ

Mutes (or stops) are so called because they are formed by a position of the organs of the mouth which stops the

passage of the breath, no sound being heard while the closure of these organs continues.

Classes of Mutes	Labial mutes, *i.e.* stops made with the lips (*labium*)	π	β	φ
	Palatal mutes, *i.e.* stops made with the soft palate (*palātum*)	κ	γ	χ
	Lingual or dental mutes, *i.e.* stops made with the tongue (*lingua*) or teeth (*dēns*)	τ	δ	θ

28. Another important classification of these mutes is the following:

Orders of Mutes	Smooth mutes (not aspirated)	π	κ	τ
	Middle mutes	β	γ	δ
	Rough mutes (aspirated)	φ	χ	θ

It will be observed that this table is only another arrangement of the preceding one, the first column of which (§ 27) represents the "smooth" mutes, the second the "middle," and the third the "rough."

ELISION

29. The loss of a final short vowel is called *elision;* it occurs only before a word beginning with a vowel, and is marked by the apostrophe. Thus ἀλλ' ὁ ἀνήρ *but the man* (for ἀλλά), ἡ δ' ἡμέρᾱ *but the day* (for δέ).

a. Elision is often omitted.

b. When a preposition or conjunction suffers elision of the accented vowel, the accent is also lost.

CRASIS

30. Crasis (*κρᾶσις mingling*) is the contraction of a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word with a vowel or diphthong

beginning the following word. Over the syllable resulting from crasis is placed a ᾽, as κἄν for καὶ ἄν *and if*; τἀπιτήδεια for τὰ ἐπιτήδεια *the provisions*.

ASPIRATION

31. A smooth mute (§ 28) is roughened before the rough breathing (§ 3). Thus ἐφ᾽ ἵππου *on horseback* for ἐπ(ὶ) ἵππου; καθήκω *come down* for κατά + ἥκω.

-N MOVABLE

32. The letter ν may be annexed to all words ending in σι, to the third person singular of verbs when this ends in ε, and to ἐστί *is*. In modern practice this -ν (called -ν movable) is used only when the next word begins with a vowel, or at the end of a sentence.

PUNCTUATION MARKS

33. The Greek uses the comma and the period like the English. But the Greek question mark is like the English semicolon (;). For the colon (or semicolon) the Greek uses a point set at the top of the line, thus: Κῦρος·

The English question mark (?) is not used in Greek.

Marks of quotation (" ") are commonly introduced into modern Greek texts. But editors often prefer not to use this modern device; and instead, they begin the first word of the Greek quotation with a capital letter. This is the practice of the translators of the English Bible.

NUMBER

34. The Greek has three numbers: singular and plural, as in Latin and English; and dual, to indicate *two*. In

the oldest Greek (Homer) the dual was common; but it was comparatively little used in the Greek of the fifth and fourth centuries B.C. It will not be used at all in the exercises of this book.

GENDER

35. The Greek has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. Like Latin, Greek makes a formal distinction of gender among objects without life; thus ποταμός *river* is masculine (ὁ), and ἡμέρᾱ *day* is feminine (ἡ).

CASE

36. The Greek has five cases: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative. These cases are used like the corresponding cases in Latin. The Greek has no ablative; and the functions of the Latin ablative are performed in Greek partly by the genitive (of separation) and partly by the dative (locative and instrumental).

VOICE

37. The Greek verb has three voices: active, middle, and passive. The active and passive voices are used as in Latin and English. The uses of the middle voice are explained in §§ 315, 316.

MOOD

38. The Greek verb has four moods, — indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, — besides the infinitive and participle. The uses of these moods are explained and illustrated as they are introduced in the lessons.

TENSE

39. The Greek verb has the following tenses:

PRIMARY

Present:	*I loose* or *I am loosing*
Perfect:	*I have loosed*
Future:	*I shall loose*
Future Perfect:	*I shall have loosed*

SECONDARY

Imperfect:	*I loosed* or *I was loosing*
Aorist:	*I loosed*
Pluperfect:	*I had loosed*

FIG. 1.—Winged Victory inscribing a trophy of armor.

I

PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. RECESSIVE ACCENT

40. The **stem** or **theme** of a Greek verb is the part which carries the permanent meaning; to this stem are joined various suffixes and prefixes to express person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

41. The stem of λύω *I loose* is λῡ- (in some tenses λῠ-). The endings that express different persons, as *I*, *you*, *he*, are joined to this stem in some tenses by means of a **thematic vowel**. In the indicative mood this vowel is *o* before endings that begin with *μ* or *ν*, and *ε* before other letters. It is distinctly seen in the following paradigm (§ 45) in the dual, and first and second persons plural. In other forms of the present indicative the thematic vowel has suffered modification or has coalesced with the personal ending.

42. The theme λῡ + ℅ forms the present tense-stem.

43. The original personal endings (cp. § 639) in the singular of the present indicative are no longer apparent in the forms of the ω-verb. But they will be seen later in the inflection of the μι-verb. In the third person plural λύ-ουσι is for an original λῠ-ο-ντι (λῠ-ο-νσι).

44. Verbs are regularly accented as far from the end as the laws of accent permit (§§ 12–17). Such accent is known as **recessive accent**.

45. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λῡ́-ω *I loose* [1]		λῡ́-ο-μεν *we loose*
2.	λῡ́-εις *you loose*	λῡ́-ε-τον	λῡ́-ε-τε *you loose*
3.	λῡ́-ει *he looses*	λῡ́-ε-τον	λῡ́-ουσι(ν) [2] *they loose*

Present infinitive λῡ́-ειν *to loose*

46. VOCABULARY I

ἄγω: *lead.*
ἁρπάζω: *seize, make booty of, plunder.* Harpy.
ἔχω: *have, hold.*
λείπω: *leave.*
λῡ́ω: *loose, break, destroy.*
πείθω: *persuade.*
πέμπω: *send.*

EXERCISES FOR PRONUNCIATION AND TRANSLATION

47. I. πείθει. λείπω. ἁρπάζομεν. ἄγειν. λείπει. ἔχεις. ἄγουσιν. ἔχομεν. πείθουσι. ἔχω. ἁρπάζετε. πείθειν. λείπουσι. ἄγει. πείθομεν. ἁρπάζω. πέμπουσιν. πέμπετε. ἄγεις. λείπειν. πείθω. ἄγετε. ἁρπάζεις. πέμπει. ἔχετε. λείπομεν. πέμπεις.

II. You [3] leave. I send. He has. We send. I lead. To send. You [3] persuade. You [4] persuade. They seize. He seizes. They have. You [4] leave. We lead. To seize. To have.

---

[1] Or *I am loosing, you are loosing,* etc.
[2] Cp. § 32.
[3] Pl.
[4] Sing.

FIG. 2. — Spearhead (of iron) from Dodona.

II

DECLENSION OF O-STEMS. COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS. ARTICLE AS POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

48.

Sing.	N.	ὁ φίλος *the friend*	ὁ ἵππος *the horse*
	G.	τοῦ φίλου *of the friend*	ἵππου
	D.	τῷ φίλῳ *to* or *for the friend*	ἵππῳ
	A.	τὸν φίλον *the friend*	ἵππον
	V.	— φίλε *friend*	ἵππε
Dual	N. A.[1]	τὼ φίλω	ἵππω
	G. D.	τοῖν φίλοιν	ἵπποιν
Plur.	N.	οἱ φίλοι *the friends*	ἵπποι
	G.	τῶν φίλων *of the friends*	ἵππων
	D.	τοῖς φίλοις *to* or *for the friends*	ἵπποις
	A.	τοὺς φίλους *the friends*	ἵππους
	V.	— φίλοι *friends*	ἵπποι

49.

Sing.	N.	τὸ πεδίον *the plain*	τὸ ἔργον *the work*
	G.	τοῦ πεδίου *of the plain*	ἔργου
	D.	τῷ πεδίῳ *to* or *for the plain*	ἔργῳ
	A.	τὸ πεδίον *the plain*	ἔργον
	V.	— πεδίον *plain*	ἔργον
Dual	N. A.[1]	τὼ πεδίω	ἔργω
	G. D.	τοῖν πεδίοιν	ἔργοιν
Plur.	N.	τὰ πεδία *the plains*	ἔργα
	G.	τῶν πεδίων *of the plains*	ἔργων
	D.	τοῖς πεδίοις *to* or *for the plains*	ἔργοις
	A.	τὰ πεδία *the plains*	ἔργα
	V.	— πεδία *plains*	ἔργα

[1] There is no vocative case of the definite article ὁ *the;* but nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative dual alike. Thus φίλω is nominative, accusative, and vocative dual.

50. φίλος and ἵππος are masculine in gender, and are accordingly accompanied by the masculine form of the article ὁ *the;* πεδίον and ἔργον are neuter, and therefore the neuter article τό *the* is used with them.

51. All neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike, in the three numbers.

52. For the grave accent seen in τὸν φίλον, etc., see § 13.

COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS

These fundamental rules, most of which the student will have already learned in Latin, are sufficiently illustrated, without special examples, in the exercises of this book.

53. *a.* The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

b. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

c. The indirect object of a verb is regularly in the dative case (*to* or *for* dative).

d. The dative is often used to indicate the person interested (*to* or *for* dative, sometimes denoting advantage or disadvantage).

e. But after a verb of motion, *to* is generally expressed by a preposition with the accusative (not by the dative), as πρός *to* with the accusative. See § 55. 6. Cp. Latin *ad.*

f. The genitive case denotes *of* relations. It may be "subjective" (*fuga hostium* the flight of the enemy) or "objective" (*amor patriae* love of fatherland) in Greek as in Latin. It often denotes possession.

g. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

h. A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

i. Adjectives and participles agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns that they modify.

j. A noun in apposition to another noun agrees with it in case.

k. A noun or adjective in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with the subject in case. Adjectives agree also in gender and number.

54. VOCABULARY II

ἐν, prep. with dat. only: *in;* as to accent, proclitic (§ 20).

ἔργον, ου, τό: *work.*

ἵππος, ου, ὁ: *horse.*

λόχος, ου, ὁ: *company* of soldiers.

ὅπλον, ου, τό: *implement;* commonly pl. **ὅπλα, τά**: *arms* of war. See p. 28, Fig. 1.

πεδίον, ου, τό: *plain.*

πρός, prep. with acc.: *to, toward, against.*

φίλος, ου, ὁ: *friend.*

ὁ, gen. **τοῦ**, masc. art.: *the;* **τό**, gen. **τοῦ**, neut. art.: *the.* The forms ὁ (nom. sing.) and οἱ (nom. pl. masc.) are proclitic (§ 20). — The forms of the definite article are often used for **possessive pronouns** of the first, second, or third person, either singular or plural, as suggested by the context, *i.e.* for *my, your* (sing. or pl.), *his, her, our, their.* — In the VOCABULARY ὁ, τό (and the fem. ἡ), placed after a noun, indicate its gender.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

55. I. 1. τοὺς ἵππους λύουσιν. 2. ἄγει τὸν λόχον. 3. πείθομεν τοὺς[1] φίλους. 4. λείπετε[2] τὸ ἔργον;

[1] *our.*

[2] *are you leaving.*

5. ἁρπάζει τοὺς ἵππους. 6. πέμπω τὰ ὅπλα πρὸς τοὺς φίλους. 7. ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις ἔχουσι τοὺς ἵππους. 8. πρὸς τὸ ἔργον ἄγουσι τοὺς λόχους. 9. πέμπει τοὺς φίλους πρὸς τὸ ἔργον. 10. λύει ἵππους τῶν φίλων. 11. οἱ φίλοι ἄγουσι τοὺς ἵππους πρὸς τὰ πεδία. 12. ἔχεις φίλους;

II. In turning English into Greek, *first* compose each sentence aloud in Greek; *next* write it down, taking care to observe the accent and, where necessary, the breathing of each word. Always write the accent of a word before passing to the next word.

Vocabulary for oral practice: friends[1]; we have; horses[1]; the horses[1]; he looses; we leave; to[2] the plain[3]; in the plain[4]; to[5] the friends; he leads; we lead; of the friends; he persuades; the company.[1]

1. We have friends. 2. He-is-loosing[6] the horses. 3. We leave our[7] horses in the plain. 4. He leads horses to[5] his[7] friends. 5. We lead horses of our[7] friends. 6. He persuades his friends. 7. He leads his company.

III

DECLENSION OF O-STEMS (*Continued*)

56.

Sing.	N.	ποταμός, ὁ, *river*	ἄνθρωπος, ὁ, *man*
	G.	ποταμοῦ	ἀνθρώπου
	D.	ποταμῷ	ἀνθρώπῳ
	A.	ποταμόν	ἄνθρωπον
	V.	ποταμέ	ἄνθρωπε

[1] Acc.
[2] *Or* for.
[3] Two words only.
[4] ἐν with dat.
[5] πρός.
[6] = looses.
[7] = the.

Dual N. A. V.	ποταμώ	ἀνθρώπω
G. D.	ποταμοῖν	ἀνθρώποιν
Plur. N. V.	ποταμοί	ἄνθρωποι
G.	ποταμῶν	ἀνθρώπων
D.	ποταμοῖς	ἀνθρώποις
A.	ποταμούς	ἀνθρώπους

57. The accent of the nominative case must be learned by observation (§ 17. *a*).

58. A long ultima (§ 15) in the genitive or dative case, if accented, receives the circumflex accent. Thus *ποταμοῦ*.

59. In the declension of a noun the accent is kept, if possible, on the syllable on which it rests in the nominative case; but if in the nominative the acute accent rests on the antepenult, as in *ἄνθρωπος*, a long ultima in other cases draws the accent forward (§ 17. 1) one syllable. Thus *ἀνθρώπου*.

For the short ultima of *ἄνθρωποι* see § 23.

60.

Sing. N.	οἶνος, ὁ, *wine*	πλοῖον, τό, *boat*
G.	οἴνου	πλοίου
D.	οἴνῳ	πλοίῳ
A.	οἶνον	πλοῖον
V.	οἶνε	πλοῖον
Dual N. A. V.	οἴνω	πλοίω
G. D.	οἴνοιν	πλοίοιν
Plur. N. V.	οἶνοι	πλοῖα
G.	οἴνων	πλοίων
D.	οἴνοις	πλοίοις
A.	οἴνους	πλοῖα

61. While the tendency of the accent is to remain the same as in the nominative case, a circumflex accent on the penult of the nominative must be changed to the acute on the penult of those cases that have the ultima long (§ 17. 2). Thus *οἶνος*, *οἴνου*.

62. VOCABULARY III

ἀγαθός (declined like **ποταμός**), masc. adj., neut. **ἀγαθόν** (declined like **πλοῖον**, except the accent): *good, brave.*

ἄνθρωπος, ου, ὁ: *man.* **Philanthropy** (**φίλος**).

ἄπορος (declined like **ἄνθρωπος**), masc. and fem. adj., neut. **ἄπορον**: *impassable.*

ἦν, 3 sing. impf.: *he* (*she* or *it*) *was.*

ἦσαν, 3 pl. impf.: *they were.*

καί, conj.: *and, also.* **καί . . . καί**: *both . . . and.*

οἶνος, ου, ὁ: *wine.*

πλοῖον, ου, τό: *boat.*

ποταμός, οῦ, ὁ: *river.* **Hippopotamus** (**ἵππος**).

στρατηγός, οῦ, ὁ: *general.*

σύν, prep. with dat. only: *with, with the aid of.*

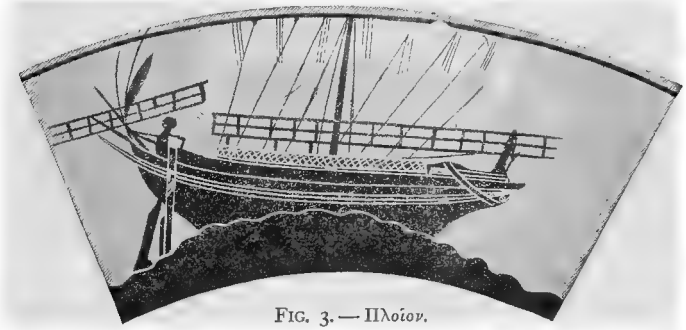

FIG. 3. — Πλοῖον.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

63. I. 1. *ἄγει τὸν ἵππον πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν.* 2. *ὁ ποταμὸς ἁρπάζει τὰ ὅπλα.* 3. *ἔχει καὶ πλοῖα καὶ οἶνον.* 4. *πέμπει οἶνον τῷ φίλῳ.*[1] 5. *πείθομεν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.* 6. *λύει ἵππους τῶν ἀνθρώπων.* 7. *σὺν τοῖς φίλοις ἁρπάζει τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ὅπλα.* 8. *ὁ φίλος ἦν ἀγαθός.* 9. *ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν ἄπορος.* 10. *λείπετε*

[1] The dative is sometimes used with **πέμπω** instead of **πρός** with the accusative, when there is the further idea of advantage — *for* his friend, § 53. *d.*

τὰ πλοῖα; 11. ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις ἦσαν οἱ στρατηγοί. 12. ἔχεις οἶνον τοῖς ἀνθρώποις;

II. 1. The men have boats and horses. 2. He has wine in his[1] boat. 3. Are you unhitching[2] the horses for your friends? 4. They have good horses. 5. The men were brave. 6. The company[3] was brave. 7. They lead the men to the river.

IV

DECLENSION OF O-STEMS (*Continued and Reviewed*). NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES DECLINED TOGETHER. ATTRIBUTIVE POSITION. PREDICATE POSITION. ATTRIBUTIVE PHRASES. AGREEMENT OF VERB WITH NEUTER PLURAL SUBJECT. POSITION OF POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

64. Sing. N. **ὁ ἀγαθὸς λοχᾱγός** *the brave captain*
G. **τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ λοχᾱγοῦ** *of the brave captain*
D. **τῷ ἀγαθῷ λοχᾱγῷ** *to* or *for the brave captain*
A. **τὸν ἀγαθὸν λοχᾱγόν** *the brave captain*
V. **ὦ ἀγαθὲ λοχᾱγέ** *O brave captain*

Plur. N. **οἱ ἀγαθοὶ λοχᾱγοί** *the brave captains*
G. **τῶν ἀγαθῶν λοχᾱγῶν** *of the brave captains*
D. **τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς λοχᾱγοῖς** *to* or *for the brave captains*
A. **τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς λοχᾱγούς** *the brave captains*
V. **ὦ ἀγαθοὶ λοχᾱγοί** *O brave captains*

The dual need not be included in these paradigms for practice.

---

[1] = the. [2] *i.e.* loosing. [3] of soldiers.

65.

Sing.	N.	ποταμὸς ἄπορος *an impassable river*
	G.	ποταμοῦ ἀπόρου
	D.	ποταμῷ ἀπόρῳ
	A.	ποταμὸν ἄπορον
	V.	ποταμὲ ἄπορε
Pl.	N. V.	ποταμοὶ ἄποροι
	G.	ποταμῶν ἀπόρων
	D.	ποταμοῖς ἀπόροις
	A.	ποταμοὺς ἀπόρους

66.

Sing.	N. A. V.	χωρίον ἀφύλακτον *an unguarded stronghold*
	G.	χωρίου ἀφυλάκτου
	D.	χωρίῳ ἀφυλάκτῳ
Plur.	N. A. V.	χωρία ἀφύλακτα
	G.	χωρίων ἀφυλάκτων
	D.	χωρίοις ἀφυλάκτοις

Decline also τὸ ἀφύλακτον χωρίον *the unguarded stronghold.*

67. Attributive position of adjectives. — When an adjective is used with the definite article and a noun, as in the expression *the brave captain*, the adjective commonly stands between the article and the noun in Greek as in English (cp. the paradigm, § 64). But it may follow the noun, in which case the article must be repeated before it: ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ὁ ἀγαθός *the brave captain.*

a. Least frequently of all, the first article is omitted: λοχᾱγὸς ὁ ἀγαθός *the brave captain.*

68. Predicate position of adjectives. — If the adjective precedes the article, or follows the article and the noun *without* repetition of the article, it stands in a predicate relation to the noun which it modifies; *i.e.* a verb is expressed or understood between the noun and the adjective.

69. SUMMARY WITH EXAMPLES

Attributive position	**ὁ ἀγαθὸς λοχᾱγός,** (less frequently) **ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ὁ ἀγαθός,** (least frequently) **λοχᾱγὸς ὁ ἀγαθός,**	*the brave captain*
Predicate position	**ἀγαθὸς ὁ λοχᾱγός** *brave [is] the captain*	
	ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ἀγαθός *the captain [is] brave*	

70. Attributive phrases. — A prepositional phrase or an adverb may be used like an adjective in the attributive position:

οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ ἄνθρωποι the men in the stronghold.

a. In this phrase the word for *men* may be omitted without affecting the sense:

οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ the men (*or* those) in the stronghold.

b. Similarly the noun is omitted in other phrases:

οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ the men with Cyrus;
τὰ Κύρου the affairs of Cyrus.

71. Agreement of verb with neuter plural subject. — A subject in the neuter plural commonly takes a singular verb:

πλοῖα ἦν there were boats.

72. Position of possessive genitive. — The genitive denoting possession commonly stands in the attributive position:

οἱ Κύρου λοχᾱγοί the captains of Cyrus.

73. VOCABULARY IV

ἀ-φύλακτος (declined like **ἄνθρωπος** and **ἄπορος**), masc. and fem. adj., neut. **ἀφύλακτον**: *unguarded.*

Κῦρος, ου, ὁ: *Cyrus.*

λοχᾱγός, οῦ, ὁ: *captain* (cp. **λόχος** and **ἄγω**).

σῖτος, ου, ὁ: *grain, food.* In the pl. the declension irregularly changes to neut. **τὰ σῖτα.**

χωρίον, ου, τό: *place, stronghold.*

ὦ, interj.: *O*, often preceding the vocative case.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

74. I. 1. τὸ χωρίον ἦν ἀφύλακτον. 2. οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ[1] ἄγουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον πρὸς ποταμὸν ἄπορον. 3. τὰ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ σῖτα ἦν[2] ἀγαθά. 4. πέμπομεν οἶνον ἀγαθὸν πρὸς Κῦρον. 5. οἱ ποταμοὶ ἦσαν ἄποροι. 6. καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ἦν ἀφύλακτα. 7. λείπουσι τὰ πλοῖα ἀφύλακτα.[3] 8. ὦ ἀγαθοὶ στρατηγοί, πέμπετε πλοῖα; 9. ἐν τῷ ἀφυλάκτῳ χωρίῳ ἦσαν ἄνθρωποι ἀγαθοί. 10. καὶ οἱ Κύρου λοχᾱγοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 11. ἁρπάζουσι τὸ ἀφύλακτον χωρίον. 12. ἔχομεν λόχους ἀγαθούς.

II. 1. The river was impassable. 2. The good men are-sending[4] food. 3. The men with Cyrus were brave. 4. And the boats were unguarded. 5. We leave the boats unguarded. 6. We have good wine.

V

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. AUGMENT. SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE. ARTICLE WITH NAME OF PERSON

75. The inflection of the imperfect tense of verbs whose themes end in a vowel (as λῡ́-ω) shows distinctly the theme or stem (*e.g.* λῡ), the thematic vowel (ο or ε), and the personal endings (-ν, -ς, etc.) throughout (see § 41). But there is no personal ending in the third singular; this applies to all secondary tenses (§ 39).

---

[1] See § 70. *b*.
[2] See § 71.
[3] Not *the unguarded boats*, but *the boats unguarded*.
[4] = send.

76. The imperfect tense stem of λύω, like the present, is λῡ%.

77. The imperfect, in common with the other secondary tenses of the indicative mood, has a prefix or increase at the beginning of the theme, known as the **augment.**

1. *Syllabic augment.* — If the theme begins with a consonant, the vowel *epsilon* (ἐ) is commonly prefixed to the secondary tenses.

2. *Temporal augment.* — But if the theme begins with a vowel, that vowel is lengthened in the secondary tenses thus:

α	becomes	η	αι	becomes	ῃ
ε	"	η	ᾳ	"	ῃ
ο	"	ω	αυ	"	ηυ
ι	"	ῑ	οι	"	ῳ
υ	"	ῡ			

78. ευ becomes ηυ or remains ευ; ει becomes η or remains ει. A verb beginning with a long vowel or with ου is not augmented.

79. A verb beginning with ῥ doubles this letter after the augment. Thus ῥίπτω *hurl*, impf. ἔρριπτον.

80. The imperfect indicative of ἔχω is εἶχον *I had*, with apparently irregular augment.

81. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λύω

Sing. 1. ἔ-λῡ-ο-ν *I was loosing* or *I loosed*
2. ἔ-λῡ-ε-ς *you were loosing* or *you loosed*
3. ἔ-λῡ-ε(ν)[1] *he was loosing* or *he loosed*

Dual 2. ἐ-λύ-ε-τον
3. ἐ-λῡ-έ-την

Plur. 1. ἐ-λύ-ο-μεν *we were loosing* or *we loosed*
2. ἐ-λύ-ε-τε *you were loosing* or *you loosed*
3. ἔ-λῡ-ο-ν *they were loosing* or *they loosed*

[1] Cp. § 32.

82. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ἄγω

Sing.	1.	ἦγ-ο-ν *I was leading* or *I led*
	2.	ἦγ-ε-ς *you were leading* or *you led*
	3.	ἦγ-ε(ν)[1] *he was leading* or *he led*
Dual	2.	ἤγ-ε-τον
	3.	ἠγ-έ-την
Plur.	1.	ἤγ-ο-μεν *we were leading* or *we led*
	2.	ἤγ-ε-τε *you were leading* or *you led*
	3.	ἦγ-ο-ν *they were leading* or *they led*

SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE[2]

83. It has already been shown (§ 76) that the imperfect is formed on the same stem as the present tense. There is another tense, belonging to *some* verbs, which is inflected exactly like the imperfect, and differs in the form of the *theme* only. This is called the **second aorist.** It usually exhibits the theme of the verb in its simplest form. Thus λείπω *leave*, imperfect ἔ-λειπ-ον, has a second aorist ἔ-λιπ-ον, inflected in § 85. λύω has no second aorist.

84. Meaning of the aorist indicative and infinitive. — The aorist indicative expresses a simple act (*i.e.* not continued or repeated) in past time.

a. The aorist infinitive, like the aorist indicative, denotes a simple act (*i.e.* not continued or repeated); but unlike the

---

[1] Cp. § 32.

[2] The second aorist is so called in distinction from the first aorist, which is to be learned in Lesson XIV. The second aorist is introduced here on account of its similarity in inflection to the imperfect, as well as on account of its frequent use.

aorist indicative, the aorist infinitive does not necessarily refer to past time.[1] It differs from the present infinitive in the *kind* of action only (cp. § 85).

85. SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν *I left*		ἐ-λίπ-ο-μεν *we left*
2.	ἔ-λιπ-ε-ς *you left*	ἐ-λίπ-ε-τον	ἐ-λίπ-ε-τε *you left*
3.	ἔ-λιπ-ε(ν) *he left*	ἐ-λιπ-έ-την	ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν *they left*

Second aorist infinitive λιπ-εῖν *to leave*, the simple act; while the present infinitive λείπειν may mean *to be leaving* or *to keep leaving* as well as *to leave*.

a. The accent of the second aorist infinitive is not recessive (§ 44), but placed irregularly on the ultima.

b. The infinitive is not augmented (cp. § 77).

86. The verb ἄγω, which shows the theme in its simplest form in the present, has a peculiar reduplicated second aorist, with augment (§ 87).

87. SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ἄγω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ἤγ-αγ-ο-ν *I led*		ἠγ-άγ-ο-μεν
2.	ἤγ-αγ-ε-ς	ἠγ-άγ-ε-τον	ἠγ-άγ-ε-τε
3.	ἤγ-αγ-ε(ν)	ἠγ-αγ-έ-την	ἦγ-αγ-ο-ν

Second aorist infinitive ἀγ-αγ-εῖν *to lead*, the simple act

88. The second aorist indicative of ἔχω is ἔσχον *I got*, infinitive σχεῖν.

89. The name of a **person** may take the article if the person is well known or has been previously mentioned. It is usually not to be translated:

ὁ Κῦρος Cyrus.

[1] Except in the construction of indirect discourse, to be studied later (§ 110).

90. VOCABULARY V

ἀλλά, conj.: *but;* sometimes in an address, *well!* Final **α** may be elided before a vowel, thus **ἀλλ'**.

δέ, postpositive[1] conj.: *and, but,* weaker than **ἀλλά**. Final **ε** may be elided before a vowel, thus **δ'**.

εἰς, proclitic prep. with acc. only: *into, to.* Cp. **πρός** *to.*

ἐκ, proclitic prep. with gen. only: *out of, from;* before a vowel, **ἐξ**.

Κλέαρχος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *Clearchus.*

λαμβάνω (theme **λαβ-**, lengthened in pres. and impf.), impf. **ἐλάμβανον**, 2 aor. **ἔλαβον**, *take, receive, enlist.*

παλτόν, **οῦ**, **τό**: *javelin.*

φεύγω, impf. **ἔφευγον**, 2 aor. **ἔφυγον**: *flee, flee from, avoid, shun.* Cp. Lat. *fugiō.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

91. I. *ἥρπαζες, ἥρπαζον, ἐλείπετε, ἐλίπετε, ἐπέμπομεν, ἔπειθε, εἶχε,*[2] *ἔσχεν,*[3] *ἠγάγετε, ἦγεν, ἔλῡον, ἐπείθομεν, ἔπεμπες, ἐλαμβάνομεν, φυγεῖν, ἔφευγε, ἐλάβετε.*

II. He was leading. He led. We were plundering. You[4] left. He had. He was fleeing. He fled. You took.[5] They persuaded. They were sending. We loosed. To flee.[6]

92. I. 1. *ἐπέμπομεν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἰς τὸ πεδίον.* 2. *ἐλείπομεν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.* 3. *ἤγομεν τοὺς σὺν Κύρῳ πρὸς τὸ πεδίον.* 4. *ἀλλ', ὦ Κῦρε, πέμπεις τὰ σῖτα;* 5. *ὁ Κῦρος ἔπειθε τοὺς φίλους.* 6. *ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἤγαγε τοὺς ἵππους εἰς τὸ πεδίον.* 7. *Κλέαρχος ἔλιπε τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἔλαβε τὰ*

---

[1] A postpositive word cannot begin a sentence, but must follow one or more words.

[2] § 80. [3] § 88. [4] Pl. [5] Aor. or impf. [6] Use both pres. and 2 aor.

παλτά. 8. οἱ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἔφυγον ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 9. οἱ δὲ λοχᾱγοὶ ἦσαν ἀγαθοί.

II. 1. But the captain was brave. 2. We took the grain from the stronghold. 3. He fled into the plain. 4. Cyrus used-to-send[1] wine to his friends.[2] 5. They kept-taking[1] the strongholds.

VI

DECLENSION OF Ā-STEMS. INFINITIVE USED AS OBJECT OF VERBS MEANING *WISH, COMMAND,* ETC.

NOMINATIVES IN -η

93.

Sing.	N.	ἡ μάχη *the battle*	ἡ ἀρχή *the beginning*[3]
	G.	τῆς μάχης *of the battle*	ἀρχῆς
	D.	τῇ μάχῃ *to* or *for the battle*	ἀρχῇ
	A.	τὴν μάχην *the battle*	ἀρχήν
	V.	— μάχη *battle*	ἀρχή
Dual	N. A. V.	—[4] μάχᾱ	ἀρχᾱ́
	G. D.	— μάχαιν	ἀρχαῖν
Plur.	N.	αἱ μάχαι *the battles*	ἀρχαί
	G.	τῶν μαχῶν *of the battles*	ἀρχῶν
	D.	ταῖς μάχαις *to* or *for the battles*	ἀρχαῖς
	A.	τᾱ́ς μάχᾱς *the battles*	ἀρχᾱ́ς
	V.	— μάχαι *battles*	ἀρχαί

94. See the rules for accent in §§ 57, 58.

---

[1] = impf. [2] § 63. I. 4. [3] Or *province, empire.*

[4] There are no separate feminine dual forms of the article; the masculine forms (τώ, τοῖν) are used instead.

95. A special rule of accent that belongs to all words of the **ā**-declension is this: The genitive plural is always accented with the circumflex on the ultima.

96.

Sing.	N. V.	κώμη καλή *a beautiful village*
	G.	κώμης καλῆς
	D.	κώμῃ καλῇ
	A.	κώμην καλήν
Dual	N. A. V.	κώμᾱ καλᾱ́
	G. D.	κώμαιν καλαῖν
Plur.	N. V.	κῶμαι καλαί
	G.	κωμῶν καλῶν
	D.	κώμαις καλαῖς
	A.	κώμᾱς καλᾱ́ς

97. For the short final *-αι* as in *κῶμαι* see § 23, and compare *οἶνοι* (§ 60).

98. The **infinitive**, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs meaning *wish, command, hinder, persuade*, and the like. The negative with the infinitive is *μή*:

τοὺς λοχᾱγοὺς κελεύει μὴ φυγεῖν he commands the captains not to flee.

99. VOCABULARY VI

ἀρχή, ῆς, ἡ: *beginning, rule, province, empire.*

ἐθέλω, impf. **ἤθελον**: *wish, desire.*

ἐνταῦθα, adv.: *there.*

ἡ, fem. art.: *the*; proclitic (§ 20) in nom. sing. and nom. pl. αἱ. Cp. ὁ and τό. **ἡ δέ**: *and she, but she*, indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. ἡ may mean *she*, but only with μέν and δέ.

κακός, masc. adj., fem. **κακή**, neut. **κακόν**: *bad, cowardly.*

καλός, masc. adj., fem. **καλή**, neut. **καλόν**: *beautiful, handsome, noble, honorable.*

κελεύω, impf. **ἐκέλευον**: *command, bid, order.*

κώμη, ης, ἡ: *village.*

μάχη, ης, ἡ: *battle, fight.*

μέν, postpositive particle, used with a word or clause that is contrasted with a following word (in another clause) or a second clause. The second word or clause often has **δέ**, which is sometimes replaced by another conjunction. **μέν** sometimes means *on the one hand;* but more often it is to be omitted in translation. **ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ**: *the one . . . the other;* **οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ**: *some . . . others.* See **δέ** (§ 90).

μεστός, masc. adj., fem. **μεστή**, neut. **μεστόν**: *full,* with gen.

μή, neg. adv.: *not,* with inf. and in other uses to be described later.

ὁ δέ: *and he, but he,* indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. **ὁ** may mean *he,* but only with **μέν** and **δέ**.

οὐ, proclitic neg. adv.: *not;* before a vowel with smooth breathing, written **οὐκ**; before a rough breathing, **οὐχ**. At the end of a sentence, **οὔ**.

σκηνή, ῆς, ἡ: *tent.*

φυλακή, ῆς, ἡ: *guard, garrison.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

100. I. 1. πέμπει Κῦρον εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν. 2. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος οὐκ εἶχε φυλακήν. 3. οὐχ ἁρπάζει τὰς καλὰς κώμας. 4. πρὸς τὰς σκηνὰς ἔφυγον. 5. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἤθελε λείπειν τὸν ἵππον. 6. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἔσχον σῖτα. 7. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. 8. καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἀγαγεῖν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς εἰς τὴν σκηνήν. 9. οἱ καλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ[1] ἦσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ. 10. ἡ δ' ἔφυγεν εἰς τὴν καλὴν κώμην. 11. ἔπειθον τοὺς λοχαγοὺς μὴ λείπειν ἀφύλακτον τὸ χωρίον. 12. οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ λοχαγοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, οἱ δὲ κακοὶ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ.

II. 1. In the battle were noble and brave men. 2. Cyrus ordered his generals to enlist[2] brave men. 3. We do not

[1] Understand *men.*

[2] = to take.

wish our friends to flee out of the fight. 4. The generals[1] were brave, but the captains were cowardly. 5. He orders the men with Cyrus[2] not to flee.

VII

PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF εἰμί *I am*. ENCLITICS. SIMPLE CONDITIONS. PREDICATE SUBSTANTIVE WITHOUT ARTICLE

101. PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF εἰμί *I am*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	εἰμί *I am*		ἐσμέν *we are*
2.	εἶ *you are*	ἐστόν	ἐστέ *you are*
3.	ἐστί(ν)[3] *he is*	ἐστόν	εἰσί(ν)[3] *they are*

Infinitive εἶναι *to be*

a. All these forms except εἶ and εἶναι are enclitic (§ 21).

102. ἔστι(ν) is thus accented when it means *is*, i.e. *exists*, or *is possible;* at the beginning of a sentence; and after καί, ἀλλά, οὐκ, μή, and εἰ (*if*).

HOW THE ENCLITIC AFFECTS THE ACCENT OF THE PRECEDING WORD

103. 1. If the preceding word naturally has an acute on the ultima, that accent is retained, and any enclitic loses its accent:

καλός τε καὶ ἀγαθός both handsome and good (for τε see the vocabulary of this lesson);
ἀγαθός ἐστιν he is good.

---

[1] οἱ μὲν στρατηγοί (cp. I. 12). [2] § 70. *b*. [3] Cp. § 32.

2. If the preceding word has an acute on the penult, its accent is not affected in any way. *Then* a monosyllabic enclitic, as usual, loses its accent; but *a dissyllabic enclitic retains its accent:*

πεδία τε καὶ ποταμοί both plains and rivers;
τὰ πεδία ἐστὶ καλά the plains are beautiful (for the singular verb see § 71).

3. If the preceding word has an acute on the antepenult, it receives an additional acute on its ultima from the following enclitic, which loses its accent:

ἄπορός τε καὶ ἀδιάβατος both pathless and impassable;
ὁ ἄνθρωπός ἐστι κακός the man is cowardly.

4. If the preceding word has a circumflex on the ultima, its accent is not affected in any way, and any enclitic loses its accent (cp. 1):

καλῶν τε καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἐστιν it is [the part] of noble and brave men.

5. If the preceding word has a circumflex on the penult, it receives an additional accent — the acute on its ultima — from the following enclitic, which loses its accent (cp. 3):

κῶμαί τε καὶ πεδία both villages and plains;
κῶμαί εἰσιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ villages are in the plain.

104. Observe that the monosyllabic enclitic regularly loses its accent. The dissyllabic enclitic retains its accent only under condition 2 above.

105. A proclitic (§ 20) followed by an enclitic receives an acute accent:

οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχᾱγοί both the generals and the captains.

106. Simple conditions. — A supposition that assumes a fact without in any way implying its truth or falsity is expressed by εἰ *if* and the appropriate tense of the indica-

tive mood. This is commonly called the *Simple Present Condition*, or, if in past time, the *Simple Past Condition*. The conclusion may be any verb form whatsoever that is required by the sense.

a. The *if* clause is called the *protasis;* the conclusion is called the *apodosis.*

b. The negative, if required with the protasis, is μή; with the apodosis, οὐ.

εἰ φεύγει, οὐκ ἔστιν ἀγαθός *if he is fleeing, he is not brave* is a simple present condition.

εἰ ἔφυγεν, οὐκ ἦν ἀγαθός *if he fled, he was not brave* is a simple past condition.

107. A **predicate substantive** (§ 53. *k*) usually lacks the article:

στρατηγὸς ἦν ὁ Κῦρος Cyrus was general.

108. VOCABULARY VII

ἀδιάβατος, masc. and fem., neut. **ἀδιάβατον**: *not to be crossed, impassable.*

εἰ, proclitic conj.: *if.*

εἰμί: *I am.* **ἔστι(ν)**: *it is possible.* **ἦν**: *it was possible.*

θεός, οὗ, ὁ: *god;* **ἡ**: *goddess.* Theology (**λόγος** *discourse*).

κωλύω, impf. **ἐκώλῡον**: *hinder.*

οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ), used in interrogative sentence: *not;* expects the answer *yes.* Cp. Lat. *nōnne.*

πεζός, fem. **πεζή**, neut. **πεζόν**: *afoot, on foot;* **οἱ πεζοί**: *the infantry.*

τε, enclitic conj.: *and.* **τε . . . καί**: *both . . . and.*

φόβος, ου, ὁ: *fear.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

109. I. 1. αἱ κῶμαί εἰσι μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. 2. ἡ δ' ἀρχή ἐστι μεστὴ καλῶν τε καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἀνθρώπων. 3. οἱ ποταμοί εἰσιν ἀδιάβατοι, εἴ τις[1] κωλύει. 4. ἤθελον[2] τοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἶναι καλούς τε καὶ ἀγα-

[1] *anybody,* enclitic.

[2] Either 1 sing. or 3 pl.

θούς. 5. ἐκελεύομεν τοὺς σὺν Κύρῳ μὴ λιπεῖν τοὺς ἵππους. 6. εἰ μὴ ἦγαγε τοὺς ἵππους, οὐκ ἔστιν ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος. 7. οὐκ ἐπέμπετε τοὺς λοχᾱγοὺς πρὸς Κῦρον; 8. ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν ἁρπάζουσι τὰ σῖτά τε καὶ τὸν οἶνον. 9. καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοί ἐσμεν. 10. εἰ ἦγε τοὺς πεζοὺς εἰς τὴν μάχην, ἀγαθὸς στρατηγὸς ἦν. 11. ἔχομεν φόβον θεῶν τε καὶ ἀνθρώπων.

II. 1. The generals were both noble and brave. 2. The general fled on foot[1] to a stronghold. 3. The plains were both beautiful and full of wine. 4. He desired his men to be brave in battle. 5. If anybody hindered,[2] it was not possible to flee out of the village.

VIII

SIMPLE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AFTER VERBS OF *SAYING* AND *THINKING*. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

110. *a.* When a statement is quoted after a verb of *saying* (as φησί *he says*) or *thinking*, its main verb is changed to the *same tense* of the infinitive.

b. Since there is no separate form for the imperfect infinitive, an imperfect indicative of direct discourse necessarily becomes present infinitive in indirect discourse.

c. The subject of this "infinitive in indirect discourse" is omitted when it is the same as that of the main verb of *saying* (φησί) or *thinking*. But it is regularly expressed when it is different from that of the main verb.

---

[1] πεζός must agree with *the general.* [2] Cp. I. 3.

d. The subject of an infinitive, when expressed, is in the accusative case. But a modifier of an omitted subject agrees with the subject of the main verb when it indicates the same person or thing.

e. The negative of the direct discourse is regularly retained in indirect. That is, the negative with the infinitive of indirect discourse is usually *οὐ*, not *μή* (cp. § 98).

EXAMPLES

Original statement: *πέμπω ἐπιστολήν* I send a letter.

Quoted statements: (1) *Κῦρός φησι πέμπειν ἐπιστολήν* Cyrus says he is sending a letter;

(2) *νομίζω Κῦρον πέμπειν ἐπιστολήν* I think Cyrus is sending a letter.

Original statement: *ὁ στρατηγὸς πιστὰ ἔλαβε* the general took pledges.

Quoted statement: *ἔφη τὸν στρατηγὸν πιστὰ λαβεῖν* he said the general took[1] pledges.

Original statement: *Κῦρος ἦρχε τῆς μάχης* Cyrus began the battle.

Quoted statement: *ἔφη Κῦρον ἄρχειν τῆς μάχης* he said Cyrus began the battle. (*ἄρχειν* might also represent an *ἄρχει* of the original statement. The context of a narrative determines this matter.)

Original statement: *Κῦρός εἰμι* I am Cyrus.

Quoted statement: *ἔφη Κῦρος εἶναι* he said he was Cyrus. (Observe that in *English* a quoted tense is secondary if the leading verb is secondary. Such a change from present to past is *irregular* in Greek. Cp. the Latin *dīxit sē Cȳrum esse.*)

111. Dative with adjectives. — The *to* or *for* dative is used with many adjectives that express friendliness, hostility, association, fitness, and other ideas:

φίλος Κύρῳ friendly to Cyrus;
ἦν πιστὸς τῷ ἀδελφῷ he was faithful to his brother.

[1] Lit. *to have taken* (cp. § 84. *a*).

112. VOCABULARY VIII

ἀδελφός, οῦ, ὁ: *brother*. Philadelphia (**φίλος**).

ἄρχω, impf. **ἦρχον**: *begin, rule, command*, with gen. · Cp. **ἀρχή**.

βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ: *foreigner, barbarian*.

γάρ, postpositive conj.: *for*.

ἐπί (**ἐπ'** before a smooth breathing, **ἐφ'** before a rough breathing, §31), prep.: with GEN. *on, in the time of*; with DAT. *on, upon, at, in the power of, for*; with ACC. *against* (often with idea of hostility), *to, upon*.

ἐπιστολή, ῆς, ἡ: *letter*. Epistle.

ἔφασαν, 3 pl. impf.: *they said*.

ἔφη, 3 sing. impf.: *he said*.

λόγος, ου, ὁ: *word, speech*.

νομίζω, impf. **ἐνόμιζον**: *think*.

οὐδέ (**οὐ** + **δέ**): *nor, not even*; Lat. *nē . . . quidem*.

οὔτε . . . οὔτε (**οὐ** + **τε**): *neither . . . nor*.

πιστός, fem. **πιστή**, neut. **πιστόν**: *trustworthy, faithful*. **πιστά, ῶν, τά**, neut. pl. subst.: *pledges*.

φᾶσί(ν), enclitic verb, 3 pl. pres.: *they say*.

φησί(ν), enclitic verb, 3 sing. pres.: *he says*.

φίλος, fem. **φίλη**, neut. **φίλον**: *friendly*. The masc. **φίλος** has been learned before in its substantive use (*friend*), § 48.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

113. I. 1. *πείθω τὸν Κῦρου ἀδελφόν.* 2. *ὁ δέ φησι πείθειν τὸν Κῦρου ἀδελφόν.* 3. *ἐθέλω λαβεῖν πλοῖα.* 4. *ἔφη ἐθέλειν λαβεῖν πλοῖα.* 5. *ἔφασαν ἐθέλειν πιστὰ λαβεῖν.* 6. *οὔτε ὁ λοχᾱγὸς οὔτε ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔπεμπεν ἐπιστολήν.* 7. *οὐδ' ἤθελε Κλέαρχος ἄρχειν τῆς μάχης.* 8. *οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι οὐ καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοί εἰσιν.* 9. *νομίζω τοὺς βαρβάρους οὐκ εἶναι καλούς τε καὶ ἀγαθούς.* 10. *νομίζομεν τὸν Κῦρον οὐκ εἶναι ἐπὶ*[1] *τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 11. *Κῦρόν φᾶσι λιπεῖν τὰ πλοῖα.* 12. *τοὺς Κύρου λόγους καλοὺς νομίζετε εἶναι;* 13. *Κύρῳ γὰρ ἔφη πιστὸς εἶναι.* 14. *ἡ κώμη οὐκ ἦν Κύρῳ φίλη.*

---

[1] *in the power of.*

II. 1. Cyrus is not in the power of his brother. 2. He thought Cyrus was[1] not in the power of his brother. 3. The generals fled[2] on[3] the boats. 4. He said that the generals [had] fled[2] on the boats.

IX

DECLENSION OF Ā-STEMS (*Continued*). REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES OF THE O- AND Ā-DECLENSIONS. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS IN *-ος, -ον*. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

NOMINATIVES IN -ᾱ

114. Nouns of the ᾱ-declension have *ᾱ* and not *η* in the singular when this vowel is preceded by *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ*.

Sing. N. V.	στρατιᾱ́, ἡ, *army*	Plur. N. V.	στρατιαί
G.	στρατιᾶς	G.	στρατιῶν
D.	στρατιᾷ	D.	στρατιαῖς
A.	στρατιᾱ́ν	A.	στρατιᾱ́ς
Dual N. A. V.	στρατιᾱ́		
G. D.	στρατιαῖν		

For the accent see §§ 57, 58, 59, 95.

115.

Sing. N. V.	χώρᾱ πολεμίᾱ *a hostile country*	N.	ἡ ὀρθίᾱ ὁδός *the steep road*
G.	χώρᾱς πολεμίᾱς	G.	τῆς ὀρθίᾱς ὁδοῦ
D.	χώρᾳ πολεμίᾳ	D.	τῇ ὀρθίᾳ ὁδῷ
A.	χώρᾱν πολεμίᾱν	A.	τὴν ὀρθίᾱν ὁδόν
		V.	— ὀρθίᾱ ὁδέ
Plur. N. V.	χῶραι πολέμιαι	N.	αἱ ὄρθιαι ὁδοί
G.	χωρῶν πολεμίων	G.	τῶν ὀρθίων ὁδῶν
D.	χώραις πολεμίαις	D.	ταῖς ὀρθίαις ὁδοῖς
A.	χώρᾱς πολεμίᾱς	A.	τᾱ̀ς ὀρθίᾱς ὁδούς
		V.	— ὄρθιαι ὁδοί

---

[1] Originally *is*. [2] 2 aor. [3] ἐπί with gen.

a. ὁδός belongs to the group of o-stems that are feminine, although most of the o-stems are masculine or neuter.

b. For the accent of πολέμιαι, πολεμίων and ὄρθιαι, ὀρθίων see below, § 117. *a.*

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES OF THE O- AND Ā-DECLENSIONS

Adjectives in -os, -η, -ον

116. ἀγαθός *good, brave* is declined in the masculine like ποταμός, in the feminine like ἀρχή, and in the neuter like παλτόν.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
	G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
	D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
	A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
	V.	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Dual	N. A. V.	ἀγαθώ	ἀγαθᾱ́	ἀγαθώ
	G. D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν
Plur.	N. V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
	G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
	D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
	A.	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθᾱ́ς	ἀγαθά

Adjectives in -os, -ā, -ον

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
117. Sing.	N.	πολέμιος *hostile*	πολεμίᾱ	πολέμιον
	G.	πολεμίου	πολεμίᾱς	πολεμίου
	D.	πολεμίῳ	πολεμίᾳ	πολεμίῳ
	A.	πολέμιον	πολεμίᾱν	πολέμιον
	V.	πολέμιε	πολεμίᾱ	πολέμιον
Dual	N. A. V.	πολεμίω	πολεμίᾱ	πολεμίω
	G. D.	πολεμίοιν	πολεμίαιν	πολεμίοιν
Plur.	N. V.	πολέμιοι	πολέμιαι	πολέμια
	G.	πολεμίων	πολεμίων	πολεμίων
	D.	πολεμίοις	πολεμίαις	πολεμίοις
	A.	πολεμίους	πολεμίᾱς	πολέμια

a. While the preceding paradigm shows the regular endings of the o- and ā-declensions, there are two forms that depart from the rules of accent of the ā-declension (§§ 59, 95). The nominative and genitive plural feminine follow the masculine in accent: πολέμιαι and not πολεμίαι; πολεμίων and not πολεμίῶν. This applies to all adjectives and participles in -ος, -η (or -ᾱ), -ον.

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS IN -ος, -ον

118. There are many adjectives in -ος that have one form for both masculine and feminine genders, and distinct forms for the neuter in a few cases, as shown in the following paradigm. They are declined like ἄνθρωπος and πλοῖον in respect to case endings. Their accent is regularly recessive (§ 44).

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἄπορος *impassable*	ἄπορον
G.	ἀπόρου	
D.	ἀπόρῳ	
A.	ἄπορον	
V.	ἄπορε	ἄπορον
Dual N. A. V.	ἀπόρω	
G. D.	ἀπόροιν	
Plur. N. V.	ἄποροι	ἄπορα
G.	ἀπόρων	
D.	ἀπόροις	
A.	ἀπόρους	ἄπορα

So, too, is declined ἀφύλακτος (§ 73).

119. **Dative of possession** (*to* or *for* dative). — The dative case may be used with the verb *to be* to denote the possessor:

Κύρῳ ἀρχή ἐστιν Cyrus has a province (a province is to Cyrus).

120. VOCABULARY IX

ἀγορᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ: *market-place, market.*
δίκη, ης, ἡ: *justice, deserts.*
μεταξύ, adv.: *between*, with gen.
ὁδός, οῦ, ἡ: *way, road.* Hodometer (**μέτρον** *measure*).
ὄρθιος, ᾱ, ον: *steep.*
ὅρκος, ου, ὁ: *oath.*
παρά (before a vowel **παρ'**), prep.: with GEN. *from* the side of; with DAT. *by* the side of, after verbs of rest; with ACC. *to* the side of, after verbs of motion; *contrary to.*
πάροδος, ου, ἡ (παρά + ὁδός): *road by* or *past, passage, pass.*
πολέμιος, ᾱ, ον (πόλεμος *war*): *of war, hostile.* **οἱ πολέμιοι**, subst. adj.: *the enemy.* Polemic.
σπονδή, ῆς, ἡ: *libation*; pl. *truce.* Spondee.
στενός, ή, όν: *narrow.* Stenography (**γράφω** *write*).
στόλος, ου, ὁ: *expedition.*
στρατιᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ: *army.*
τάφρος, ου, ἡ: *ditch.*
χώρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *country, land.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

121. I. 1. *τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἦν στρατιὰ ἀγαθή.* 2. *νομίζομεν δὲ τὸν στόλον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους εἶναι.* 3. *ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενή.* 4. *ἦν δὲ πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου.* 5. *ἦγε δὲ τὴν στρατιὰν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν.* 6. *Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν.* 7. *εἰ Κλέαρχος παρὰ*[1] *τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλῡε*[2] *τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει.* 8. *ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῇ τῶν βαρβάρων χώρᾳ.* 9. *ἔφη τὴν ὁδὸν εἶναι εἰς χώρᾱν καλήν.* 10. *ἡ δ' ὁδὸς ἦν ἄπορος, εἴ τις*[3] *ἐκώλῡεν.*

II. 1. He led the men from-the-side-of[4] Cyrus to the market-place. 2. The road to the market-place[5] was steep. 3. We think the country is beautiful. 4. Cyrus's expedition is against his brother.

---

[1] *contrary to.* [2] *broke.* [3] Enclitic, *anybody*, cp. § 105.
[4] **παρά**. [5] Put *to the market-place* in the attributive position.

X

SOME PRONOUNS: *αὐτός*, MEANINGS AND USES; *ἄλλος*, *ὅς*. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. COMPOUND VERBS. RULES OF EUPHONY APPLYING TO *σύν* AND *ἐν* IN COMPOSITION. AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

DECLENSION OF αὐτός, *self, same*

122.

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing.	N.	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
	G.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
	D.	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
	A.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Dual	N. A.	αὐτώ	αὐτᾶ	αὐτώ
	G. D.	αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
Plur.	N.	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
	G.	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
	D.	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
	A.	αὐτούς	αὐτᾶς	αὐτά

MEANING AND USES OF αὐτός

123. 1. As an intensive pronoun *αὐτός* means *self*,[1] *himself*, etc.:

ὁ Κῦρος *αὐτός* *or* Κῦρος *αὐτός* Cyrus himself.

2. When placed between the article and the noun, that is, when used in the attributive position, *αὐτός* means *same*:

ὁ *αὐτὸς στρατηγός* the same general.

3. In the genitive, dative, and accusative cases (the "oblique" cases), this word is the common personal pro-

[1] Cp. **auto-graph** (γράφω *write*).

noun of the third person. This use does *not* belong to the nominative case, however:

ἦγον αὐτούς (or fem. *αὐτάς*) I *or* they led them.

See below, § 127.

ἄλλος, *other, another; the other, the rest of* (if preceded by the article)

124.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	N.	ἄλλος	ἄλλη	ἄλλο
	G.	ἄλλου	ἄλλης	ἄλλου
	D.	ἄλλῳ	ἄλλῃ	ἄλλῳ
	A.	ἄλλον	ἄλλην	ἄλλο
Dual	N. A.	ἄλλω	ἄλλᾱ	ἄλλω
	G. D.	ἄλλοιν	ἄλλαιν	ἄλλοιν
Plur.	N.	ἄλλοι	ἄλλαι	ἄλλα
	G.	ἄλλων	ἄλλων	ἄλλων
	D.	ἄλλοις	ἄλλαις	ἄλλοις
	A.	ἄλλους	ἄλλᾱς	ἄλλα

THE RELATIVE **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ**, *who, which, that*

125.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	N.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
	G.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
	D.	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
	A.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Dual	N. A.	ἅ	ἅ	ἅ
	G. D.	οἷν	οἷν	οἷν
Plur.	N.	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
	G.	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
	D.	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
	A.	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

126. Possessive adjectives are *ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν, my, mine; σός, σή, σόν, your* (sing.), *yours; ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρᾱ, ἡμέτε-*

ρον, our, ours; ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρᾱ, ὑμέτερον, *your* (pl.), *yours.* They are declined regularly. These pronouns are regularly accompanied by the article and stand in the attributive position when denoting a particular person or thing:

ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός my brother.

ἀδελφὸς ἐμός means *a brother of mine.*

127. We have already learned (§ 54) that *his, her, their,* etc., may be expressed by the article in agreement with its noun. The possessive genitive of αὐτός may also be used, and always in the predicate position (§§ 68, 69):

ἡ σκηνὴ αὐτοῦ his tent;
ἡ χώρᾱ αὐτῶν their country.

a. In this use αὐτοῦ is equivalent in meaning to the Latin *ēius,* and is not reflexive.

COMPOUND VERBS

128. Prepositions, which originally were adverbs, are very frequently prefixed to verbs, and modify the verbal idea accordingly:

ἐξ-άγω lead out; εἰσ-άγω lead in; ἐκ-πέμπω send forth; συμ-πέμπω (συμ- for συν- before π for the sake of euphony) send with; ἐπι-βουλεύω plot against.

129. When a final vowel of the preposition comes before an initial vowel of the verb, the final vowel of the preposition is regularly dropped:

ἀπ-άγω (ἀπό + ἄγω) lead off; ἀφ-αρπάζω (ἀπό + ἁρπάζω, π being changed to φ before the rough breathing, § 31) snatch away, seize.

130. Compound verbs are regularly augmented *after* the prefix. A final vowel of the prepositional prefix is likewise dropped before the augment:

ἐξ-ήγαγον they led out; ἐξ-έπεμπον they sent out; ἀπ-έφυγον they fled away; ἐπ-εβούλευε he plotted against.

131. The accent of a compound verb can never recede back of the augment:

ἐξ-ῆγον, *not* ἔξ-ηγον.

132. A compound verb is divided between the prefix and the verb proper, if a hyphen must be used, as at the end of a line:

ἀπ-έφυγον, *not* ἀ-πέφυγον (cp. § 9).

RULES OF EUPHONY: ν BEFORE OTHER CONSONANTS

133. If the prefix of a compound verb is σύν or ἐν, the nasal (ν) undergoes euphonic changes before certain consonants, conformably to the following laws:

1. Before a labial mute (§ 27) ν becomes μ:

   συμ-πέμπω send with.

2. Before a palatal mute (§ 27) ν becomes γ nasal (§ 5):

   ἐγ-γράφω inscribe (ἐν + γράφω write).

3. Before a liquid (§ 27) ν is assimilated to the liquid:

   συλ-λαμβάνω arrest.

4. Before σ, ν is dropped:

   συ-στρατεύω take the field with.

134. But the prefix always resumes its original form before the syllabic augment:

συν-έλαβον, συν-έπεμπον.

135. **The relative pronoun** agrees with its antecedent in person, gender, and number, but its case is determined by its construction in its own clause:[1]

πάρ-εστιν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὃν ἔπεμπεν the man whom he sent is here.

136. Verbs compounded with *ἐν*, *σύν*, and *ἐπί* commonly take the **dative** case, if the object is dependent on the prepositional idea:

τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις ἐπι-βουλεύουσιν and they are plotting against the others.

137. VOCABULARY X

For the meanings of **αὐτός**, **ἄλλος**, **ὅς**, **ἐμός**, **ἡμέτερος**, **σός**, **ὑμέτερος**, see the preceding articles (§§ 123–127).

ἀπό (**ἀπ'** before smooth breathing, **ἀφ'** before rough breathing, § 31), prep. with gen. only: *off, from, away from.* Cp. Lat. *ab.*

ἀπο-θνῄσκω, impf. **ἀπ-έθνῃσκον**, 2 aor. **ἀπ-έθανον**: *die off, die, perish, be slain.*

ἀπο-πέμπω, impf. **ἀπ-έπεμπον**: *send off* or *away, dismiss.*

εἶτα, adv.: *then, thereupon.*

ἐξ-άγω, impf. **ἐξ-ῆγον**, 2 aor. **ἐξ-ήγαγον**: *lead out.*

ἐπι-βουλεύω, impf. **ἐπ-εβούλευον**: *plot against*, with dat. (**βουλεύω** *plan.*)

ἥκω, impf. **ἧκον**: *come, have come*; pres. with pf. meaning.

πάλιν, adv.. *back, again.*

πάρ-ειμι, impf. (3 sing.) **παρ-ῆν**, (3 pl.) **παρ-ῆσαν**: *be by, be at hand, be present, attend*, with dat.

συλ-λαμβάνω (**σύν** + **λαμβάνω**), impf. **συν-ελάμβανον**, 2 aor. **συν-έλαβον**: *take together, seize, arrest.* Cp. Lat. *comprehendō.*

συμ-πέμπω (**σύν** + **πέμπω**), impf. **συν-έπεμπον**: *send* a person (in acc.), *with* a person (in dat.).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

138. I. 1. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς αὐτὸν ἔπειθεν. 2. εἶτα δ' ἐξ-ῆγον αὐτόν. 3. ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς φίλοις αὐτοῦ. 4. Κῦρος δὲ πάρ-εστι σὺν τοῖς βαρβά-

[1] Except as is later explained in § 285.

ροις οἱ αὐτῷ εἰσι πιστοί. 5. ὁ αὐτὸς φόβος παρ-ῆν τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατηγοῖς. 6. Κῦρος δὲ ἥκει ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς. 7. ἡ δὲ[1] ἀπο-πέμπει αὐτὸν πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. 8. Κῦρος ἐπι-βουλεύει τῷ ἀδελφῷ. 9. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς συλ-λαμβάνει Κῦρον. 10. αὐτὸς δὲ συν-έλαβε τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς. 11. συμ-πέμπει δὲ λόχον αὐτοῖς. 12. Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς ἀπ-έθανεν.

II. 1. We do not plot against our friends. 2. They have the same fear. 3. The other brothers of the general were slain. 4. He himself was not present in the fight.

XI

DECLENSION OF Ā-STEMS (*Continued*). INSTRUMENTAL DATIVE. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR SPACE. ARTICLE WITH NAME OF COUNTRY

NOMINATIVES IN -ᾰ

139. Hitherto there have been introduced only such nouns of the **ᾱ**-declension as have *ᾱ* or *η* in the nominative singular. There are, however, some nouns of the **ᾱ**-declension that have *ᾰ* in the nominative singular. They usually have recessive accent (cp. § 44). In the genitive and dative endings *ᾱ* appears if this vowel is preceded by *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ* (cp. § 114), otherwise *η* is found. The accusative and vocative singular have the vowel (*ᾰ*) and accent of the nominative singular. In the dual and plural all nouns of the **ᾱ**-declension are inflected alike.

---

[1] *and she.*

140. Sing. N. V.	θάλαττα, ἡ, *sea*	γέφῡρα, ἡ, *bridge*	ἅμαξα, ἡ, *wagon*
G.	θαλάττης	γεφῡ́ρᾱς	ἁμάξης
D.	θαλάττῃ	γεφῡ́ρᾳ	ἁμάξῃ
A.	θάλατταν	γέφῡραν	ἅμαξαν
Dual N. A. V.	θαλάττᾱ	γεφῡ́ρᾱ	ἁμάξᾱ
G. D.	θαλάτταιν	γεφῡ́ραιν	ἁμάξαιν
Plur. N. V.	θάλατται	γέφῡραι	ἅμαξαι
G.	θαλαττῶν	γεφῡρῶν	ἁμαξῶν
D.	θαλάτταις	γεφῡ́ραις	ἁμάξαις
A.	θαλάττᾱς	γεφῡ́ρᾱς	ἁμάξᾱς

141. The **instrumental dative** is used to denote means and manner:

γεφῡ́ρᾳ δια-βαίνει τὸν ποταμόν he crosses the river by a bridge.

142. The **accusative** may denote extent of time or space, answering the question *how long?* or *how far?*

ἐξ-ελαύνει δέκα σταθμούς he marches ten days' journey.

143. The name of a **country** may take the article, which is not to be translated (cp. § 89):

ἡ Κιλικίᾱ Cilicia.

144. VOCABULARY XI

ἅμαξα, ης, ἡ: *carriage, wagon.*

γέφῡρα, ᾱς, ἡ: *bridge.*

δέκα, indecl.: *ten.* Lat. *decem.* Deca-gon (**γωνίᾱ** *angle*).

διά (**δι'** before a vowel), prep.: with GEN. *through;* with ACC. *on account of, by means of.* Dia-meter (**μέτρον** *measure*).

δια-βαίνω, impf. **δι-έβαινον**: *go across, cross.* (**βαίνω** *go.*)

ἔδραμον, 2 aor.: *ran.* (Usually referred to **τρέχω** *run.*)

ἐντεῦθεν, adv.: *thence;* of time, *then.*

ἐξ-ελαύνω, impf. **ἐξ-ήλαυνον**: *drive out; march out* or *forth.* (**ἐλαύνω** *drive, ride, march.*)

θάλαττα, ης, ἡ: *sea.*

Κιλικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Cilicia.*

Κίλισσα, ης, ἡ: *Cilician woman.*

λόφος, ου, ὁ: *hill.*

νίκη, ης, ἡ: *victory.*

παρ-ελαύνω, impf. **παρ-ήλαυνον**: *drive past* or *by*; *march past, ride past.*

περί (never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep.: with GEN. *about, concerning, for*, as a prize; with DAT. (not common in prose), *around, about*; with ACC. *around, about, near.* Perimeter (**μέτρον** *measure*).

σταθμός, οῦ, ὁ: *day's journey, stage*; *halting place* (first meaning, but less common).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

145. I. 1. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁμάξης. 2. λύουσι τὰς γεφύρᾱς. 3. κῶμαι δὲ περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἦσαν. 4. καὶ ἔδραμον περὶ νίκης. 5. ἔστι[1] δὲ ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ λόφος ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.[2] 6. λόφον δέ φᾱσιν εἶναι ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. 7. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίᾱν ἀποπέμπει. 8. καὶ συν-έπεμπεν αὐτῇ τοὺς λόχους οὓς Κλέαρχος εἶχε καὶ Κλέαρχον αὐτόν. 9. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα παρ-ήλαυνεν ἐφ' ἁμάξης.[3] 10. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ τῆς χώρᾱς τῆς Κιλίσσης σταθμοὺς δέκα. 11. δι-έβαινον τὴν γέφῡραν. 12. τὸν δὲ ποταμὸν δι-έβαινε γεφύρᾳ.

II. 1. He sent away the company (of soldiers)[4] to the sea. 2. Cyrus marched through Cilicia ten days' journey. 3. They cross the river by a bridge. 4. Cyrus sent to the Cilician woman a wagon which he had. 5. We destroyed the bridges which we crossed.

---

[1] § 102. [2] *from sea to sea.* [3] For **ἐφ'** see § 31. [4] Omit.

XII

DECLENSION OF Ā-STEMS (*Continued*). CLAUSES OF RESULT

MASCULINES IN -ης AND -ᾱς

146.

Sing. N.	στρατιώτης, ὁ, *soldier*	πελταστής, ὁ, *peltast*
G.	στρατιώτου	πελταστοῦ
D.	στρατιώτῃ	πελταστῇ
A.	στρατιώτην	πελταστήν
V.	στρατιῶτα	πελταστά
Dual N. A. V.	στρατιώτᾱ	πελταστᾱ́
G. D.	στρατιώταιν	πελτασταῖν
Plur N. V.	στρατιῶται	πελτασταί
G.	στρατιωτῶν	πελταστῶν
D.	στρατιώταις	πελτασταῖς
A.	στρατιώτᾱς	πελταστᾱ́ς

Sing. N.	τοξότης, ὁ, *bowman*	Ξενίᾱς, ὁ, *Xenias*
G.	τοξότου	Ξενίου
D.	τοξότῃ	Ξενίᾳ
A.	τοξότην	Ξενίᾱν
V.	τοξότα	Ξενίᾱ
Dual N. A. V.	τοξότᾱ	
G D.	τοξόταιν	
Plur. N. V.	τοξόται	
G.	τοξοτῶν	
D.	τοξόταις	
A.	τοξότᾱς	

a. Masculines in *-της* have vocatives singular in *-ᾰ́*.

b. It is to be noted once more that all nouns of the **ᾱ**-declension are inflected alike in the dual and plural.

147. **Result** is expressed by *ὥστε so that* with the indicative or infinitive. The indicative usually denotes the *actual*

result; the infinitive, the *natural* result. With the indicative the negative is **οὐ**; with the infinitive, **μή**:

εἶχε πλοῖα ὥστε ἔλαβεν αὐτούς he had boats so that he captured them; **εἶχε πλοῖα ὥστε λαβεῖν αὐτούς** he had boats so as to capture them.

148. VOCABULARY XII

ἀπο-φεύγω, impf. **ἀπ-έφευγον**, 2 aor. **ἀπ-έφυγον**: *flee away, escape.*

δρόμος, ου, ὁ: a *run.* **δρόμῳ**: *on the run.* Cp. **ἔ-δραμ-ον.** **Hippodrome** (**ἵππος**).

Ξενίᾱς, ου, ὁ: *Xenias.*

ὁπλίτης, ου, ὁ: a heavy-armed soldier, *hoplite.* See p. 139, Fig. 18. Cp. **ὅπλον.**

παίω, impf. **ἔπαιον**: *strike, smite.*

πελταστής, οῦ, ὁ: a light-armed soldier, *peltast.*

Πῐσίδαι, ῶν, οἱ: *Pisidians*, natives of Pisidia.

στρατιώτης, ου, ὁ: *soldier.* Cp. **στρατιᾱ́.**

συν-άγω, impf. **συν-ῆγον**, 2 aor. **συν-ήγαγον**: *lead together, collect.*

τοξότης, ου, ὁ: *bowman.*

φυγή, ῆς, ἡ: *flight.* **φυγῇ**: *in flight.* Cp. **φεύγω.**

Χειρίσοφος, ου, ὁ: *Cheirisophus.*

ὥστε, conj.. *so that, so as, therefore* (§ 147).

FIG. 4. — Πελταστής (cp. p. 117, Fig. 14).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

149. I. 1. Ξενίᾱς δὲ εἶχεν ὁπλίτᾱς. 2. συν-ήγαγε δὲ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 3. οἱ δ' ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου πελτασταὶ δρόμῳ[1] ἔφυγον. 4. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον. 5. ἐκέλευε τοὺς πελταστὰς ἥκειν. 6. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμ-πέμπει αὐτῷ τοὺς πελταστάς. 7. οἱ δὲ Ξενίου στρατιῶται ἥκουσιν. 8. οἱ δὲ τοξόται φυγῇ[1] λείπουσι τὸν λόφον. 9. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἀπο-φεύγουσιν· ἔχω γὰρ πλοῖα ὥστε λαβεῖν αὐτούς. 10. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς πελταστάς; 11. ὥστε οὐκ ἐθέλω ἀπο-πέμπειν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς αὐτῶν. 12. ἐνόμιζε δὲ τὸν στόλον εἶναι εἰς τοὺς Πῑσίδᾱς.

II. 1. He ordered the general to dismiss the soldiers. 2. He collected his soldiers and said that the expedition was[2] against Cilicia. 3. Therefore they did not wish to come with him.

---

[1] Dat. of manner; cp. § 141.

[2] Originally *is*.

FIG. 5.— Τοξότης.

XIII

FUTURE INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF Ω–VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. RULES OF WRITING AND EUPHONY APPLYING TO MUTE THEMES: MUTES BEFORE *SIGMA*. GENITIVE OF TIME. FUTURE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AND AFTER μέλλω

Review the statements about the formation of the present tense (§§ 41–43).

150. The future indicative active is formed from the verb theme, to which are added the future tense suffix and the personal endings. The future suffix is σο before μ and ν, σε before other letters. The personal endings are like the present.

151. FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λῡ́ω

Sing.	1.	λῡ́-σω *I shall* or *will loose*
	2.	λῡ́-σεις *you shall* or *will loose*
	3.	λῡ́-σει *he shall* or *will loose*
Dual	2.	λῡ́-σε-τον
	3.	λῡ́-σε-τον
Plur.	1.	λῡ́-σο-μεν *we shall* or *will loose*
	2.	λῡ́-σε-τε *you shall* or *will loose*
	3.	λῡ́-σου-σι(ν) *they shall* or *will loose*

Future infinitive λῡ́-σειν

152. Verbs with themes ending in a vowel, *e.g.* κελεύω, regularly form the future like λῡ́ω. These are called **vowel themes**.

Verbs with themes ending in a mute (§ 27), *e.g.* πέμπω, are called **mute themes**.

RULES OF WRITING AND EUPHONY APPLYING TO MUTE THEMES: MUTES BEFORE *SIGMA*

153. 1. A labial mute (§ 27) unites with a following *sigma* and makes ψ (= πς).

2. A palatal mute (§ 27) unites with a following *sigma* and makes ξ (= κς).

3. A lingual mute (§ 27) is dropped before a following *sigma*.

These rules are illustrated, for example, in the formation of the future of verbs with themes ending in a mute. Thus the future

of πέμπω is πέμψω (πεμπ-σω), of λείπω is λείψω (λειπ-σω);
of ἄγω is ἄξω (ἀγ-σω), of ἔχω is ἕξω (ἐχ-σω);
of ἁρπάζω[1] is ἁρπάσω (ἁρπαδ-σω).

154. The change of breathing in the future of ἔχω (ἕξω) is to be noted as unusual; there is also another future of ἔχω: σχήσω.

155. The **genitive** case may be used to denote *time within which:*

οὐχ ἥξει δέκα ἡμερῶν he will not come within ten days.

156. The **future infinitive** is used as follows:

1. In indirect discourse when it represents the future indicative of direct discourse (cp. § 110. *a*); this is its principal use:

οὐχ ἥξομεν we shall not come (*direct discourse*);
οὔ φᾱσιν ἥξειν they say they will not come (*indirect discourse*).

---

[1] The theme of ἁρπάζω is ἁρπαδ-, not ἁρπαζ-. This verb and similar verbs have for the present tense suffix *y*% instead of simple %. So the ending -ζω is for -δyω.

a. Observe that the Greek prefers to place the negative before *φᾱσί*. Compare Latin *negō* for *dīcō nōn*.

2. After *μέλλω be about, intend;* but *μέλλω* also permits the present and the aorist infinitive:

μέλλουσιν ἥξειν they are about to come.

157. VOCABULARY XIII

ἅμα, adv.: *at the same time, together with*, with dat. **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**: *at the same time with the day, at daybreak.* Cp. Lat. *simul.* **Hama**-dryad (**δρῦς** *tree*).

ἐπιτήδειος, ᾱ, ον: *suitable, necessary.* **τὰ ἐπιτήδεια** (neut. pl. subst.): *provisions, supplies.*

εὐθύς, adv.: *straightway, at once.*

ἡμέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *day.* **Eph-emeral** (**ἐφ-**).

μέλλω, impf. **ἔμελλον**, fut. **μελλήσω** (irreg.): *be about, intend; delay.*

οἰκίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *house.*

παρ-έχω, impf. **παρ-εῖχον**, fut. **παρ-έξω** (or **παρα-σχήσω**), 2 aor. **παρ-έσχον**: *hold beside, furnish, provide, supply.*

πέντε, indecl.: *five.* **Penta-gon** (**γωνίᾱ** *angle*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

158. Give the meanings of *λείψετε, σχήσουσι, ἄξομεν, ἁρπάσει, πέμψεις, πείσει, λείψουσι, κελεύσει, ἄρξομεν, κωλύσετε.*

159. I. 1. *ἕξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.*[1] 2. *νομίζουσιν ἕξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.* 3. *ἥξουσιν εἰς κώμᾱς τῆς πολεμίᾱς χώρᾱς.* 4. *ἐνόμιζον δὲ ἥξειν εἰς κώμᾱς τῆς πολεμίᾱς χώρᾱς.* 5. *στρατηγοὺς δὲ ἕχουσιν οἳ αὐτοὺς ἄξουσιν.* 6. *ἀγορᾶν δὲ παρ-έξομεν.* 7. *εὐθὺς ἀπο-πέμψει αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν οἰκίᾱν.* 8. *ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ πολέμιοι ἥξουσιν.* 9. *ἀλλὰ παίσομεν τοὺς πολεμίους.* 10. *ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον.* 11. *ἀγορᾶν δὲ οὔτε Κῦρος οὔτε Κλέαρχος παρ-έξειν ἔμελλεν.*

[1] Sometimes **τἀπιτήδεια** by *crasis*, § 30.

II. 1. Within ten days they will come to the river. 2. At daybreak we shall supply provisions to the soldiers.[1] 3. We are about to destroy the bridges. 4. They say they will not destroy the bridges. 5. He will send men who will destroy the bridges.

XIV

FIRST AORIST INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE OF Ω-VERBS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. *ἐπεί* AND *ἐπειδή when* WITH IMPERFECT OR AORIST INDICATIVE

160. The first aorist indicative, as a secondary tense (§ 39), has the augment (§ 77). To the augmented theme are added the first aorist tense suffix *σα* and the personal endings. The suffix *σα* becomes *σε* in the third person singular. Reference should be made to the personal endings already learned for the other secondary tenses, imperfect and second aorist (§§ 81, 82, 85).

a. Personal endings are wanting in both the first and the third persons singular of the first aorist indicative.

b. The *first aorist stem* is the theme of the verb plus *σα*, as the future stem is the theme plus *σ%* (§ 150).

161. The first aorist indicative, like the second aorist (cp. § 84), expresses a simple act in past time. The first and the second aorist may often be translated with the auxiliary *had;* this is regularly true when the aorist is introduced by the conjunction *ἐπεί* or *ἐπειδή when.*

---

[1] Dat. of indir. obj.

162. FIRST AORIST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ἔ-λῡ-σα *I loosed*		ἐ-λῡ́-σα-μεν *we loosed*
2.	ἔ-λῡ-σα-ς *you loosed*	ἐ-λῡ́-σα-τον	ἐ-λῡ́-σα-τε *you loosed*
3.	ἔ-λῡ-σε(ν)[1] *he loosed*	ἐ-λῡ-σά-την	ἔ-λῡ-σα-ν *they loosed*

First aor. infin. λῦσαι *to loose*[2]; in indir. disc., *to have loosed*, etc. (§ 110).

163. Verbs with themes ending in a vowel regularly form the first aorist like λῡ́ω.

164. Verbs with themes ending in a mute (§ 27) form the first aorist in conformity to the euphonic laws mentioned in the last lesson (§ 153):

πέμπω	(πεμπ-),	first aorist		ἔπεμψα
ἄρχω	(ἀρχ-),	"	"	ἦρξα
πείθω	(πειθ-),	"	"	ἔπεισα
ἁρπάζω	(ἁρπαδ-),	"	"	ἥρπασα

a. λείπω, ἄγω, ἔχω, and many other verbs have no first aorists; but their second aorists (§§ 85, 87, 88) do not differ in meaning from first aorists.

165. The first aorist of ἐλαύνω *drive, ride, march,* which has been seen in the compounds ἐξ-ελαύνω *march out* or *forth* and παρ-ελαύνω *drive* or *march past,* is ἤλασα.

166. The first aorist active infinitive is always accented on the penult. Thus συμ-βουλεῦσαι, not συμ-βούλευσαι.

167. ἐπεί and ἐπειδή meaning *when* and referring to a definite act in past time take the imperfect or aorist indicative:

ἐπεὶ τὴν κώμην δι-ήρπασαν, ἔφυγον when they had sacked the town, they fled.

---

[1] Cp. § 32.

[2] The simple act (cp. § 84. *a*).

168. VOCABULARY XIV

Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, ὁ: *Artaxerxes.*

Βοιώτιος, ᾱ, ον: *Boeotian.*

δι-αρπάζω (**διά** + **ἁρπάζω**), impf. **δι-ήρπαζον**, fut. **δι-αρπάσω**, aor. **δι-ήρπασα**: *tear in pieces, plunder utterly* or *thoroughly, sack.*

ἐπεί and **ἐπει-δή**, temporal conj.: *when, after.*

θαυμάζω (theme **θαυμαδ-**), impf. **ἐθαύμαζον**, fut. to be learned later, aor. **ἐθαύμασα**: *wonder, wonder at, admire*, with acc.

οὖν, postpositive particle: *therefore, accordingly, at any rate.*

Πρόξενος, ου, ὁ: *Proxenus.*

συλ-λέγω (**σύν** + **λέγω** *gather*), impf. **συν-έλεγον**, fut. **συλ-λέξω**, aor. **συν-έλεξα**: *gather together, collect.*

συμ-βουλεύω (**σύν** + **βουλεύω**), impf. **συν-εβούλευον**, fut. **συμ-βουλεύσω**, aor. **συν-εβούλευσα**: *plan with, advise*, with dat.

τρέπω, impf. **ἔτρεπον**, fut. **τρέψω**, aor. **ἔτρεψα**: *turn.* **τρέπω εἰς φυγήν**: *put to flight.*

χρῡσίον, ου, τό: *gold.* **Chrys-anthemum** (**ἄνθεμον** *flower*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

169. Give the meanings of *ἔσχον, ἐκώλῡσαν, ἦρξεν, ἐκελεύσατε, ἔλιπον, ἔπεισας, ἐπέμψαμεν, ἤγαγε, ἥρπασα.*

170. I. 1. *Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ἐκέλευσεν ἥκειν.* 2. *ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἐθαύμασεν.* 3. *καὶ Κῦρος συν-έπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς.* 4. *καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὁπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν.*[1] 5. *εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς.* 6. *ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἔλαβε τὸ χρῡσίον, στρατιώτᾱς συν-έλεξεν.* 7. *καὶ τᾶς ἁμάξᾱς οἱ σὺν Ἀρταξέρξῃ δι-ήρπασαν.* 8. *ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς παρ-ήλασεν, ἔπεμψεν ἄνθρωπον πιστὸν παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς.* 9. *συν-εβούλευσεν οὖν αὐτοῖς μὴ λῦσαι τὴν γέφῡραν.* 10. *ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἐπι-βουλεῦσαι τῷ ἀδελφῷ Ἀρταξέρξῃ.* 11. *Κλέαρχον δὲ κελεύουσι πέμψαι φυλακὴν παρὰ τὴν γέφῡραν.*

[1] §§ 87, 98.

II. 1. The men with Cyrus had thoroughly plundered the land. 2. When the Cilician woman had ridden past the soldiers, she admired them. 3. We put[1] the enemy to flight.

XV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. USES OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES. PREDICATE POSITION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES. NAME OF RIVER IN ATTRIBUTIVE POSITION. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. DATIVE OF TIME. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE

DECLENSION OF οὗτος *this*, ὅδε *this*, AND ἐκεῖνος *that*

171.

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing.	N.	οὗτος *this*	αὕτη	τοῦτο
	G.	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
	D.	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
	A.	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
Dual	N. A.	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω
	G. D.	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτοιν
Plur.	N.	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
	G.	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
	D.	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
	A.	τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

172. NOTE. — The declension of *οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο* may be remembered thus: (1) forms with initial *τ* occur in all cases in which the article *ὁ, ἡ, τό* has initial *τ*, and not otherwise; thus *τούτου* (*τοῦ*), *οὗτοι* (*οἱ*). (2) The penult has *ου* when the ultima contains the *o* sound (*o* or *ω*); otherwise the penult has *αυ*.

---

[1] 1 aor.

173. ὅδε is simply the definite article ὁ, ἡ, τό, + an enclitic -δε.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	ὅδε *this*	ἥδε	τόδε
G.	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε
D.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε
A.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε
Dual N. A.	τώδε	τώδε	τώδε
G. D.	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε
Plur. N.	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε
G.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
D.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
A.	τούσδε	τᾶσδε	τάδε

174. For the declension of ἐκεῖνος *that* (Lat. *ille*), cp. ἄλλος, § 124.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
G.	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
D.	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
A.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
Dual N. A.	ἐκείνω	ἐκείνω	ἐκείνω
G. D.	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείνοιν
Plur. N.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
G.	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
D.	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
A.	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνᾱς	ἐκεῖνα

USES OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES

175. While οὗτος and ὅδε both mean *this, this man*, etc., οὗτος often refers to what has preceded, and ὅδε to what is to follow:

οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἔφη he admitted not even this (something that has been mentioned);

συν-εβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς τάδε he advised them as follows.

a. ἐκεῖνος means *that, that man,* etc., much like the Latin *ille.*

b. All three of the words may be used as pronouns, *he, she, it,* etc., just like the Latin *hīc, iste,* and *ille.*

176. When used as demonstrative adjectives meaning *this* and *that,* οὗτος, ὅδε, and ἐκεῖνος must have the *predicate* position (§ 68):

οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος this man.

177. The Greek often prefers the plural ταῦτα *these things,* when in English we properly use the singular *this:*

ταῦτα συν-εβούλευσεν he advised this.

178. The name of a **river** regularly stands between the article and the noun:

ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμός the Euphrates river (cp. the Hudson river).

179. The genitive is often used to denote the whole, of which a part is taken (**partitive genitive**):

ἄλλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν another of the soldiers.

a. The partitive genitive usually has the predicate position:

οἱ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν λοχᾱγῶν the good men among (*lit.* of) the captains.

180. The **dative** (locative) is used to denote *time when:*

ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκεν on that day he came.

Compare the genitive of *time within which* (§ 155) and the accusative of *time how long* (§ 142).

a. Sometimes the preposition ἐν is used with the dative of time:

ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ on this day.

181. Cognate accusative or accusative of the inner object. — The direct object of a verb may repeat in the form of a noun (or adjective or pronoun) a meaning similar to that of the verb:

φυλακὰς φυλάττειν to do guard duty (*lit.* to guard guardings);
συν-εβούλευσε τάδε he advised as follows, *i.e.* he advised these [pieces of advice].

182. VOCABULARY XV

For the meanings and uses of **ἐκεῖνος**, **ὅδε**, and **οὗτος**, see §§ 175–177.

ἀγοράζω (theme **ἀγοραδ-**), impf. **ἠγόραζον**, fut. **ἀγοράσω**, aor. **ἠγόρασα**: *buy*. Cp. **ἀγορᾶ**.

δῆλος, η, ον: *plain, clear, evident*.

δύο, generally used indeclinably: *two*. Cp. Lat. *duo*.

ἑκατόν, indecl.: *hundred*.

ἐλαύνω (for **ἐλα-νυ-ω**, theme **ἐλα-**), impf. **ἤλαυνον**, fut. to be learned later, aor. **ἤλασα** (cp. § 165): *drive, ride, march*. Much less common than its compounds.

Εὐφρᾱ́της, ου, ὁ: *Euphrātes*.

καὶ γάρ: *and in fact*; or *for also, for even*. Sometimes may be rendered *yes, for*.

μέντοι, postpositive particle: *however, yet*.

μετά (before smooth breathing **μετ'**, before rough breathing **μεθ'**, § 31), prep. with GEN. *with, in company with*; with ACC. *into the midst of, after*.

παρασάγγης, ου, ὁ: *parasang*, a Persian measure of distance, about 3.3 English miles. Cp. our *league* (3 miles).

ὑστεραῖος, ᾱ, ον: *later, following*. **τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ** (supply **ἡμέρᾳ**): *on the following day* (§ 180).

φυλάττω, impf. **ἐφύλαττον**, fut. **φυλάξω**, aor. **ἐφύλαξα**: *guard*. Cp. **φυλακή**.

NOTE. — The present of **φυλάττω** is formed from the theme **φυλακ-** plus the present suffix *y*%, **κ** + *y* by a euphonic law becoming **ττ**. Cp. § 153, footnote.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

183. I. 1. μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφρᾱ́την ποταμόν. 2. τοὺς δὲ στρατηγοὺς ἤγαγε διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς. 3. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς κώμης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 4. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ὁ Κῦρος ἔλαβεν. 5. Ξενίᾱς μέντοι τούτων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἦρχεν. 6. οὐδ' ἄλλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐκ ταύτης τῆς μάχης ἔφυγεν. 7. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχᾱγοὶ ἐφύλαττον ἐκεῖνον. 8. τοῦτον τὸν οἶνον τοῖς φίλοις Κῦρος ἔπεμψεν. 9. τοὺς μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς τῶν πελταστῶν συν-έλεξεν. 10. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦν. 11. διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾱς[1] δέκα. 12. ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται. 13. οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχᾱγοὶ συνεβούλευσαν αὐτοῖς τάδε.

II. 1. Thence he marched five days' journey to the Euphrates river. 2. These soldiers were not slain[2] on that day. 3. The soldiers do guard duty. 4. He came with[3] his friends. 5. This wine he will send to his friends.

[1] § 142. [2] 2 aor. of ἀπο-θνῄσκω. [3] Use μετά with the proper case.

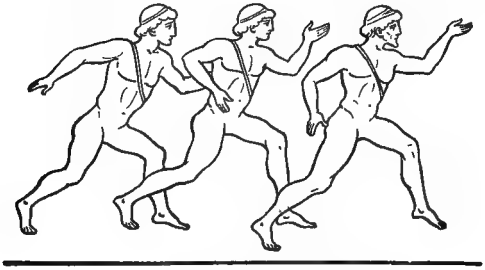

FIG. 6. — Δρόμος.

XVI

GENERAL REVIEW

184. A thorough review of the past lessons is now most advisable. Of first importance is the vocabulary; and all the words hitherto given are here collected in alphabetical order (§ 186). They should be committed to memory from English into Greek as well as from Greek into English. The student should *make a list* of the English meanings and then write the Greek equivalents opposite. The same plan of review should be frequently followed later.

This list of words must be *thoroughly* mastered. It is a help to the memory to associate words that show the same stems and roots (*e.g.* χώρᾱ with χωρίον, λοχᾱγός with λόχος and ἄγω) and to recall similar stems in English (*e.g.* **philanthropy** from φίλος and ἄνθρωπος). See the special vocabularies for suggestions of this sort.

When verbs occur in the following list, the first persons singular of the imperfect, future, and aorist (first or second) are also given. In a few instances, however, certain verb forms have had to be postponed to a more advanced period of study. They may always be found in the general VOCABULARY.

Hereafter the imperfect will not be given, unless it shows an irregularity.

Typical words from the following list should be inflected both in written work and orally.

185. A common negative prefix is ἀ(ν)-; it is equivalent to Latin *in-* and English *un-*. It is known as *alpha privative.* Cp. ἀ-διάβατος, ἀ-φύλακτος.

186.

ἀγαθός
ἀγορᾶ
ἀγοράζω (cp. ἀγορᾶ), ἠγόραζον, ἀγοράσω, ἠγόρασα
ἄγω, ἦγον, ἄξω, ἤγαγον
ἀδελφός
ἀδιάβατος (ἀ- priv. + δια-βαίνω)
ἀλλά (cp. ἄλλος)
ἄλλος
ἅμα, ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
ἄμαξα
ἄνθρωπος
ἀπό
ἀπο-θνῄσκω, ἀπ-έθνησκον, fut. to be learned later, ἀπ-έθανον
ἀπο-πέμπω, ἀπ-έπεμπον, ἀπο-πέμψω, ἀπ-έπεμψα
ἄπορος
ἀπο-φεύγω, ἀπ-έφευγον, fut. to be learned later, ἀπ-έφυγον
ἁρπάζω, ἥρπαζον, ἁρπάσω, ἥρπασα
Ἀρταξέρξης
ἀρχή (ἄρχω)
ἄρχω, ἦρχον, ἄρξω, ἦρξα
αὐτός
ἀφύλακτος (cp. φυλακή)
βάρβαρος
Βοιώτιος
γάρ
γέφῡρα
δέ
δέκα
δῆλος
διά
δια-βαίνω, δι-έβαινον, fut. and aor. to be learned later
δι-αρπάζω, δι-ήρπαζον, δι-αρπάσω, δι-ήρπασα
δίκη
δρόμος (ἔδραμον)
δύο
ἔδραμον
ἐθέλω, ἤθελον, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα
εἰ
εἰμί, ἐστί(ν), ἔστι(ν), εἶναι
εἰς
εἶτα
ἐκ
ἑκατόν
ἐκεῖνος
ἐλαύνω, ἤλαυνον, fut. to be learned later, ἤλασα
ἐμός
ἐν
ἐνταῦθα
ἐντεῦθεν
ἐξ-άγω, ἐξ-ῆγον, ἐξ-άξω, ἐξ-ήγαγον
ἐξ-ελαύνω, ἐξ-ήλαυνον, fut. to be learned later, ἐξ-ήλασα
ἐπεί
ἐπειδή
ἐπί
ἐπι-βουλεύω, ἐπ-εβούλευον, ἐπι-βουλεύσω, ἐπ-εβούλευσα
ἐπιστολή
ἐπιτήδειος, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
ἔργον
εὐθύς
Εὐφρᾱ́της
ἔφασαν, ἔφη
ἔχω, εἶχον, ἕξω or σχήσω, ἔσχον
ἡ, ἡ δέ
ἥκω, ἧκον, ἥξω (these are all the tenses)
ἡμέρᾱ
ἡμέτερος
ἦν

ἦσαν
θάλαττα
θαυμάζω, ἐθαύμαζον, fut. to be learned later, ἐθαύμασα
θεός
ἵππος
καί, καί . . . καί, καὶ γάρ
κακός
καλός
κελεύω, ἐκέλευον, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα
Κιλικίᾱ
Κίλισσα (cp. Κιλικίᾱ)
Κλέαρχος
Κῦρος
κωλύω, ἐκώλῡον, κωλύσω, ἐκώλῡσα
κώμη
λαμβάνω, ἐλάμβανον, fut. to be learned later, ἔλαβον
λείπω, ἔλειπον, λείψω, ἔλιπον
λόγος
λόφος
λοχᾱγός (λόχος, ἄγω)
λόχος
λῦω, ἔλῡον, λύσω, ἔλῡσα
μάχη
μέλλω, ἔμελλον, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα
μέν
μέντοι
μεστός
μετά
μεταξύ (cp. μετά)
μή
νίκη
νομίζω, ἐνόμιζον, fut. to be learned later, ἐνόμισα
Ξενίᾱς
ὁ, ὁ δέ, ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ
ὅδε
ὁδός
οἰκίᾱ
οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ
οἶνος
ὁπλίτης (ὅπλα)
ὅπλον, ὅπλα
ὄρθιος
ὅρκος
ὅς
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ
οὐδέ
οὖν
οὔτε . . . οὔτε
οὗτος
παίω, ἔπαιον, παίσω, ἔπαισα
πάλιν
παλτόν
παρά
παρασάγγης
πάρ-ειμι, παρ-ῆν, fut. to be learned later, no aor.
παρ-ελαύνω, παρ-ήλαυνον, fut. to be learned later, παρ-ήλασα
παρ-έχω, παρ-εῖχον, παρ-έξω or παρασχήσω, παρ-έσχον
πάροδος (παρά + ὁδός)
πεδίον
πεζός (cp. πεδίον), οἱ πεζοί
πείθω, ἔπειθον, πείσω, ἔπεισα
πελταστής
πέμπω, ἔπεμπον, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα
πέντε
περί
Πῑσίδαι
πιστός (cp. πείθω), τὰ πιστά
πλοῖον
πολέμιος, οἱ πολέμιοι
ποταμός
Πρόξενος
πρός

σῖτος
σκηνή
σός
σπονδή, σπονδαί
σταθμός
στενός
στόλος (cp. ἐπι-στολή)
στρατηγός (cp. στρατιά and ἄγω)
στρατιᾶ
στρατιώτης (cp. στρατιᾶ)
συλ-λαμβάνω, συν-ελάμβανον, fut. to be learned later, συν-έλαβον
συλ-λέγω, συν-έλεγον, συλ-λέξω, συν-έλεξα
συμ-βουλεύω, συν-εβούλευον, συμ-βουλεύσω, συν-εβούλευσα
συμ-πέμπω, συν-έπεμπον, συμ-πέμψω, συν-έπεμψα
σύν
συν-άγω, συν-ῆγον, συν-άξω, συν-ήγαγον
τάφρος
τε, τε . . . καί
τό
τοξότης
τρέπω, ἔτρεπον, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα
ὑμέτερος
ὑστεραῖος, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ
φᾱσί(ν)
φεύγω, ἔφευγον, fut. to be learned later, ἔφυγον
φησί(ν)
φίλος
φόβος
φυγή (cp. φεύγω)
φυλακή
φυλάττω, ἐφύλαττον, φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα (cp. φυλακή)
Χειρίσοφος
χρῡσίον
χώρᾱ
χωρίον (cp. χώρᾱ)
ὦ
ὥστε

XVII

CONSONANT DECLENSION: STEMS ENDING IN A MUTE (PALATAL OR LABIAL). *μέσος* IN PREDICATE POSITION

STEMS ENDING IN A PALATAL OR LABIAL MUTE

187.

Sing. N. V.	κῆρυξ, ὁ, *herald*	φάλαγξ, ἡ, *phalanx*
G.	κήρῡκ-ος	φάλαγγ-ος
D.	κήρῡκ-ι	φάλαγγ-ι
A.	κήρῡκ-α	φάλαγγ-α
Dual N. A. V.	κήρῡκ-ε	φάλαγγ-ε
G. D.	κηρῡ̓κ-οιν	φαλάγγ-οιν

Plur. N. V.	κήρῡκ-ες	φάλαγγ-ες
G.	κηρῡ́κ-ων	φαλάγγ-ων
D.	κήρῡξι(ν)[1]	φάλαγξι(ν)[1]
A.	κήρῡκ-ας	φάλαγγ-ας
Sing. N. V.	διῶρυξ, ἡ, *trench*	κλώψ, ὁ, *thief*
G.	διώρυχ-ος	κλωπ-ός
D.	διώρυχ-ι	κλωπ-ί
A.	διώρυχ-α	κλῶπ-α
Dual N. A. V.	διώρυχ-ε	κλῶπ-ε
G. D.	διωρύχ-οιν	κλωπ-οῖν
Plur. N. V.	διώρυχ-ες	κλῶπ-ες
G.	διωρύχ-ων	κλωπ-ῶν
D.	διώρυξι(ν)[1]	κλωψί(ν)[1]
A.	διώρυχ-ας	κλῶπ-ας

188. The stem of a noun of the consonant declension is seen when the ending **-ος** is dropped from the genitive singular. Thus the stems of the preceding nouns are respectively *κηρῡκ-*, *φαλαγγ-*, *διωρυχ-*, *κλωπ-*.

189. The accent of the paradigms of *κῆρυξ*, *φάλαγξ*, and *διῶρυξ* comes under laws already learned (§§ 57, 59). But *κλώψ*, a word of *one* syllable, comes under a new law, peculiar to the consonant declension: Monosyllables of the consonant declension are accented on the ultima in the genitive and dative of all numbers — with the circumflex, if the ultima has a long vowel or diphthong, otherwise with the acute.

190. The nominative singular of the preceding nouns ends in *sigma;* the dative plural in *-σι*. With *κ*, *γ*, or *χ*, *sigma* unites to form *ξ*, as has already been explained (§ 153. 2); with *π*, *β*, or *φ*, *sigma* unites to form *ψ* (§ 153. 1).

191. **-ας** of the accusative plural is short in the consonant declension, but long in the **ᾱ**-declension (§ 93).

[1] Cp. § 32.

192. **μέσος** in the predicate position has a partitive sense, meaning *middle of:*

ἡ φάλαγξ μέση or μέση ἡ φάλαγξ the middle of the phalanx;

but ἡ μέση φάλαγξ means *the middle phalanx, i.e.* between two others.

193. VOCABULARY XVII

ἀκούω, fut. to be learned later, **ἤκουσα**: *hear, hear of, listen.* With object in gen. or acc. Acoustic.

ἀμφί (may be elided, **ἀμφ'**, before a vowel), prep.: with GEN. *concerning, about* (but in prose **περί** is generally used in this sense); with ACC. *about.* **οἱ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον**: *Cyrus and his men* (lit. those [the men] about Cyrus). Amphi-bious (**βίος** *life*), amphi-theater (**θέᾱτρον**).

δι-έχω (for other forms, see **ἔχω**): *be apart, be separated.*

διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα: *pursue.*

διῶρυξ, υχος, ἡ: *trench, canal.*

Θρᾷξ, Θρᾳκός, ὁ: *a Thracian, Thracian.*

θώρᾱξ, ᾱκος, ὁ: *breastplate.* See p. 86, Fig. 7. Thorax.

κῆρυξ, ῡκος, ὁ: *herald.*

κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ: *thief.* Kleptomania (**μανίᾱ** *madness*).

μέσος, η, ον: *middle, middle of.* **ἐν μέσῳ**: *in the midst, between* (with gen.). **μέσος** in predicate position means *middle of* (§ 192). Meso-potamia (**ποταμός**).

ὅλος, η, ον: *whole, entire, all.* Holo-caust (**κᾶω** *burn*).

οὐκ-έτι, adv.: *no longer, no more.*

πῃ, enclitic adv.: *anywhere.*

πρό (like **περί**, never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep. with gen. only: *before, in front of.* Lat. *prō.*

σάλπιγξ, ιγγος, ἡ: *trumpet.*

στάδιον, ου, τό: *stadium* (race course); then a measure of distance, *stade*, 600 Greek feet. Pl. both **στάδιοι, οἱ**, and **στάδια, τά**. See p. 95, Fig. 9.

φάλαγξ, αγγος, ἡ: *line of battle.* Phalanx.

φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ: *guard, sentinel.* Cp. **φυλακή**.

χίλιοι, αι, α: *thousand.* Kilometer (**μέτρον** *measure*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

194. I. 1. *κήρῡκας δὲ ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν.* 2. *πάρεστι δ' ὁ κῆρυξ.* 3. *τοὺς δὲ κλῶπας ἔλαβον.* 4. *καὶ*

Κλέαρχος εἶχεν ὁπλίτᾱς χῑλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾳ̂κας. 5. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ξενίᾱν ἤκουσαν τῆς σάλπιγγος. 6. Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοῦ εἶχον θώρᾱκας. 7. καὶ οὐκέτι δύο στάδια[1] δι-εῖχον αἱ φάλαγγες. 8. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἦσαν ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. 9. πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης ἦν Κῦρος. 10. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι αὐτοὶ ἔχουσι φύλακας. 11. εἰ δέ πῃ τοῦτο ἦν,[2] τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἦν. 12. οἱ δὲ φύλακες ἐδίωξαν τοὺς κλῶπας.

II. 1. We shall send heralds to Cyrus. 2. We think we shall send heralds to Cyrus. 3. Between the canal and the river are the guards of the enemy. 4. Our soldiers no longer heard the trumpet. 5. Clearchus and his men ran into the middle of the river.

[1] Cp. § 142. [2] = *happened.*

FIG. 7. — Θώρᾱξ.

XVIII

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). STEMS ENDING IN A MUTE (LINGUAL). GENITIVE OF SEPARATION

STEMS ENDING IN A LINGUAL MUTE

195.

Sing. N. V.	ἀσπίς, ἡ, *shield*	ποῦς, ὁ, *foot*	νύξ, ἡ, *night*
G.	ἀσπίδ-ος	ποδ-ός	νυκτ-ός
D.	ἀσπίδ-ι	ποδ-ί	νυκτ-ί
A.	ἀσπίδ-α	πόδ-α	νύκτ-α
Dual N. A. V.	ἀσπίδ-ε	πόδ-ε	νύκτ-ε
G. D.	ἀσπίδ-οιν	ποδ-οῖν	νυκτ-οῖν
Plur. N. V.	ἀσπίδ-ες	πόδ-ες	νύκτ-ες
G.	ἀσπίδ-ων	ποδ-ῶν	νυκτ-ῶν
D.	ἀσπί-σι(ν)[1]	πο-σί(ν)[1]	νυξί(ν)[1]
A.	ἀσπίδ-ας	πόδ-ας	νύκτ-ας

Sing. N. V.	ἄρχων, ὁ, *ruler*	χάρις, ἡ, *grace, gratitude*
G.	ἄρχοντ-ος	χάριτ-ος
D.	ἄρχοντ-ι	χάριτ-ι
A.	ἄρχοντ-α	χάρι-ν
Dual N. A. V.	ἄρχοντ-ε	χάριτ-ε
G. D.	ἀρχόντ-οιν	χαρίτ-οιν
Plur. N. V.	ἄρχοντ-ες	χάριτ-ες
G.	ἀρχόντ-ων	χαρίτ-ων
D.	ἄρχου-σι(ν)[1]	χάρι-σι(ν)[1]
A.	ἄρχοντ-ας	χάριτ-ας

Sing. N. A. V.	στράτευμα, τό, *army*
G.	στρατεύματ-ος
D.	στρατεύματ-ι
Dual N. A. V.	στράτεύματ-ε
G. D.	στρατευμάτ-οιν
Plur. N. A. V.	στρατεύματ-α
G.	στρατευμάτ-ων
D.	στρατεύμα-σι(ν)[1]

[1] Cp. § 32.

ἀσπίς, πούς, νύξ, χάρις

196. Four nouns of this group form the nominative singular by adding *sigma* to the stem. The stem of *ἀσπίς* is *ἀσπιδ-* (§ 188). In the nominative singular and in the dative plural, before *sigma*, the lingual mute is dropped (§ 153. 3). So with *πούς* (stem *ποδ-*), *νύξ* (*νυκτ-*), and *χάρις* (*χαριτ-*). A lengthening of *ο* to *ου* occurs when *ποδς* becomes *πούς*; this is irregular. Since *τ* drops before *σ*, *νύξ* is for *νυκ*[*τ*]*ς*; *χάρις*, for *χαρι*[*τ*]*ς*; *νυξί* (dative plural) is for *νυκ*[*τ*]*σι*.

197. The accusative singular of *χάρις* is *χάριν*, not *χάριτα*. The ending *-ιν* or *-υν*, in the accusative singular, belongs to almost all nouns with stems in *unaccented* *ι* or *υ* followed by a lingual mute. It does not belong to *ἀσπίς*, for *-ιδ-* is accented.

198. For the accent of the monosyllables *πούς* and *νύξ*, see § 189.

ἄρχων, στράτευμα

199. The remaining two nouns of the group form nominatives singular from the mere stem, without any ending. The stem of *ἄρχων* is *ἀρχοντ-*; of *στράτευμα*, *στρατευματ-*. In both instances, final *τ* of the stem is dropped, for a Greek word cannot end in *τ* (§ 10). *ἄρχων*, having *ο* lengthened to *ω* in the nominative singular, is typical of all present active masculine participles of ω-verbs, *e.g.* *λύων* *loosing* and *ἔχων* *having*; as well as of such second aorist participles as *λιπών* *having left* (observe that the latter differs in accent).

a. *στράτευμα* is typical of a very large number of neuters of this declension.

200. *ἄρχουσι*(*ν*), the dative plural of *ἄρχων*, is for *ἀρχοντ-σι*(*ν*). In compensation for the loss of both *ν* and *τ* (for *ν*

must also be dropped before *sigma*, § 133. 4), *o* is lengthened to *ου*.

201. Genitive of separation. — Besides the *of* genitive (§ 53. *f*), there is also a *from* genitive, which is used with verbs (and adjectives and adverbs) to express separation, source, and similar ideas. It corresponds to the Latin "ablative of separation":

ἀπ-έχειν τῆς Ἑλλάδος to be distant from Greece.

The measure of distance, if added, is in the accusative (§ 142).

202. VOCABULARY XVIII

ἀπ-έχω: *be distant, be away*, with gen. of person or place, and acc. of extent of space.

ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ: *ruler, commander*. Really the pres. masc. partic. of **ἄρχω**. Archon.

ἀσπίς, ίδος, ἡ: *shield*. See p. 97.

Δᾱρεῖος, ου, ὁ: *Darīus*.

Ἑλλάς, άδος, ἡ: *Hellas*, the name given by the Hellēnes to their own country. From the Romans they received the appellation *Greeks* and their land was called *Greece* (Lat. *Graecī, Graecia*).

ἦλθον 2 aor.. *I* or *they came* or *went*; inflected like **ἔλιπον**; inf. **ἐλθεῖν**.

κλέπτω (theme **κλεπ-**), **κλέψω, ἔκλεψα**: *steal*. Cp. **κλώψ**.

κνημίς, ῖδος, ἡ: *greave*. See p. 101.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, ᾱ, ον: belonging to **Λακεδαίμων** (*Lacedaemon*), *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*.

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: *night*. **μέσαι νύκτες**: *midnight* (middle watches of the night). Lat. *nox*.

ὄρνῖς, ῖθος, ὁ and **ἡ**: *bird*. Ornithology (**λόγος** *account*).

ὅτε, rel. adv.: *when, at the time when*, commonly with impf. indic.

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ and **ἡ**: *child, boy, girl*. The gen. and dat. dual is exceptionally accented **παίδοιν**, and the gen. pl. **παίδων**. The voc. sing. is **παῖ**. Ped-agogue (**ἄγω**).

πούς, ποδός, ὁ: *foot*. Also the Greek unit of length. Lat. *pēs*. Tri-pod (**τρεῖς, τρία** *three*).

στράτευμα, ατος, τό (cp. **στρατιᾱ́**): *army*.

τόξευμα, ατος, τό (cp. **τοξότης**): *arrow*.

φυγάς, άδος, ὁ (cp. **φεύγω**): *fugitive, exile*.

χάρις, ιτος, ἡ: *grace, favor, gratitude*. **χάριν ἔχειν**: *feel thankful*, with dat.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

203. I. 1. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν. 2. τοὺς δὲ φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε παρ-εῖναι. 3. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τὸν στρατηγὸν ἀπο-πέμψαι ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα.[1] 4. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται εἶχον κνημῖδας καὶ ἀσπίδας. 5. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν ὄρνῖθες. 6. καὶ τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων ἄρχουσιν οὐκ ἐπ-εβούλευεν. 7. ἀπ-εῖχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος χίλια στάδια. 8. ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὅπλα οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα.[2] 9. ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. 10. ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων[3] κλέπτειν.[4] 11. καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. 12. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἦλθε διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. 13. Δᾱρείῳ δὲ ἦσαν παῖδες δύο, Ἀρταξέρξης καὶ Κῦρος. 14. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάριν ἔχομεν. 15. ἐθαύμασαν δὲ τὰ πρὸ[5] ποδῶν.

II. 1. The soldiers have beautiful shields. 2. They are distant from Greece a hundred parasangs. 3. I hear that the commanders are[6] brave. 4. I hear the soldiers took the shields.

---

[1] *I.e.* **τὸ στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε.**
[2] *during this night,* § 142.
[3] *from boyhood.*
[4] § 110. *a.*
[5] *the things before.*
[6] Cp. sentence 10 above.

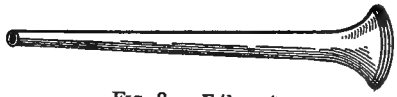

FIG. 8. — Σάλπιγξ.

XIX

DECLENSION OF PRESENT, FUTURE, AND AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLES OF THE Ω-VERB. DECLENSION OF ὤν. ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLES. SUBSTANTIVE PARTICIPLES. CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLES OF TIME, CAUSE, ETC. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLES WITH τυγχάνω

DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN -ων, -ουσα, -ον

204. Participles in *-ων* (with stems in *-οντ-*) are declined, in the masculine, like ἄρχων (§ 195). The neuter nominative and accusative singular consists of the mere stem, which drops *τ*, since this letter cannot end a Greek word (§ 10). The neuter nominative and accusative plural ends in *-α*. Otherwise the neuter forms are like the masculine. The feminine of these participles, ending in *-ουσα*, is declined like θάλαττα (§ 140).

ὤν *being*, PRESENT PARTICIPLE OF εἰμί (§ 101)

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
205. Sing.	N. V.	ὤν	οὖσα	ὄν
	G.	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
	D.	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
	A.	ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν
Dual	N. A. V.	ὄντε	οὔσᾱ	ὄντε
	G. D.	ὄντοιν	οὔσαιν	ὄντοιν
Plur.	N. V.	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα
	G.	ὄντων	οὐσῶν	ὄντων
	D.	οὖσι(ν)	οὔσαις	οὖσι(ν)
	A.	ὄντας	οὔσᾱς	ὄντα

a. The accent of ὤν in the genitive and dative, masculine and neuter, of all numbers is exceptional (§ 189).

κωλῡ́ων *hindering*, PRESENT PARTICIPLE OF κωλῡ́ω

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
206. Sing.	N. V.	κωλῡ́ων	κωλῡ́ουσα	κωλῦον
	G.	κωλῡ́οντος	κωλῡούσης	κωλῡ́οντος
	D.	κωλῡ́οντι	κωλῡούσῃ	κωλῡ́οντι
	A.	κωλῡ́οντα	κωλῡ́ουσαν	κωλῦον
Dual	N. A. V.	κωλῡ́οντε	κωλῡούσᾱ	κωλῡ́οντε
	G. D.	κωλῡόντοιν	κωλῡούσαιν	κωλῡόντοιν
Plur.	N. V.	κωλῡ́οντες	κωλῡ́ουσαι	κωλῡ́οντα
	G.	κωλῡόντων	κωλῡουσῶν	κωλῡόντων
	D.	κωλῡ́ουσι(ν)	κωλῡούσαις	κωλῡ́ουσι(ν)
	A.	κωλῡ́οντας	κωλῡούσᾱς	κωλῡ́οντα

a. κωλῡ́ων is used in the paradigm, instead of λῡ́ων, λῡ́ουσα, λῦον, *loosing*, in order to show the accent in the neuter κωλῦον (not recessive). The two words are declined alike.

207. λῡ́σων, λῡ́σουσα, λῦσον, *about to loose*, future participle of λῡ́ω, is declined like the present participle λῡ́ων or κωλῡ́ων.

SECOND AORIST PARTICIPLES IN -ών, -οῦσα, -όν

λιπών *having left*, SECOND AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLE OF λείπω

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
208. Sing.	N. V.	λιπών	λιποῦσα	λιπόν
	G.	λιπόντος	λιπούσης	λιπόντος
	D.	λιπόντι	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντι
	A.	λιπόντα	λιποῦσαν	λιπόν
Dual	N. A. V.	λιπόντε	λιπούσᾱ	λιπόντε
	G. D.	λιπόντοιν	λιπούσαιν	λιπόντοιν
Plur.	N. V.	λιπόντες	λιποῦσαι	λιπόντα
	G.	λιπόντων	λιπουσῶν	λιπόντων
	D.	λιποῦσι(ν)	λιπούσαις	λιποῦσι(ν)
	A.	λιπόντας	λιπούσᾱς	λιπόντα

a. Observe that λιπών is accented like ὤν (§ 205).

FIRST AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLES IN -ᾱς, -ᾶσα, -αν

ἀκούσᾱς *having heard*, FIRST AORIST ACTIVE PARTICIPLE OF **ἀκούω** (STEM **ἀκουσαντ-**)

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
209. Sing.	N. V.	ἀκούσᾱς	ἀκούσᾶσα	ἀκοῦσαν
	G.	ἀκούσαντος	ἀκουσᾱ́σης	ἀκούσαντος
	D.	ἀκούσαντι	ἀκουσᾱ́σῃ	ἀκούσαντι
	A.	ἀκούσαντα	ἀκούσᾱσαν	ἀκοῦσαν
Dual	N. A. V.	ἀκούσαντε	ἀκουσᾱ́σᾱ	ἀκούσαντε
	G. D.	ἀκουσάντοιν	ἀκουσᾱ́σαιν	ἀκουσάντοιν
Plur.	N. V.	ἀκούσαντες	ἀκούσᾶσαι	ἀκούσαντα
	G.	ἀκουσάντων	ἀκουσᾱσῶν	ἀκουσάντων
	D.	ἀκούσᾶσι(ν)	ἀκουσᾱ́σαις	ἀκούσᾶσι(ν)
	A.	ἀκούσαντας	ἀκουσᾱ́σᾱς	ἀκούσαντα

a. **ἀκούσᾱς** is for **ἀκουσαντς**; the loss of **ντ** before *sigma* in both nominative singular and dative plural is compensated by the lengthening of **α** to **ᾱ** (cp. § 200).

b. **λῦσᾱς** *having loosed* is declined like **ἀκούσᾱς**.

210. For the agreement of the participle with its noun, see § 53. *i.*

211. The participle is often used as an **attributive** adjective:

τὸν *βασιλεύοντα*[1] **Ἀρταξέρξην** the reigning Artaxerxes.

a. The participle may of course take one of the other attributive positions (§§ 67, 69).

212. The participle is very often used as a **substantive**, when it may be translated by a relative clause or by a noun:

οἱ *παρ-όντες* those who are present;
ὁ *κελεύων* the man who commands;

[1] Pres. partic. of **βασιλεύω** *be king*.

οἱ κωλῦσοντες those who will hinder;
οἱ ἐθέλοντες φυγῆς ἄρχειν those that wish to begin flight;
ὁ φεύγων the fugitive, the exile;
ὁ ἄρχων the ruler;
ὁ ἄρξᾱς the man who had (*or* has) ruled.

213. Circumstantial participle. — The participle is very often used without the article, in agreement with a noun, to define the circumstances of an action. This, the circumstantial participle, is most often equivalent to a clause expressing time or cause:

(*Of time*) Κλέαρχος δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῡσίον στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν and when Clearchus had received the gold, he collected an army;
(*Of cause*) τὴν χώρᾱν δι-ήρπασεν ὡς πολεμίᾱν οὖσαν he laid waste the country, since, as-he-alleged (= ὡς), it was hostile.

a. The word ὡς is not essential to the latter construction; but its force (lit. *as*) must be observed when it is used.

b. Particularly to be noticed is the use of ἔχων and λαβών in the sense of *with*, expressing an attendant circumstance:

καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς and Clearchus came with hoplites.

c. The circumstantial participle may also express condition (*if*), concession (*although*), manner, and means.

214. The **time** of the participle is commonly relative to that of the main verb. That is, the present participle indicates the same time with the finite verb, the aorist participle prior time, and the future participle subsequent time. But these distinctions do not always hold, particularly in case of the present and aorist participles.

215. Supplementary participle. — The participle is often used to complete the idea expressed by the main verb. This is known as the supplementary participle. Of the important constructions under this head, only one is introduced in the present lesson: the participle with *τυγχάνω happen, chance:*

ὁ δὲ *παρ-ὼν ἐτύγχανε* and he happened to be present, *or* and he was present, as it happened.

216. The negative with the participle is regularly *οὐ*; but the conditional participle takes *μή*.

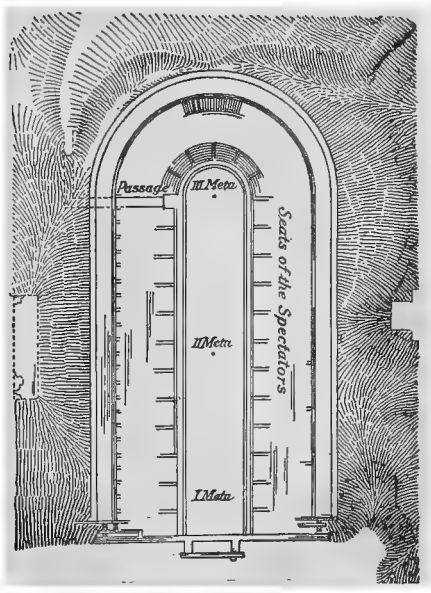

FIG. 9. — Ground Plan of the Stadium at Athens.

217. VOCABULARY XIX

ἀπ-ῆλθον, 2 aor. indic.: *I* or *they went away*. Inf. **ἀπ-ελθεῖν**, partic. **ἀπ-ελθών**.

Ἀρίστιππος, ου, ὁ: *Aristippus*.

βασίλειος, ον: *of a king, royal*. **τὰ βασίλεια** (neut. pl. subst.): *the royal buildings, the palace*.

βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω, ἐβασίλευσα: *be king, rule as king*.

εἶδον, 2 aor. indic.: *I* or *they saw*. Inf. **ἰδεῖν**, partic. **ἰδών**.

κινδῡνεύω, κινδῡνεύσω, ἐκινδῦνευσα: *incur danger, run a risk*.

λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ: *splendor, brilliancy*.

ξένος, ου, ὁ: *guest-friend*.

πεντακόσιοι, αι, α: *five hundred*. Cp. **πέντε**.

πρᾶττω (theme **πρᾱγ-**), **πρᾶξω, ἔπρᾱξα**: *accomplish, effect, do*.

Συρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Syria*.

τυγχάνω (theme **τυχ-**), fut. to be learned later, 2 aor. **ἔτυχον**: *hit* (with gen.); *happen, chance* (with supplementary partic.).

χρῆμα, ατος, τό: a thing of use; commonly pl., *possessions, money*.

218. NOTE. — The present of *πρᾶττω* is formed from the theme *πρᾱγ* + present suffix *y*%; *γ* + *y* by a euphonic law becoming *ττ*. Cp. *φυλάττω*, § 182, NOTE.

The present of *τυγχάνω* is formed from the theme *τυχ* + present suffix *αν*%. *ν*, taking the form *γ* nasal by § 133. 2, is inserted in the theme proper before *χ*. A similar formation is seen in *λαμβάνω* (theme *λαβ-*). In the last verb, *ν* inserted before *β* becomes *μ* (§ 133. 1).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

219. I. 1. ὁ δ' ἀπ-ῆλθε κινδῡνεύσᾱς. 2. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασεν. 3. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῡσίον στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν ἀπὸ[1] τούτων τῶν χρημάτων. 4. Πρόξενος δὲ παρ-ῆν ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς εἰς[2] πεντακοσίους καὶ χῑλίους. 5. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ἀπ-ῆλθον. 6. ἀγαθός ἐστιν ὁ κελεύων τὰ πλοῖα λαβεῖν. 7. ἐν-

[1] *I.e. with the aid of.*

[2] *to the number of.*

ταῦθα ἦν τὰ Δᾱρείου βασίλεια τοῦ Συρίᾱς ἄρξαντος. 8. καὶ σὺν τοῖς παρ-οὖσι τῶν πιστῶν[1] ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον.[2] 9. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἔπρᾱξαν, ἀγάγόντες χῑλίους ὁπλίτᾱς. 10. καὶ ἰδὼν τὰς κώμᾱς, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς. 11. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ.[3] 12. ταῦτα ἔπρᾱξε σὺν τῷ βασιλεύοντι Ἀρταξέρξῃ.

II. 1. Aristippus happened to see the gold. 2. After the generals had led soldiers to the number of a thousand into the village, they went away. 3. Since Proxenus was not present, he did not see those that were[4] in the house.

---

[1] Subst. adj. masc. in part. gen. (§ 179), *of his trusty men.*
[2] Subst. *the midst.* [3] Dat. of possession, § 119. [4] that were = *being.*

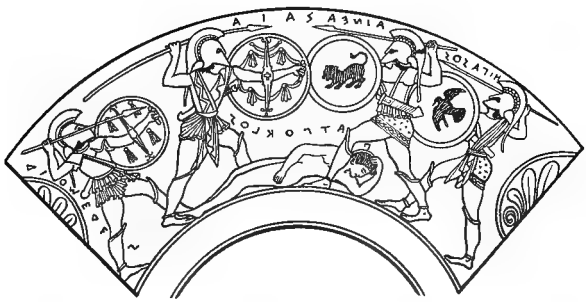

FIG. 10. — Ἀσπίδες.

XX

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ων, -ον*. INFINITIVE WITH δεῖ, χρή, ἔξεστιν, ETC.

STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID

220.

Sing. N. V.	ἀγών, ὁ, *contest*	ἡγεμών, ὁ, *guide*
G.	ἀγῶν-ος	ἡγεμόν-ος
D.	ἀγῶν-ι	ἡγεμόν-ι
A.	ἀγῶν-α	ἡγεμόν-α
Dual N. A. V.	ἀγῶν-ε	ἡγεμόν-ε
G. D.	ἀγών-οιν	ἡγεμόν-οιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀγῶν-ες	ἡγεμόν-ες
G.	ἀγών-ων	ἡγεμόν-ων
D.	ἀγῶ-σι(ν)	ἡγεμό-σι(ν)
A.	ἀγῶν-ας	ἡγεμόν-ας
Sing. N. V.	μήν, ὁ, *month*	λιμήν, ὁ, *harbor*
G.	μην-ός	λιμέν-ος
D.	μην-ί	λιμέν-ι
A.	μῆν-α	λιμέν-α
Dual N. A. V.	μῆν-ε	λιμέν-ε
G. D.	μην-οῖν	λιμέν-οιν
Plur. N. V.	μῆν-ες	λιμέν-ες
G.	μην-ῶν	λιμέν-ων
D.	μη-σί(ν)	λιμέ-σι(ν)
A.	μῆν-ας	λιμέν-ας
Sing. N.	γείτων, ὁ, *neighbor*	κρᾱτήρ, ὁ, *mixing-bowl*
G.	γείτον-ος	κρᾱτῆρ-ος
D.	γείτον-ι	κρᾱτῆρ-ι
A.	γείτον-α	κρᾱτῆρ-α
V.	γεῖτον	κρᾱτήρ
Dual N. A. V.	γείτον-ε	κρᾱτῆρ-ε
G. D.	γειτόν-οιν	κρᾱτήρ-οιν

Plur. N. V.	γείτον-ες	κρᾱτῆρ-ες
G.	γειτόν-ων	κρᾱτῆρ-ων
D.	γείτο-σι(ν)	κρᾱτῆρ-σι(ν)
A.	γείτον-ας	κρᾱτῆρ-ας

a. The nominative singular in the preceding paradigms is the stem without any case-ending; the vowel before final *-ν* or *-ρ* of the stem is always long in the nominative singular.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN -ων, -ον

221. Adjectives in *-ων* with stems in *-ον* are declined like *γείτων* (§ 220). There are separate forms for the neuter in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural. The feminine is like the masculine. The accent is recessive (cp. § 44).

222.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	εὐδαίμων *prosperous*	εὔδαιμον
G.	εὐδαίμον-ος	
D.	εὐδαίμον-ι	
A.	εὐδαίμον-α	εὔδαιμον
V.	εὔδαιμον	
Dual N. A. V.	εὐδαίμον-ε	
G. D.	εὐδαιμόν-οιν	
Plur. N. V.	εὐδαίμον-ες	εὐδαίμον-α
G.	εὐδαιμόν-ων	
D.	εὐδαίμο-σι(ν)	
A.	εὐδαίμον-ας	εὐδαίμον-α

223. The **infinitive** may be used as the apparent subject of *δεῖ* or *χρή* *it is necessary*, *ἔστι(ν)* *it is possible* (§ 102), *ἔξ-εστι(ν)* *it is possible* or *permitted*, *καλόν ἐστι(ν)* *it is honorable*, and many similar expressions, particularly impersonal verbs:

δεῖ (or *χρὴ*) *αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀγαθούς* it is necessary for them to be brave;
τῆς νυκτὸς οὐκ ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν in the night it is not possible to see the things before one's feet;

ἔξ-εστιν αὐτοῖς πιστὰ λαβεῖν it is possible for them to receive pledges; οὐ καλόν ἐστι κλέπτειν it is not honorable to steal.

a. The infinitive is neuter in gender, as the last example shows.

b. With ἔστι(ν) and ἔξ-εστι(ν) the dative is the normal case (as αὐτοῖς above), if any noun or pronoun is needed.

c. The negative with the infinitive, when not in indirect discourse, is μή (cp. § 98).

224. VOCABULARY XX

ἀγών, ῶνος, ὁ: *gathering, contest, games.* Agony (**ἀγωνιᾱ**).

γείτων, ονος, ὁ: *neighbor.*

δεῖ (contracted from **δέει**), fut. **δεήσει**, aor. **ἐδέησε**, impers. verb: *it is necessary.*

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ: *a Greek.* Cp. **Ἑλλάς.**

ἔξ-εστι(ν), 3 sing. of **ἔξ-ειμι**: *it is possible* or *permitted.*

ἔτι, adv.: *still, yet, besides, longer, again.*

εὐδαίμων, ον: *fortunate, prosperous.*

ἡγεμών, όνος, ὁ: *leader, guide, commander.*

κατά (**κατ'** and **καθ'**, § 31), prep.. with GEN. *down from;* with ACC. *down over, down along, along, opposite, against, by,* in a local sense; *according to; by* in a distributive sense, as **κατὰ μῆνα**: *by the month, monthly.* Cata-strophe (**στροφή** *turning*).

κρᾱτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ: *mixing-bowl.* Lat. *crātēra.* Crater. See p. 109.

λιμήν, ένος, ὁ: *harbor.*

μήν, μηνός, ὁ: *month.* Lat. *mēnsis.*

μισθός, οῦ, ὁ: *pay.*

νῦν, adv.: *now* (of time). Lat. *nunc.*

προσ-ελαύνω: *drive up, ride up, draw near.*

σωτηρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *safety.*

χρή (**ἐστί** is understood, never expressed): *there is need, it behooves, it is necessary; one must.* Inf. **χρῆναι.**

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

225. I. 1. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει. 2. ὁ δ' ἔφευγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν. 3. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται λαμβάνουσι τὸν κατὰ μῆνα μισθόν.

4. ἔφη δὲ ἥξειν εἰς λιμένα. 5. νῦν δὲ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρᾱς σωτηρίᾱς ὁ ἀγών ἐστιν. 6. καὶ γείτων εἰμὶ τῆς Ἑλλάδος. 7. ἦν δὲ οἶνος ἐν κρᾱτῆρσιν. 8. ὥστε ἔξ-εστιν ἰδεῖν τὸν ἀγῶνα. 9. χρὴ μέντοι δια-βαίνειν τὸν Εὐφρᾰ́την ποταμόν. 10. δεῖ οὖν Κλέαρχον πείθειν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 11. καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὁπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν. 12. ὁ δ' ἔφη εἶναι αὐτοῖς χώρᾱν καλὴν καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 13. ἔτυχε γὰρ ἔτι προσ-ελαύνων. 14. οἱ δ' ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν οὔ φᾱσιν[1] εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.

II. 1. It is not possible to obtain[2] provisions. 2. These are brave leaders. 3. The Greeks must cross the Euphrates river. 4. It behooves the captains to be brave.

---

[1] § 156. 1. *a.* [2] = *take.*

FIG. 11. — *Κνημίς.*

XXI

PRONOUNS (*Continued*). THE INTERROGATIVE τίς. THE INDEFINITE τις. THE INDEFINITE RELATIVE ὅστις. THE PREDICATE GENITIVE. INFINITIVE WITH ἀνάγκη AND ὥρᾱ

THE INTERROGATIVE τίς, τί, *who? which? what?*

226. The interrogative never changes its acute accent to the grave.

	MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.
Sing. N.	τίς		τί
G.		τίνος, τοῦ	
D.		τίνι, τῷ	
A.	τίνα		τί
Dual N. A.		τίνε	
G. D.		τίνοιν	
Plur. N.	τίνες		τίνα
G.		τίνων	
D.		τίσι(ν)	
A.	τίνας		τίνα

THE INDEFINITE τις, τι, *any, some, anybody, somebody, anything, something; a certain*

227. The indefinite is always enclitic (§§ 21, 103, 104).

	MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.
Sing. N.	τις		τι
G.		τινός, του	
D.		τινί, τῳ	
A.	τινά		τι
Dual N. A.		τινέ	
G. D.		τινοῖν	
Plur. N.	τινές		τινά
G.		τινῶν	
D.		τισί(ν)	
A.	τινάς		τινά

THE INDEFINITE RELATIVE ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, *whoever* OR *whichever*, *whatever*

228. The indefinite relative is formed of the relative ὅς, ἥ, ὅ (§ 125), and the indefinite τις, τι (§ 227), both parts being declined. The combination is treated as *two words* with reference to accent. So the circumflex appears to rest on the antepenult of οὑτινος, which is accented as if οὗ τινος.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι (or ὅ,τι)
G.	οὑτινος, ὅτου	ἧστινος	οὑτινος, ὅτου
D.	ᾧτινι, ὅτῳ	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι, ὅτῳ
A.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι (or ὅ,τι)
Dual N. A.	ὥτινε	ὥτινε	ὥτινε
G. D.	οἷντινοιν	οἱντινοιν	οἷντινοιν
Plur. N.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
G.	ὧντινων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων
D.	οἷστισι(ν)	αἷστισι(ν)	οἷστισι(ν)
A.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα

229. **Predicate genitive.** — The genitive in any of its relations (possessive, partitive, etc.) may stand after the verb, as a part of the predicate:

αἱ δὲ κῶμαι Κύρου ἦσαν the villages belonged to Cyrus (poss. gen.); ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Πρόξενος and among them was Proxenus (part. gen.).

230. With ἀνάγκη [ἐστί(ν)] *it is necessary*, ὥρᾱ [ἐστί(ν)] *it is the proper time*, and similar expressions, the **infinitive** is used to complete the meaning. The brackets indicate that ἐστί(ν) may be omitted:

ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς (or αὐτοὺς) λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια it is necessary for them to get provisions;

ὥρᾱ αὐτοῖς ἥκειν it is high time for them to arrive.

231. VOCABULARY XXI

Ἀθηναῖος, ᾱ, ον: *Athenian.*

ἀνάγκη, ης, ἡ: *necessity.* With or without **ἐστί(ν)**: *it is necessary.* Inf. **ἀνάγκην εἶναι.**

γυμνής, ῆτος, ὁ: *light-armed warrior*, javelin-hurler, bowman, or slinger.

δή, postpositive particle, emphasizing the preceding word. **δή** is difficult to render adequately, but is sometimes translated by *now, then, accordingly, very, in truth, indeed.*

εἰσ-ἦλθον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they came in, entered.* Inf. **εἰσ-ελθεῖν**, partic. **εἰσ-ελθών.**

καίω or **κᾰ́ω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα**: *burn, light, kindle.* Caustic.

νεᾱνίσκος, ου, ὁ: *young man.*

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι (or **ὅ,τι**): *whoever* or *whichever, whatever; who, which, what;* often with conditional force, *if anybody* (= **εἴ τις**), *if anything* (= **εἴ τι**); see § 228.

σφενδόνη, ης, ἡ: *sling.* See p. 112, Fig. 13.

τίς, τί: *who? which? what?* see § 226. **τί**: *what?* often as adv. *why?*

τις, τι: *any, some, anybody, somebody, anything, something; a certain*; see § 227.

χίλιοι, οι, οἱ: *grass*, green *fodder.*

χρήσιμος, η, ον, and **ος, ον**: *useful.*

ὥρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *season, hour, fit* or *proper time.* See § 230. Lat. *hōra.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

232. I. 1. ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ στρατηγὸς Ἀθηναῖος. 2. τίνας δὲ χρὴ φύλακας εἶναι; 3. οὗτοι δὴ ἔκᾶον καὶ χῖλὸν καὶ εἴ τι[1] ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. 4. εἰσ-ἦλθον δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινές. 5. καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπ-έθανον τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 6. τίνες ἐστέ; 7. τί οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς πελταστᾱ́ς; 8. οἱ γὰρ γυμνῆτες ἔλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπῶν. 9. τίνες ἔχουσι σφενδόνᾱς; 10. ταῦτα τὰ ἔργα ἐστὶν ἀπόρων[2] οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι πρᾱ́ττειν κακόν

[1] **εἴ τι** (= *whatsoever*) might be replaced by **ὅ τι**, as in sentence 14.

[2] *characteristic of men without resources*, predicate gen. akin to possessive.

τι. 11. ἔτυχε δὲ ἐφ' ἵππου[1] ἐλαύνων. 12. νεᾱνίσκος δέ τις τῶν παρόντων συν-εβούλευσε τάδε. 13. οὐχ ὥρᾱ ἐστὶ μέλλειν.[2] 14. ἀνάγκη δὲ Προξένῳ συμ-βουλεῦσαι αὐτοῖς ὅ τι καλόν ἐστιν. 15. τὰ γὰρ ὅπλα Κύρου ἦν.

II. 1. Who was riding on his horse? 2. Some of the arms belong to Cyrus. 3. He must do whatever is[3] honorable. 4. Proxenus came in with some of his friends.

XXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (PRESENT AND AORIST) ACTIVE OF Ω-VERBS. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. MORE VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS. WARNING FUTURE CONDITIONS. PURPOSE CLAUSES. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

233. The thematic vowel of the subjunctive is ω before μ and ν, otherwise η. This is also the present tense suffix of λῡ́ω and similar verbs. The first aorist tense suffix is σω before μ and ν, otherwise ση. The primary personal endings, as seen in the present indicative, are used in *all* subjunctive tenses.

234. The imperfect tense belongs only to the indicative mood. And there is no future tense in the subjunctive.

235. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λῡ́-ω		λῡ́-ω-μεν
2.	λῡ́-ῃς	λῡ́-η-τον	λῡ́-η-τε
3.	λῡ́-ῃ	λῡ́-η-τον	λῡ́-ω-σι(ν)

[1] *on horseback.* [2] In sense of *delay.* [3] Use pres. indic.

FIRST AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λῡ́-σω		λῡ́-σω-μεν
2.	λῡ́-σῃς	λῡ́-ση-τον	λῡ́-ση-τε
3.	λῡ́-σῃ	λῡ́-ση-τον	λῡ́-σω-σι(ν)

a. The aorist subjunctive is not augmented. Augment belongs to the secondary tenses of the indicative only (§ 77).

236. Like the present subjunctive of λῡ́ω are inflected the present subjunctives of all the other ω-verbs hitherto studied. In the formation of the first aorist subjunctive of verbs with mute themes, however, the same euphonic changes are observed at the end of the theme as in the first aorist indicative (§ 164). Thus the first aorist subjunctive of πέμπω is πέμψω, πέμψῃς, etc.; of ἁρπάζω: ἁρπάσω, ἁρπάσῃς, etc.; of πείθω: πείσω, πείσῃς, etc.

237. Verbs like ἄγω and λείπω, which have no first aorist indicative, have no first aorist subjunctive. But they have a second aorist subjunctive which does not differ in time or use from the first aorist. The inflection is the same as that of the present subjunctive.

238. SECOND AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

(*Cp. the second aorist indicative* ἔλιπον, § 85)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λίπ-ω		λίπ-ω-μεν
2.	λίπ-ῃς	λίπ-η-τον	λίπ-η-τε
3.	λίπ-ῃ	λίπ-η-τον	λίπ-ω-σι(ν)

239. The second aorist subjunctive of ἄγω is ἀγάγ-ω, ἀγάγ-ῃς, etc.

240. **Tenses of the subjunctive.** — While the subjunctive has no future tense, both the present and the aorist may

refer to future time, as will be evident from a study of the constructions in the following lessons. The difference between the two tenses is this: the present denotes continued or repeated action; the aorist denotes a simple occurrence of an action.

241. More vivid future conditions. — *ἐάν* (or *ἤν* or *ἄν*) *if* may introduce the subjunctive (present or aorist) to express a vivid future condition. The conclusion is expressed by the future indicative, or by the imperative, or by any other forms that *may* imply future time, such as *χρή*, *ἔξεστι(ν)*, etc.:

ἐὰν ὁ στρατηγὸς κελεύῃ, ἥξει if the general orders, he will come.

a. The negative of the protasis is always *μή*; of the apodosis, *οὐ*. Cp. § 106. *a* and *b*.

242. To express something unpleasant, like a **warning** or a threat, the protasis may have *εἰ* and the future indicative:

εἰ κλέψεις τι, πράγματα ἕξεις if you steal anything, you will have trouble.

Observe that *εἰ* cannot introduce the subjunctive. Nor can *ἐάν* introduce the indicative.

243. Purpose clauses. — *ἵνα*, *ὅπως*, and *ὡς*, all meaning *in order that*, may introduce the subjunctive (present or aorist) to express a purpose. The subjunctive is the regular construction when the verb of the main clause, on which the purpose depends, is a primary tense (§ 39). The construction after secondary tenses will be stated later (§ 268). The negative is *μή*:

ὁ στρατηγὸς ἥκει, ἵνα πείσῃ τοὺς στρατιώτας the general has come that he may (*i.e.* to) persuade the soldiers.

244. Hortatory subjunctive. — The subjunctive is used alone to express an exhortation in the first person. The negative is μή:

καλῶς ἀπο-θνήσκωμεν let us die honorably.

245. VOCABULARY XXII

ἄν (εἰ + ἄν) = **ἐάν**: *if*, conj. with subjv.

δᾱρεικός, οῦ, ὁ: *daric*, a Persian gold coin, worth about $5.40.

ἐάν (εἰ + ἄν), conj. with subjv.: *if*.

ἕκαστος, η, ον: *each*; used in predicate position to modify a noun with the article; used also without the article.

ἔλθω: subjv. of **ἦλθον**.

ἤν (εἰ + ἄν) = **ἐάν**: *if*, conj. with subjv.

ἴδω: subjv. of **εἶδον**.

ἵνα, conj. expressing purpose: *in order that, that*, § 243.

καλῶς, adv. (cp. **καλός**): *beautifully, nobly, honorably*.

μᾶλλον, comp. adv.: *more, better, rather*.

οἴκαδε, adv.: *homeward, home*. Cp. **οἰκίᾱ**.

ὅπως, conj.: *in order that, that*, with purpose clause (§ 243).

πάσχω, fut. to be learned later, 2 aor. **ἔπαθον**: *suffer*. **πάσχω τι** (§ 181): *suffer something*, euphemism for *be hurt* or *be killed*. Sym-pathy (συν-).

πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό: something done (cp. **πρᾶττω**), *business, deed, matter, difficulty*; pl. sometimes *circumstances*, often *trouble*. Pragmatic.

ταχύ, adv.: *quickly*.

ὡς, rel. adv.. *as, as if*, with causal partic. (§ 213. *a*); conj.: *in order that, that*, with purpose clause (§ 243).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

246. I. 1. μὴ μέλλωμεν. 2. ἦν δέ τι μὴ πάθωμεν, ἔστιν οἴκαδε ἥκειν. 3. ἄν τινα ἴδωμεν, οὐκ ἔστιν αὐτῷ ἀπο-φυγεῖν. 4. πράγματα δ' ἕξομεν, ἐὰν κατὰ θάλατταν ἔλθωμεν. 5. ἀλλὰ κάμωμεν τὴν χώρᾱν. 6. δεῖ οὖν ἔχειν φύλακάς τινας ἵνα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθωσι τῆς νυκτός. 7. ἄξω στρατιώτᾱς καὶ ἵππους ὅπως, ἄν τινα τῶν πολεμίων ἴδωμεν, μὴ ἀπο-φύγῃ. 8. ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον

θαυμάσητε, πέμψω δᾱρεικὸν μισθὸν[1] ἑκάστῳ στρατιώτῃ. 9. ταχὺ γάρ, ἂν ἐθέλῃς, ἥξω. 10. εἰ καύσεις τὴν χώρᾱν, πράγματα ἕξεις. 11. ἐὰν οἱ ἡμέτεροι παῖδες καλῶς ἀπο-θνήσκωσιν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, χρὴ χάριν ἔχειν τοῖς θεοῖς. 12. ὁ δ' ἥκει ὡς καύσῃ τὴν χώρᾱν ὡς[2] πολεμίᾱν οὖσαν.

II. 1. He will have trouble, if he leads his soldiers down the steep road. 2. Let us not take provisions from the hostile country. 3. He will pursue the enemy quickly in order that they may not escape.

---

[1] *as pay.* [2] Cp. § 213. *a.*

FIG. 12. — Κρᾱτήρ.

XXIII

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF εἰμί. USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*). CONDITIONAL RELATIVE SENTENCES: MORE VIVID FUTURE

247. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF εἰμί *I am*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	ὦ		ὦμεν
2.	ἦς	ἦτον	ἦτε
3.	ἦ	ἦτον	ὦσι(ν)

248. More vivid future **conditional relative** sentences. — 1. In place of εἰ + ἄν (*i.e.* ἐάν) a relative pronoun like ὅς, ὅστις, *whoever*, or a relative adverb like ὅπου *wherever*, always with ἄν, may introduce the subjunctive (present or aorist). This use of the subjunctive is known as a *conditional relative protasis*. The future indicative or an equivalent is used in the conclusion. Thus ὅστις ἄν = ἐάν τις *if anybody*; ὅπου ἄν = ἐάν που *if anywhere*; ὅποι ἄν = ἐάν ποι *if anywhither*.

πράξω ἅ τινα ἂν συμ-βουλεύσῃς I will do whatever you advise (*or* shall advise);

ἄξει στράτευμα ὅποι ἂν ἐθέλῃ he will lead an army whithersoever he pleases.

a. In this use the antecedent of the relative is always indefinite. The relative with a definite antecedent has the construction of an independent sentence, — commonly the indicative, as already has been illustrated (§§ 138. I. 4, 145. I. 8, etc.). But not all relatives with the indicative have definite antecedents (cp. § 232. I. 14).

2. ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὅτε (all meaning *when*), and similar words, when they introduce future time, take the subjunctive with ἄν.

a. It is to be noted that ἐπεί + ἄν = ἐπήν or ἐπᾶν (*when*); ἐπειδή + ἄν = ἐπειδάν (*when*); ὅτε + ἄν = ὅταν (*when*); of these words, ἐπειδάν (or ἐπᾶν) meaning *when* or *after*, when used with the aorist subjunctive, may introduce completed future time:

ἐπειδὰν ἔλθῃ τὰ πλοῖα, τότε ἕξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια when the boats arrive (*or* after the boats have arrived), then we shall have provisions.

249. NOTE ON ἄν. — The particle ἄν has no adequate equivalent in English. Its uses in Greek, however, are most important. It appeared in this book first in §§ 241, 245, as a part of the word ἐάν or ἤν or ἄν. It makes no difference whatsoever in the *translation* of a subjunctive, which it accompanies in a protasis. Its force with other moods will be studied later.

The particle ἄν must not be confused with the conjunction ἄν *if* (= εἰ + ἄν, *i.e.* ἐάν). Notice the difference in the quantity of the *alpha*.

250. VOCABULARY XXIII

δέῃ, subjv. of **δεῖ**, impers. verb: *it is necessary*. Cp. § 224.

ἐπειδάν (**ἐπειδή** + **ἄν**), conj. with subjv.: *when, after*.

θύω, θύσω, ἔθῡσα: *sacrifice, offer*.

ὅποι, rel. adv.: *whithersoever, whither, where*.

ὅπου, rel. adv.: *wherever, where*.

πέρᾱν, adv.: *across, on the other side*, with the gen. **ἐν τῷ πέρᾱν**: *on the other side* or *bank*.

πρῶτος, η, ον: *first*. Adv. **πρῶτον**: *first*.

τάλαντον, ου, τό: *talent*, an amount of money = about $1080.

τρέχω, 2 aor. **ἔδραμον** (Vocabulary XI): *run*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

251. I. 1. ἢν ἀνάγκη ᾖ, στράτευμα ἄξομεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίᾱν χώρᾱν. 2. τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσομεν ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς καλὸν πεδίον ἥκωμεν. 3. Χειρίσοφος δὲ κελεύει τοὺς πελταστὰς πράττειν ὅ τι ἂν ὁ λοχᾱγὸς

ἐθέλῃ. 4. ἐπειδὰν δὲ δράμωσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους στρατιώτᾱς δια-βαίνειν τὸν ποταμόν. 5. ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέρᾱν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ᾖ, οὗτος ἕξει μισθὸν τάλαντον. 6. δεῖ δὲ τρέχειν, ἐπειδὰν ὁ στρατηγὸς κελεύσῃ. 7. τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τούτους φυλάξομεν, ὅπως ἡγεμόνες ὦσιν ὅποι ἂν δέῃ ἐλθεῖν. 8. ἀνάγκη δὲ πρᾶξαι ἃ[1] ἂν συμ-βουλεύσῃς. 9. τούτῳ παρα-σχήσετε ὅ τι ἂν ἄγητε.

II. 1. When you come home, you shall have a talent as pay. 2. Whoever is first on the other bank shall lead the soldiers. 3. We shall do whatever the general commands.

[1] Cognate obj. (§ 181); the antecedent **ταῦτα** is understood.

FIG. 13. — Slinger (*σφενδονήτης*).

XXIV

THE OPTATIVE (PRESENT, FUTURE, AND AORIST) ACTIVE OF Ω–VERBS. TENSES OF THE OPTATIVE. SIMPLE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AFTER VERBS THAT TAKE ὅτι OR ὡς *that*

252. The thematic vowel (§ 41) in the present and second aorist optative is *o* in all numbers and persons. The tense sign of the future optative is *σο*; of the first aorist, *σα*. There is added to these vowels, in each tense, the mood sign of the optative,[1] which is *ι*; in the third person plural the mood sign is *ιε*. Then follow the personal endings, which are mostly the same as in the imperfect indicative (secondary endings). But the first person singular ends in *-μι*.

253. Final *-οι* and *-αι* are long in the optative (cp. § 23).

254. PRESENT OPTATIVE ACTIVE OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λῡ́-οι-μι		λῡ́-οι-μεν
2.	λῡ́-οι-ς	λῡ́-οι-τον	λῡ́-οι-τε
3.	λῡ́-οι	λῡ-οί-την	λῡ́-οιε-ν

FUTURE OPTATIVE ACTIVE

1.	λῡ́-σοι-μι		λῡ́-σοι-μεν
2.	λῡ́-σοι-ς	λῡ́-σοι-τον	λῡ́-σοι-τε
3.	λῡ́-σοι	λῡ-σοί-την	λῡ́-σοιε-ν

FIRST AORIST OPTATIVE ACTIVE

1.	λῡ́-σαι-μι		λῡ́-σαι-μεν
2.	λῡ́-σαι-ς, -σειας[2]	λῡ́-σαι-τον	λῡ́-σαι-τε
3.	λῡ́-σαι, -σειε(ν)[2]	λῡ-σαί-την	λῡ́-σαιε-ν, -σειαν[2]

[1] No account is made here of the sign ιη, which will be seen later in the book.

[2] The regular Attic Greek ending.

255. Like the present optative of λύω are inflected the present optatives of all the other ω-verbs hitherto studied. In the formation of the future and first aorist optative of verbs with mute themes, however, the same euphonic laws are observed as in the future and first aorist indicative (§§ 153, 164):

πέμψοιμι (fut. opt. of πέμπω), πέμψαιμι (aor. opt.);
λείψοιμι (fut. opt. of λείπω);
ἄξοιμι (fut. opt. of ἄγω);
πείσοιμι (fut. opt. of πείθω), πείσαιμι (aor. opt.);
ἁρπάσοιμι (fut. opt. of ἁρπάζω), ἁρπάσαιμι (aor. opt.).

256. Verbs like ἄγω and λείπω, which have no first aorist indicative or subjunctive, have no first aorist optative (cp. §§ 237, 238); but they have a second aorist optative which does not differ in time or use from the first aorist. The inflection is the same as that of the present optative.

257. SECOND AORIST OPTATIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	λίπ-οι-μι		λίπ-οι-μεν
2.	λίπ-οι-ς	λίπ-οι-τον	λίπ-οι-τε
3.	λίπ-οι	λιπ-οί-την	λίπ-οιε-ν

258. The second aorist optative active of ἄγω is ἀγάγοιμι, ἀγάγοις, etc.

259. Tenses of the optative. — The distinction between the present and aorist optative (when not in indirect discourse) is not one of time, which is determined by the context. It is rather this: the present denotes continued or repeated action, while the aorist denotes a simple occurrence of an action. Compare the distinction between the present and aorist subjunctive (§ 240).

a. The tenses of the optative in indirect discourse, however, denote exact time, *i.e.* present, past, or future.

b. The future optative is regularly found only in indirect discourse, when it represents the future indicative of direct discourse.

SIMPLE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE AFTER VERBS THAT TAKE ὅτι *that* OR ὡς *that*

260. While φησί, ἔφη, and the other forms of this verb (φημί) are followed by the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 110), the common verb **λέγω** *say* takes ὅτι or ὡς *that* and a finite mood. The original mood and tense of the quoted verb are always retained after a primary tense (§ 39) of λέγω; but after a secondary tense of λέγω the mood of the quoted verb *may* be changed to the optative. The tense is regularly kept unchanged.

a. The imperfect indicative is usually retained.

261. When direct statements are made indirect, necessary changes in *person* are made as in English. The negative of the direct discourse is retained.

262. Like λέγω *say* are used **εἶπον**, 2 aor., *I said*, **ἀκούω** *hear*, **μανθάνω** *learn* (and several other frequent verbs that will be introduced later).

a. **ἀκούω** *hear* permits more than one construction; for example, it takes the infinitive also (cp. § 203. I. 10).

EXAMPLES

1. *Original statement:* οὐκ ἔχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια we have no provisions.

   Quoted statement in primary sequence: λέγουσιν ὅτι (or ὡς) οὐκ ἔχουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια they say that they have no provisions.

Quoted statement in secondary sequence: ἔλεγον ὅτι (or ὡς) οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια they said that they had no provisions.

The original mood and tense ἔχουσι might have been retained.

2. *Original statement:* κατ-είδομεν σκηνάς we observed tents.
Quoted statement: ἔλεγον ὅτι κατ-ίδοιεν σκηνάς they said that they (had) observed tents.

The original mood and tense κατ-εἶδον might have been retained.

3. *Original statement:* αὐτὸς ταῦτα πράξω I myself will do this.
Quoted statement: εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτὸς ταῦτα πράξοι he said that he himself would do this.

The original mood and tense πράξει might have been retained.

263. VOCABULARY XXIV

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα: *write.* Graphic.

δι-ῆλθον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they went through; spread* with **λόγος** (*word* or *report*) as subject; subjv. **δι-έλθω**, opt. **δι-έλθοιμι**, inf. **δι-ελθεῖν**, partic. **δι-ελθών**.

εἶπον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they said*; subjv. **εἴπω**, opt. **εἴποιμι**, inf. **εἰπεῖν**, partic. **εἰπών**.

ἔνθεν, rel. adv.. *whence, from which, where.*

Καρδοῦχοι, ων, οἱ: the *Cardūchi*, a mountain people on the left bank of the Tigris.

κατ-εἶδον, 2 aor.. *I* or *they looked down on, descried, observed*; subjv. **κατ-ίδω**, opt. **κατ-ίδοιμι**, inf. **κατ-ιδεῖν**, partic. **κατ-ιδών**.

λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα: *say* (to be distinguished from **-λέγω** of **συλ-λέγω** *collect*).

μανθάνω (theme **μαθ-**; on the formation of the present cp. **λαμ-βάνω** and **τυγχάνω**, § 218), fut. to be learned later, 2 aor. **ἔμαθον**: *learn.*

ξύλον, ου, τό: *wood;* pl. hewn or split *wood; timbers.* **Xylophone** (**φωνή** *voice*).

ὅτι, conj., introducing a quotation: *that.*

Πέρσης, ου, ὁ: *a Persian.*

Περσικός, ή, όν (**Πέρσης**): *Persian.*

σατράπης, ου, ὁ: *satrap*, Persian name for a provincial governor appointed by the king.

τότε, adv. of time: *then, at that time.*

ὑποψίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *suspicion.*

ὡς, conj., introducing a quotation: *that.* Cp. also Vocabulary XXII.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

264. I. 1. ἔλεγον ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν. 2. ὑποψία ἦν[1] ὅτι Κῦρος ἄγοι πρὸς Ἀρταξέρξην. 3. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. 4. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν ξύλα συλ-λέγοντες. 5. ἔλεγον ὡς κατ-ίδοιεν παῖδας καὶ νεᾱνίσκους. 6. ὁ δὲ Πέρσης ἀκούσᾱς ὅτι Χειρίσοφος πάλιν ἥξοι ἦλθεν εἰς τὴν κώμην. 7. ὁ δ' εἶπεν ὅτι ἀκούοι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφρᾱτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι.[2] 8. δι-ῆλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κῦρος. 9. οἱ δ' εἶπον ὅτι ὁ σατράπης ἀπ-έχει παρασάγγην. 10. ὁ δὲ γράφει ἐπιστολὴν ὅτι ἥξει. 11. ἔμαθεν ὅτι Ἀρταξέρξης ἔχοι τὸ μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. 12. ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι ἥκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἳ αὐτοὺς ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

II. 1. They said they would come into the village. 2. On the next day a man came saying that he had observed the tents of the enemy. 3. They heard that[3] the enemy were[3] at the Euphrates river.

---

[1] *there was a suspicion.* [2] § 110. *a.* [3] Use the inf.

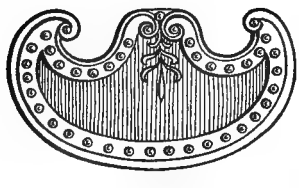

FIG. 14. — Shield (πέλτη) carried by the πελταστής (cp. Fig. 4).

XXV

PRESENT OPTATIVE OF εἰμί. USES OF THE OPTATIVE (*Continued*). POTENTIAL OPTATIVE. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS. PURPOSE CLAUSES IN THE SECONDARY SEQUENCE

265. PRESENT OPTATIVE OF εἰμί *I am*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
1.	εἴην		εἴημεν or εἶμεν
2.	εἴης	εἴητον or εἶτον	εἴητε or εἶτε
3.	εἴη	εἰήτην or εἴτην	εἴησαν or εἶεν

Several of these forms show the longer optative mood sign ιη. Cp. § 252.

266. Potential optative. — The present or aorist optative is used with ἄν (an untranslatable particle, § 249) to indicate that something *may* or *might* happen. The degree of probability varies according to the context. The negative is οὐ:

τοῦτο οὐκ ἂν εἴη ἀγαθόν this would not be a good thing.

a. The adverb ἄν never stands first in its sentence or clause, but follows an emphatic word, especially a negative or a verb.

267. Less vivid future conditions. — εἰ *if* may introduce the optative (present or aorist) to express a less vivid (cp. § 241) future condition. The conclusion is expressed by the optative with ἄν. The negative of the protasis is μή; of the apodosis, οὐ:

εἰ ἴδοιμι αὐτούς, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς αὐτούς if I should see them, I should go to them.

268. Purpose clauses in the secondary sequence. — *ἵνα*, *ὅπως*, and *ὡς*, all meaning *in order that*, may introduce the optative (present or aorist) to express a purpose. The optative is found only when the verb of the main clause is secondary in tense; and even then the subjunctive (§ 243) is sometimes found. The negative is *μή*:

Κῦρος ἦλθεν ἵνα ἴδοι τοὺς στρατιώτας Cyrus came in order that he might (*i.e.* to) see his soldiers.

269. VOCABULARY XXV

Ἀριαῖος, ου, ὁ: *Ariaeus*, a Persian.
δίκαιος, ᾱ, ον (cp. **δίκη**): *just*.
δικαίως, adv.: *justly*.
ἐξ-ῆλθον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they went forth*. Cp. **δι-ῆλθον**, § 263.
κενός, ή, όν: *empty; vain, groundless*. **Ceno-taph** (**τάφος** *burial-place*).
Μένων, ωνος, ὁ: *Menon*.
οὔ-ποτε: *never*.
ταχέως, adv.: *quickly, swiftly, rapidly*; = **ταχύ**.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

270. I. 1. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Ἀριαῖος ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ[1] εἴη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων. 2. ἦγε ταχέως ὥστε δῆλον ἦν[2] ὅτι πράγματα εἴη. 3. ἔμαθον δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἴη. 4. οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἄν τις εἴποι. 5. χάριν αὐτοῖς ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. 6. οὐκ ἂν θαυμάζοιμι εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι φεύγοιεν. 7. τί ἂν πάσχοιεν οἱ ἄνθρωποι; 8. τίς αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν εἶναι; 9. Μένων δ' ἤθελεν ἄρχειν ὅπως χρήματα λαμβάνοι. 10. τὴν δὲ χώρᾱν δι-αρπάσαι οὔποτε ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν. 11. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα ἔπεμψεν, ἵνα διὰ τῆς

[1] *halting place.* [2] *it was evident.*

πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. 12. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξ-ῆλθεν ὅπως μάθοι τὰ[1] περὶ Προξένου.

II. 1. If Menon should seize the possessions, I should not be surprised. 2. It was evident that Cyrus was[2] his friend. 3. Cyrus marched rapidly, in order to take the enemy while they were[3] unguarded.

XXVI

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). STEMS ENDING IN *SIGMA*. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS WITH STEMS IN -εσ. POTENTIAL OPTATIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. GENITIVE OF MEASURE. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

STEMS ENDING IN *SIGMA*

271. The nominative singular of stems ending in σ is the mere stem, without any case-ending. Neuter stems in -εσ change ε to ο in forming this nominative. Thus ὀρεσ- forms the nominative singular ὄρος. In cases where σ comes between two vowels, it is dropped and contraction occurs. One σ of the dative plural -εσ + σι is also dropped. In the following paradigms the original forms are given in brackets.

a. RULES OF CONTRACTION

ε + α = η	ε + ο = ου
ε + ε = ει	ε + οι = οι
ε + ι = ει	ε + ω = ω

b. The syllable resulting from contraction receives an accent if either one of the component syllables, in the

[1] *the fate of Proxenus* (§ 70. *b*). [2] In dir. disc. *is*. [3] Say *being*.

uncontracted form, had an accent; it receives a circumflex if the *first* vowel had the acute (but it receives an acute if the *second* vowel had the acute).

272.

Sing. N. A. V.	ὄρος, τό, *mountain* (stem ὀρεσ-)	
G.	ὄρους [ὄρεσ-ος]	
D.	ὄρει [ὄρεσ-ι]	
Dual N. A. V.	ὄρει [ὄρεσ-ε]	
G. D.	ὀροῖν [ὀρέσ-οιν]	
Plur. N. A. V.	ὄρη [ὄρεσ-α]	
G.	ὀρέων or ὀρῶν [ὀρέσ-ων]	
D.	ὄρεσι(ν) [ὄρεσ-σι(ν)]	

273. DECLENSION OF Σωκράτης (STEM Σωκρατεσ-)

Sing. N.	Σωκράτης, ὁ, *Socrates*
G.	Σωκράτους [Σωκράτεσ-ος]
D.	Σωκράτει [Σωκράτεσ-ι]
A.	Σωκράτη [Σωκράτεσ-α]
V.	Σώκρατες

a. For the accusative Σωκράτη, a form Σωκράτην after the analogy of the ᾱ-declension is often found.

b. Xenophon declines Τισσαφέρνης: gen. Τισσαφέρνους, dat. Τισσαφέρνει, acc. Τισσαφέρνην (cp. Σωκράτην), voc. Τισσαφέρνη.

c. In the nominative singular final -εσ of the stem of these nouns is changed to -ης.

274. So too the nominative singular of τριήρης is formed from the stem τριηρεσ-.

DECLENSION OF τριήρης (STEM τριηρεσ-)

Sing. N.	τριήρης, ἡ, *trireme*
G.	τριήρους [τριήρεσ-ος]
D.	τριήρει [τριήρεσ-ι]
A.	τριήρη [τριήρεσ-α]
V.	τριῆρες

Dual	N. A. V.	τριήρει [τριήρεσ-ε]
	G. D.	τριήροιν [τριηρέσ-οιν]
Plur.	N. V.	τριήρεις [τριήρεσ-ες]
	G.	τριήρων [τριηρέσ-ων]
	D.	τριήρεσι(ν) [τριήρεσ-σι(ν)]
	A.	τριήρεις

a. The accusative plural copies the nominative plural form.

b. *τριήροιν* and *τριήρων* have recessive accent (§ 44).

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS WITH STEMS IN -εσ

275.

		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	N.	ἀσφαλής *safe*	ἀσφαλές
	G.	ἀσφαλοῦς [-έσ-ος]	
	D.	ἀσφαλεῖ [-έσ-ι]	
	A.	ἀσφαλῆ [-έσ-α]	ἀσφαλές
	V.	ἀσφαλές	
Dual	N. A. V.	ἀσφαλεῖ [-έσ-ε]	
	G. D.	ἀσφαλοῖν [-έσ-οιν]	
Plur.	N. V.	ἀσφαλεῖς [-έσ-ες]	ἀσφαλῆ [-έσ-α]
	G.	ἀσφαλῶν [-έσ-ων]	
	D.	ἀσφαλέσι(ν) [-έσ-σι(ν)]	
	A.	ἀσφαλεῖς	ἀσφαλῆ [-έσ-α]

a. It is to be observed that the masculine and feminine *ἀσφαλής* is declined exactly like *τριήρης* except as regards the accent. The neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative singular is the mere stem. The neuter nominative and accusative plural *ἀσφαλῆ* (for *ἀσφαλέσ-α*) is formed like *ὄρη* (for *ὄρεσ-α*).

POTENTIAL OPTATIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

276. When a potential optative (§ 266) is quoted after a verb that takes ὅτι or ὡς (§§ 260, 262), it is unchanged, except possibly in person; and ἄν is retained:

Original form: ἕλοιμι ἂν αὐτούς I should capture them.
Quoted after ὅτι*:* οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτοὺς ἂν ἕλοι this man said to Cyrus that he should capture them.

277. When a potential optative is quoted after a verb that requires the infinitive (§ 110. *a*), the optative is changed to the same tense of the infinitive, and ἄν is retained. If the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the leading verb, it must be expressed (in the accusative); but it is not expressed if it is the same (review also § 110. *c*, *d*, *e*):

Original form: ἔλθοιμι ἂν τριήρεις ἔχων I should come with triremes.
Quoted form: νομίζω ἐλθεῖν ἄν [or νομίζω ἂν ἐλθεῖν] τριήρεις ἔχων I think I should come with triremes.

278. The **genitive** modifying a noun may express **measure**:

τεῖχος δέκα ποδῶν a wall of ten feet.

279. The **accusative** may express a **specification** (*in respect to* something):

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πέντε σταδίων thence he marches to the river, which is (*lit.* being) of five stades in width (= five stades wide).

σταδίων is a predicate genitive (§ 229) of measure limiting ποταμόν; while τὸ εὖρος, accusative of specification, limits πέντε σταδίων.

280. VOCABULARY XXVI

ἀνά (elided, **ἀν'**), prep. with acc. only: *up, up along, up through.* (In composition also *back.*) Ana-tomy (**τομή** *a cutting*).

ἀνα-βαίνω (other tenses except impf. **ἀν-έβαινον** to be learned later): *go up; go inland* ("up" from the coast). Cp. **δια-βαίνω.**

ἀσφαλής, ές: *secure, safe.* **ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ**: *in safety.*

ἀφανής, ές: *invisible, out of sight.*

Ἀχαιός, οῦ, ὁ: an *Achaean*, inhabitant of Achaea.

εἴκοσι(ν), indecl.: *twenty.*

εἷλον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they took, seized*; subjv. **ἕλω**, opt. **ἕλοιμι**, inf. **ἑλεῖν**, partic. **ἑλών.**

εὖρος, ους, τό: *breadth, width.*

καθ-ήκω (**κατά** + **ἥκω**, cp. § 31): *come down, reach down, extend.*

κατα-λείπω (cp. **λείπω**): *leave behind, leave, abandon.*

ὄρος, ους, τό: *mountain.*

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα: *make to stop, stop* (trans.), *put an end to.* Pause.

πρόσθεν, adv.: *forward* (of space); *before, former* (of time). Cp. **πρός.** **ἡ πρόσθεν** (§ 70) **νύξ**: *the night before.*

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ: *Socrates.*

τεῖχος, ους, τό: *wall; fortress.*

Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ: *Tissaphernes*, a Persian satrap. See § 273. *b.*

τριήρης, ους, ἡ: *trireme.*

ὡς, adv., introducing a comparison: *as*; with numerals: *about.* See also Vocabularies XXII and XXIV.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

281. I. 1. Κῦρος οὖν ἀν-έβαινεν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. 2. ἦν δὲ πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος.[1] 3. τὴν δὲ πρόσθεν νύκτα[2] ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους. 4. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, δι-ῆλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσιν. 5. καὶ τὰ τείχη ἦν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθ-ήκοντα.[3] 6. ἀνα-βαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς[4] φίλον. 7. ὁ Ἀρταξέρξης δὴ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους[5] τὸν Κύρου στό-

[1] Abstract nouns may have the article. [2] § 142. [3] § 53. *i.* [4] *as.* [5] *from Tissaphernes*, gen. of source, § 201.

λον. 8. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχᾶγοὶ ἦσαν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ. 9. ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον. 10. ἔφη δ' ἂν παῦσαι ταύτᾱς τὰς ὑποψίᾱς. 11. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξ-αγαγεῖν αὐτούς. 12. ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὔποτε ἂν κατα-λείποι αὐτούς. 13. καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένον ὄντα,[1] ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθεῖν. 14. τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν κᾶειν τᾱς κώμᾱς τᾱς[2] ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη.

II. 1. Thence he marched to a river ten stades in width. 2. I think it would be safe[3] to cross. 3. He thought he should never come home. 4. We heard from Tissaphernes of the expedition of Cyrus.

---

[1] Translate by a relative clause.

[2] Cp. § 67.

[3] Use neuter adj., § 223. *a*.

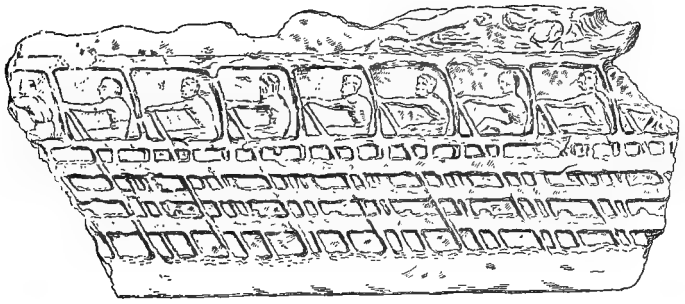

FIG. 15. — Waist of a War Ship (*τριήρης*), from a Relief found at Athens.

XXVII

DECLENSION OF STEMS ENDING IN *IOTA* OR *UPSILON* (INCLUDED UNDER THE CONSONANT DECLENSION). ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE. ATTRACTION OF THE RELATIVE

STEMS ENDING IN ι OR υ

282. Stems in ι or υ present several irregularities, of which the explanations can best be sought in the grammars, if the instructor thinks such explanations desirable at the outset. It is to be observed that the accusative singular ends in *-ν*, and not in *-α*; and the accusative plural follows the nominative plural.

Sing. N.	πόλι-ς, ἡ, *city*	πῆχυ-ς, ὁ, *forearm, cubit*
G.	πόλε-ως	πήχε-ως
D.	πόλει [for πόλε-ι]	πήχει [for πήχε-ι]
A.	πόλι-ν	πῆχυ-ν
V.	πόλι	πῆχυ
Dual N. A. V.	πόλει [for πόλε-ε]	πήχει [for πήχε-ε]
G. D.	πολέ-οιν	πηχέ-οιν
Plur. N. V.	πόλεις [for πόλε-ες]	πήχεις [for πήχε-ες]
G.	πόλε-ων	πήχε-ων
D.	πόλε-σι(ν)	πήχε-σι(ν)
A.	πόλεις	πήχεις

Sing. N. A. V.	ἄστυ, τό, *town*
G.	ἄστε-ως
D.	ἄστει [for ἄστε-ι]
Dual N. A. V.	ἄστει [for ἄστε-ε]
G. D.	ἀστέ-οιν
Plur. N. A. V.	ἄστη [for ἄστε-α]
G.	ἄστε-ων
D.	ἄστε-σι(ν)

a. The accent of the preceding nouns (πόλις, πῆχυς, and ἄστυ) is irregular in the genitive, singular and plural (§ 17. 1).

283.

Sing.	N.	ἰχθύ-ς, ὁ, *fish*
	G.	ἰχθύ-ος
	D.	ἰχθύ-ϊ
	A.	ἰχθύ-ν
	V.	ἰχθῦ
Dual	N. A. V.	ἰχθύ-ε
	G. D.	ἰχθύ-οιν
Plur.	N. V.	ἰχθύ-ες
	G.	ἰχθύ-ων
	D.	ἰχθύ-σι(ν)
	A.	ἰχθῦς

284. Adverbial accusative. — The accusative in some expressions has the force of an adverb:

πρῶτον at first, first (§ 250); τί why (§ 231)? τέλος finally; τὸ λοιπόν thereafter, in the future.

285. Attraction of the relative to the case of its antecedent. — The relative pronoun may be attracted from the accusative case to the case of its antecedent, if this is a genitive or dative:

ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἧς [for ἣν] οὗτοι παρ-εῖχον from the market which these supplied;

σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις οἷς [for ἃ] ἔχομεν with the arms which we have.

286. VOCABULARY XXVII

ἀθροίζω (theme **ἀθροιδ-**; cp. **ἁρπάζω**), **ἀθροίσω**, **ἤθροισα**: *gather together, collect, assemble* (trans.).

ἀρχαῖος, ᾱ, ον (**ἀρχή** *beginning*): *primitive, old, of old, ancient.* **τὸ ἀρχαῖον** (adv. acc.): *of old, formerly.* **Archaic.**

ἄστυ, εως, τό: *town.*
δασμός, οῦ, ὁ: *tribute, tax.*
δύναμις, εως, ἡ: *force, strength.* Dynamic, dynamite.
Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν (Ἕλλην): *Hellenic, Greek.*
ἰχθῦς, ύος, ὁ: *fish.* Ichthyo-logy (λόγος *account*).
Ἰωνικός, ή, όν (Ἰωνία): *of Ionia, Ionian.*
Λακεδαίμων, ονος, ἡ: *Lacedaemon.*
λοιπός, ή, όν (cp. λείπ-ω): *left, rest of, remaining.* τὸ λοιπόν (adv. acc.): *thereafter, in the future.*
πεντε-καί-δεκα indecl.: *five and ten, fifteen.*
πῆχυς, εως, ὁ: *forearm; cubit,* 1½ Greek feet.
πλέθρον, ου, τό: *plethrum,* 100 Greek feet.
πλήρης, ες: *full.* Cp. Lat. *plē-nus.*
πόλις, εως, ἡ: *city.* Politic, polity, etc.
πρέσβεις, εων, οἱ: *ambassadors.* The nom. sing. is πρεσβευτής, οῦ, ὁ.
Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ: *Sardis,* a city in Lydia.
τέλος, ους, τό: *end.* As adv. acc.. *finally.*
Χάλος, ου, ὁ: *Chalus,* a river in Syria.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

287. I. 1. Ξενίᾱς δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων[1] λαβὼν παρ-ῆν εἰς Σάρδεις. 2. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν. 3. ἦν δὲ τεῖχος ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων[2] τὸ εὖρος. 4. τί δεῖ λύειν αὐτοὺς τὴν γέφῡραν; 5. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους[3] τὸ ἀρχαῖον. 6. οἱ δ' ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεως[4] εἰς τὴν ἀγορᾶν ἦλθον. 7. εἰς Λακεδαίμονα ἔπεμπον πρέσβεις. 8. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾱς πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς πόλιν εὐ-δαίμονα. 9. Κῦρος δ' ἀπ-έπεμπε τοὺς δασμοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν[5] ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων. 10. τέλος δ' ἀπ-ῆλθον. 11. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ Κλέαρχος ἦρχεν. 12. ἐξ-ελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου,[6] πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων.

---

[1] § 70. *a.*
[2] § 278.
[3] § 229.
[4] § 70. *a.*
[5] For ἅς, § 285.
[6] §§ 278, 279.

II. 1. The cities are prosperous. 2. And thereafter Cyrus sent the tributes from the cities to his brother. 3. We bought provisions from the market which the barbarians supplied. 4. The river is full of beautiful fish.

XXVIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE CONSONANT DECLENSION AND Ā-DECLENSION COMBINED. DECLENSION OF *ἡδύς* AND *πᾶς*. NOUNS WITH STEMS IN *-ευ* OR *-ου*. OMISSION OF THE COPULA. *βασιλεύς* WITHOUT THE ARTICLE. *πᾶς* IN PREDICATE POSITION, ETC.

DECLENSION OF ἡδύς *sweet*

288. Compare the masculine *ἡδύς* with *πῆχυς* (§ 282) and observe that the *endings* differ in the genitive singular only. Compare the neuter *ἡδύ* with *ἄστυ* (§ 282) and observe that the endings differ in the genitive singular and the nominative (= accusative and vocative) plural. The feminine *ἡδεῖα* is declined like *γέφῡρα*, except as regards the accent.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
G.	ἡδέος	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέος
D.	ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	ἡδεῖ
A.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
V.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
Dual N. A. V.	ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾱ	ἡδεῖ
G. D.	ἡδέοιν	ἡδείαιν	ἡδέοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
G.	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
D.	ἡδέσι(ν)	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι(ν)
A.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέα

DECLENSION OF πᾶς *all, every*

289. Compare this paradigm with *ἀκούσᾱς* (§ 209). The accent of the genitive plural *πάντων* and dative plural *πᾶσι(ν)* is irregular (cp. § 189).

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing.	N. V.	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
	G.	παντός	πᾱ́σης	παντός
	D.	παντί	πᾱ́σῃ	παντί
	A.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
Plur.	N. V.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
	G.	πάντων	πᾱσῶν	πάντων
	D.	πᾶσι(ν)	πᾱ́σαις	πᾶσι(ν)
	A.	πάντας	πᾱ́σᾱς	πάντα

NOUNS WITH STEMS ENDING IN A DIPHTHONG -ευ OR -ου

		1	2
290. Sing.	N.	βασιλεύ-ς, ὁ, *king*	βοῦ-ς, ὁ, ἡ, *ox, cow*
	G.	βασιλέ-ως	βο-ός
	D.	βασιλεῖ	βο-ΐ
	A.	βασιλέ-ᾱ	βοῦ-ν
	V.	βασιλεῦ	βοῦ
Dual	N. A. V.	βασιλῆ	βό-ε
	G. D.	βασιλέ-οιν	βο-οῖν
Plur.	N. V.	βασιλεῖς (older -ῆς)	βό-ες
	G.	βασιλέ-ων	βο-ῶν
	D.	βασιλεῦ-σι(ν)	βου-σί(ν)
	A.	βασιλέ-ᾱς	βοῦς

For the accent of the monosyllable *βοῦς* see § 189.

291. The verb **ἐστί** (and pl. **εἰσί**), commonly known as the *copula*, may be **omitted** where it can be readily supplied, as in proverbial expressions. See also § 230.

ἀγαθὸς ὁ θεός God is good;
ἀγαθοὶ οἱ θεοί the gods are good.

292. The **article** is commonly **omitted** with *βασιλεύς* when this word means *the king* of Persia, the great king.

293. **πᾶς**, when modifying a noun, usually has the predicate position (§§ 68, 69). The difference in meaning between the predicate and attributive use is as follows:

Predicate: πᾶσα ἡ πόλις all the city.
Attributive: ἡ πᾶσα πόλις the whole city.

Sometimes the article is wanting:

πᾶσα πόλις every city;
πάντες ἄνθρωποι all men.

Compare ὅλος (Vocabulary XVII), which is similarly used.

294. VOCABULARY XXVIII

ἅ-πᾶς, ᾶσα, ᾶν: *all together, all.*

βασιλεύς, έως, ὁ: *king.* Basil.

βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, ἡ: *ox, cow.* Cp. Lat. *bōs*.

δασύς, εῖα, ύ: *thickly grown, thickly wooded;* with dat. (instrumental). Cp. Lat. *dēnsus*.

δένδρον, ου, τό: *tree.* Dat. pl. **δένδροις** and **δένδρεσι** (from **τὸ δένδρος**). Rhodo-dendron (**ῥόδον** *rose*).

ἤ, conj.: *or; than* (after comparative ideas). **ἤ . . . ἤ**: *either . . . or.*

ἡδύς, εῖα, ύ: *sweet.*

ἥμισυς, εια, υ: *half.* **τὸ ἥμισυ** (with **στρατεύματος**): *the half.* **ἥμισυς** takes the gender and the number of its part. gen. Cp. Lat. *sēmi-*, Eng. **hemi-**.

ἱππεύς, έως, ὁ (**ἵππος**): *horseman;* pl. *cavalry.*

λάθρᾳ, adv.: *secretly.* With gen.: *without the knowledge of.*

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: *every* (in sing.), *all, whole.* See § 293. **Pan**hellenic (**Ἕλλην**).

παχύς, εῖα, ύ: *thick* in diameter. **Pachy**-derm (**δέρμα** *hide*).

πυκνός, ή, όν: *closely set, closely standing, closely planted.*

σκότος, ους, τό: *darkness.* Also **ὁ σκότος**, gen. **ου**.

σύμ-μαχος, ου, ὁ (**μάχη**): *fellow-fighter, ally.*

ὡς, prep. with acc.: *to;* used only with names of persons and **βασιλέᾱ** *king* of Persia. Cp. Vocabularies XXII, XXIV, XXVI.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

295. I. 1. *πάντας δ' ἀπ-έπεμπεν.* 2. *οἱ δ' αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλοι ἦσαν ἢ βασιλεῖ.* 3. *φᾱσὶν οὖν δασέα τὰ ὄρη ταῦτα εἶναι.* 4. *οἶνον ἡδὺν εἶχεν.* 5. *ὁ Χειρίσοφος δι-έβαινεν ἔχων τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος.*[1] 6. *ἦν δὲ οὗτος ὁ λόφος δασὺς δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὔ,*[2] *πυκνοῖς δέ.* 7. *οὐδὲ ἱππέᾱ σύμμαχον*[3] *ἔχομεν.* 8. *ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἶδον ἱππέᾱς πέρᾱν τοῦ ποταμοῦ.* 9. *ἔθῡσαν δὲ ἢ βοῦς ἢ ἵππους.* 10. *τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν Κῦρος λάθρᾳ ἤθροιζεν, ὅπως ἀφύλακτον λάβοι βασιλέᾱ.* 11. *Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ἦλθεν ὡς βασιλέᾱ, ἱππέᾱς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους.* 12. *πᾶσα ἡ ὁδὸς διὰ σκότους ἐστίν.* 13. *πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς ἄπορος.*[4] 14. *αἱ σπονδαί εἰσιν ἅπασιν.*

II. 1. On the following day they all came to a river full of fish. 2. He says that this river is thickly grown with trees. 3. All the satraps sent sweet wine to the king.

---

[1] § 179. [2] § 99. [3] § 53. *j*. [4] Supply **ἐστίν**.

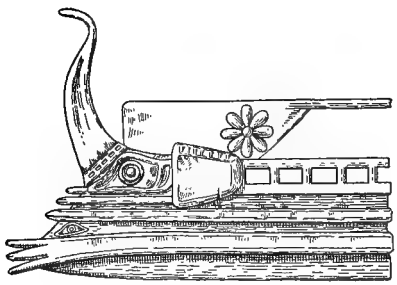

FIG. 16. — Prow of a War Ship.

XXIX

THE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE OF Ω-VERBS. IMPERATIVE OF εἰμί. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE. DECLENSION OF ἐγώ AND σύ. USES OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS. ACCENT OF SUCCESSIVE ENCLITICS. PREDICATE POSITION OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS. PROHIBITIONS. ἐπεί AND ὅτι CAUSAL

296. The thematic vowel (§ 41) and tense suffix of the present imperative and the tense suffix (σα) of the first aorist imperative are the same as in the indicative mood. The imperative has special personal endings, however; and the second person singular of the first aorist has a peculiar ending, -σον.

297. PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
2.	λῦ-ε *loose*	λῦ-ε-τον	λῦ-ε-τε *loose*
3.	λῡ-έ-τω *let him loose*	λῡ-έ-των	λυ-ό-ντων *let them loose*

FIRST AORIST IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

2.	λῦ-σον *loose*	λῦ-σα-τον	λῦ-σα-τε *loose*
3.	λῡ-σά-τω *let him loose*	λῡ-σά-των	λῡ-σά-ντων *let them loose*

298. Like the present imperative of λῡ́ω are inflected the present imperatives of all the other ω-verbs hitherto studied.

299. In the formation of the first aorist imperative of verbs with mute themes, the same euphonic laws are observed as in the first aorist indicative, subjunctive, and

optative (§§ 153, 164). Thus πέμψον (πέμπω), πεῖσον (πείθω), ἅρπασον (ἁρπάζω), φύλαξον (φυλάττω).

300. Verbs which, like λείπω, lack a first aorist indicative, also lack a first aorist imperative (and all other first aorist forms). They have, instead, a second aorist imperative, with the inflection of the present.

301. SECOND AORIST IMPERATIVE ACTIVE OF λείπω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
2.	λίπ-ε *leave*	λίπ-ε-τον	λίπ-ε-τε *leave*
3.	λιπ-έ-τω *let him leave*	λιπ-έ-των	λιπ-ό-ντων *let them leave*

a. Some second aorist imperatives are irregularly accented on the ultima (instead of the penult) in the second person singular: thus εἰπέ *say*.[1]

302. PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF εἰμί *I am*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
2.	ἴσ-θι *be thou*	ἔσ-τον	ἔσ-τε *be ye*
3.	ἔσ-τω *let him be*	ἔσ-των	ἔσ-των[2] *let them be*

303. **Tenses of the imperative.** — The distinction between the present and aorist imperative is the same as that between the present and aorist subjunctive (§ 240). The present denotes a continued or repeated act; the aorist a single act.

a. The aorist imperative refers to future time, and is therefore regarded as a primary tense.

DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ἐγώ *I* AND σύ *you*

304.

Sing. N.	ἐγώ *I*	N. V.	σύ *you* (*thou*)
G.	ἐμοῦ, μου		σοῦ, σου
D.	ἐμοί, μοι		σοί, σοι
A.	ἐμέ, με		σέ, σε

[1] So, too, ἐλθέ *come*, εὑρέ *find* (εὑρίσκω), ἰδέ *see, behold*, λαβέ *seize*.

[2] Also ἔσ-τω-σαν and ὄντων.

Dual	N. A.	νώ		σφώ
	G. D.	νῷν		σφῷν
Plur.	N.	ἡμεῖς *we*	N. V.	ὑμεῖς *you*
	G.	ἡμῶν		ὑμῶν
	D.	ἡμῖν		ὑμῖν
	A.	ἡμᾶς		ὑμᾶς

a. Enclitic forms (§ 21) are *μου, μοι, με, σου, σοι, σε*; emphatic forms, not enclitic, are *ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, σοῦ, σοί, σέ*. After prepositions the accented forms are regularly used.

Review the rules about enclitics (§§ 103–105).

305. If two or more **enclitics** occur **in succession**, each has an acute accent except the last, which remains unaccented:

εἴ τίς τί μοί φησιν if anybody says anything to me.

306. A **personal pronoun** as subject nominative is expressed only for emphasis:

ταῦτα ἤκουσα ἐγώ it was I who heard this.

307. The personal pronoun of the third person is *αὐτοῦ of him, αὐτῆς of her, αὐτοῦ of it* (§ 123. 3). The nominative, when required to be expressed, may be *ὁ δέ* (§ 99), *ἡ δέ* (§ 99), *ἐκεῖνος, οὗτος, ὅδε* (§§ 175–177).

308. *αὐτοῦ, μου, σου*, etc., when denoting *possession*, have the predicate position (cp. § 127):

ὁ ἀδελφός μου my brother (cp. § 126).

309. A **prohibition** is expressed by:

1. *μή* with the present imperative (§ 303):

μὴ θαυμάζετε don't wonder (*i.e.* keep from wondering *or* cease to wonder).

2. *μή* with the second person of the aorist subjunctive (§ 240):

μὴ θαυμάσητε don't be astonished (*for once*).

310. **ἐπεί and ὅτι causal,** *since,* are followed by tenses of the indicative. The negative is *οὐ*. Other causal conjunctions take the same construction:

πέμψατε Πρόξενον, ἐπεὶ στρατηγός ἐστιν send Proxenus, since he is a general.

311. VOCABULARY XXIX

ἄ-βατος, ον (ἀ- priv. and stem βα-, cp. δια-βαίνω): not to be trodden on, *impassable.*

ἄγε, imv. of ἄγω used as an interjection: *come!* ἄγε (or ἄγετε) δή: *come now!*

βλέπω, fut. to be learned later, ἔβλεψα: *look.*

γνώμη, ης, ἡ: *opinion, judgment; plan, proposition; understanding.* **Gnome.**

ἐγώ: *I,* § 304. Lat. *ego.*

ἐπεί, conj.. *since.* Strengthened, **ἐπεί-περ:** *since indeed.* Cp. Vocabulary XIV.

ὅσ-περ, ἥ-περ, ὅ-περ (strengthened ὅς): *the very one which, the very thing which.*

ὅταν = ὅτε + ἄν (§ 248. 2), conj. with subjv.: *when.*

πατρίς, ίδος, ἡ: *fatherland.*

πρός, prep.: with GEN. *from the side of, from; toward;* **πρὸς (τῶν) θεῶν:** *before the gods, in the sight of the gods;* with DAT. *near, beside, in addition to;* with ACC. *to, toward, against.* Cp. Vocabulary II.

στρατό-πεδον, ου, τό: *camp.* Cp. **στράτευμα, στρατιά.**

σύ: *you* (sing.), § 304.

σύνθημα, ατος, τό: *agreement; watchword.*

ὑπέρ, prep.: with GEN. *over, above; on behalf of;* with ACC. *over, beyond.* **Hyper-bole** (**βολή** *a throw*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

312. I. 1. ἥκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἄγετε. 2. ἀπό-πεμπε δὲ ἢ ἡμᾶς ἢ αὐτούς. 3. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ[1] εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους. 4. ἀκούσατε οὖν μου πρὸς θεῶν. 5. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ[2] κωμῶν. 6. σὺ δέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐλθὼν[3] εἰπὲ ὅτι

[1] § 119. [2] § 70. [3] Freely: *go and say.*

ἐγὼ κελεύω αὐτοὺς κατα-λιπεῖν τὰ ὅπλα. 7. ὅταν δὲ ταύτᾱς τᾱ̀ς πόλεις ἔχητε, μὴ ἀπ-έλθητε. 8. ἄγε δή, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπεὶ περ ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶν ὑμῖν[1] καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπὲ τὴν σὴν γνώμην. 9. λέξον δὲ πᾶσι, ὦ Πρόξενε, ἅπερ ἔλεξας καὶ[2] πρὸς ἡμᾶς. 10. βλέψον πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς[3] ἄβατα πάντα ἐστίν. 11. εἰ δέ τις ἄλλος πάρ-εστι, λεξάτω. 12. συμ-πέμψατε μέντοι μοί τινας, οἵτινες καὶ[4] λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ πρᾰ́ξουσιν. 13. παρ-έστω δ' ἡμῖν καὶ[2] ὁ κῆρυξ. 14. τοῦτο ἔστω τὸ σύνθημα.

II. 1. But do you[5] send others to the mountains. 2. Do not take[6] supplies from the villages in the plain. 3. Let the herald attend me, when I come[7] to the camp.

---

[1] *I.e.* you and your followers. [2] *also.* [3] *how.*
[4] *both.* [5] Sing. [6] Single act. [7] Aor. subjv.

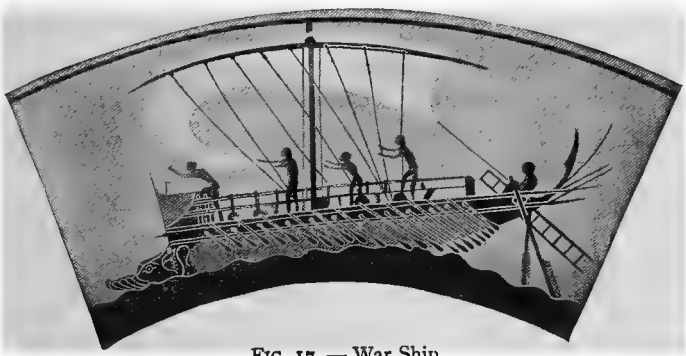

FIG. 17. — War Ship.

XXX

THE PRESENT MIDDLE SYSTEM OF Ω-VERBS. MEANINGS OF THE MIDDLE VOICE. DEPONENT VERBS. DATIVE OF ASSOCIATION

313. In the inflection of the present and imperfect middle (§ 37) there are to be seen the same thematic vowel, mood signs, and augment (in the imperfect indicative) as in the corresponding active tenses. Only a new series of personal endings has to be learned. The primary endings are seen in the present indicative and the subjunctive; the secondary endings, in the imperfect indicative and the optative. The ending of the second person singular, primary *-σαι* and secondary *-σο*, does not, however, appear intact in any of these forms.

314. PRESENT MIDDLE SYSTEM OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	λῡ́-ο-μαι *I loose for myself, I ransom*		λῡ-ό-μεθα
2.	λῡ́-η or λῡ́-ει	λῡ́-ε-σθον	λῡ́-ε-σθε
3.	λῡ́-ε-ται	λῡ́-ε-σθον	λῡ́-ο-νται
Subjv. 1.	λῡ́-ω-μαι		λῡ-ώ-μεθα
2.	λῡ́-η	λῡ́-η-σθον	λῡ́-η-σθε
3.	λῡ́-η-ται	λῡ́-η-σθον	λῡ́-ω-νται
Opt. 1.	λῡ-οί-μην		λῡ-οί-μεθα
2.	λῡ́-οι-ο	λῡ́-οι-σθον	λῡ́-οι-σθε
3.	λῡ́-οι-το	λῡ-οί-σθην	λῡ́-οι-ντο
Imv. 2.	λῡ́-ου	λῡ́-ε-σθον	λῡ́-ε-σθε
3.	λῡ-έ-σθω	λῡ-έ-σθων	λῡ-έ-σθων
Inf.	λῡ́-ε-σθαι		
Partic.	λῡ-ό-μενος, η, ον (declined like ἀγαθός, but with accent like πολέμιος, §§ 116, 117)		

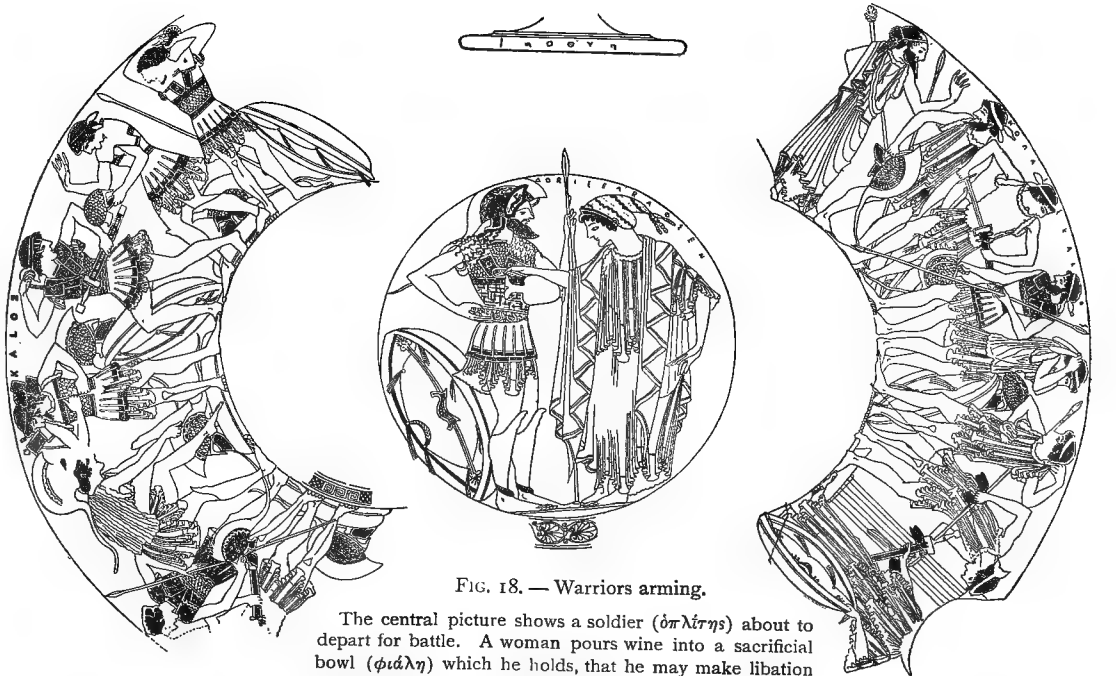

FIG. 18. — Warriors arming.

The central picture shows a soldier (ὁπλίτης) about to depart for battle. A woman pours wine into a sacrificial bowl (φιάλη) which he holds, that he may make libation to the gods. (A vase-painting by Duris.)

The imperfect indicative belongs to the present system:

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Impf. 1.	ἐ-λῡ-ό-μην *I loosed for myself, I ransomed*		ἐ-λῡ-ό-μεθα
Indic. 2.	ἐ-λῦ-ου	ἐ-λῦ-ε-σθον	ἐ-λῦ-ε-σθε
3.	ἐ-λῦ-ε-το	ἐ-λῡ-έ-σθην	ἐ-λῦ-ο-ντο

Review the present active system of λῡ́ω, *i.e.* the present and imperfect indicative, the present subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 45, 81, 206. *a*, 235, 254, 297).

MEANINGS OF THE MIDDLE VOICE

315. The middle voice of the Greek verb represents the subject

I. As acting directly on himself (*direct middle*):

οἱ Ἕλληνες παρ-εσκευάζοντο the Greeks made themselves ready;
πορεύονται they make themselves go, they proceed;
ἀθροίζονται they gather themselves together, they muster;
φυλάττονται they guard themselves, they are on their guard [against];
σῴζονται they save themselves.

II. As acting for himself or for his own interests in some way (*indirect middle*):

τὰς ἁμάξᾱς παρα-σκευάζεται he prepares the wagons *for himself;*
Κῦρον μετα-πέμπεται he sends for Cyrus *to come to himself;*

It is often impossible to translate the middle, in this use, differently from the active.

a. There is also a *reciprocal* use of the middle voice, which represents the subjects as acting mutually. Thus δια-λέγονται *they converse*, μάχονται (μάχη) *they fight*, ἀγωνίζονται (ἀγών) *they struggle*.

316. Many verbs are found in the middle voice only, either in some or in all of their tenses. They are commonly known as **deponent verbs**. Thus οἴχομαι *be gone*.

317. Converse *with* and fight *with* somebody are expressed by the dative without a preposition. The dative so used with these and similar verbs is included under the dative of association:

διᾰ-λέγονται τοῖς στρατηγοῖς they converse with the generals.

318. VOCABULARY XXX

ἀθροίζομαι, mid. of **ἀθροίζω** (Vocabulary XXVII): *gather* (intr.), *muster*, with **εἰς** and acc.

βούλομαι: *wish.*

διᾰ-λέγομαι (cp. **λέγω** *say*): *converse*, with dat. Dialect.

ἑρμηνεύς, έως, ὁ: *interpreter.* Hermeneutics.

ἔρχομαι, 2 aor. **ἦλθον** (Vocabulary XVIII): *come, go.*

μετᾰ-πέμπομαι (cp. **πέμπω**): *send after to come to oneself, summon.*

οἴχομαι: *be gone, have gone* (pres. with pf. meaning). Often with supplementary partic.; cp. § 215.

παρᾰ-σκευάζω (theme **σκευαδ-**), **παρᾰ-σκευάσω, παρ-εσκεύασα**: *prepare, equip*; MID. *make oneself ready, prepare oneself*; *prepare* something for oneself.

πορεύομαι: *go, proceed.* Cp. **ἄ-πορος.**

προ-πέμπω (cp. **πέμπω**): *send forward* or *ahead.*

σῴζω (themes **σῳδ-** and **σω-**), **σώσω, ἔσωσα**: *save*; MID. *save oneself.*

φυλάττομαι, mid. of **φυλάττω** (Vocabulary XV): *guard oneself, be on one's guard* (*against*, with acc.).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

319. I. 1. ὁ δὲ Δᾱρεῖος ἐβούλετο τοὺς παῖδας παρεῖναι. 2. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. 3. Ἀρίστιππος ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον. 4. πορεύεται δὲ ὡς βασιλέᾱ. 5. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξ-ἦλθον φυλαττόμενοι στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 6. δεῖ δὲ ἡμᾶς παρᾰ-σκευάζεσθαι ὅπως σῳζώμεθα. 7. οἱ δὲ ἤθροιζον τὰς τριήρεις, ὡς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σῴζοιντο. 8. εἰ δὲ ἐθέλεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. 9. παρᾰ-σχήσω αὐτῷ ὅ τι ἂν

βούληται. 10. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἔλεγον ὡς ὁ λοχᾱγὸς οἴχοιτο. 11. καὶ προ-πέμψᾱς ἑρμηνέᾱ εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιτο δια-λέγεσθαι τοῖς ἄρχουσιν. 12. ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπεν ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. 13. Κῦρος δὲ μετ-επέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον. 14. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, παρ-εσκευάζετο. 15. καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν[1] οἴχονται διώκοντες.

II. 1. Cyrus summoned the generals (to come to him). 2. The leaders said that they wished to converse with us. 3. Guarding ourselves, we proceeded through the night. 4. Take whatever you wish.

XXXI

SYNCOPATED NOUNS. DATIVE OF RESPECT

320. Some frequently occurring nouns of the consonant declension, with stems in ερ-, drop ε before ρ in the genitive and dative singular and the dative plural: πατήρ (πατερ-) *father*, μήτηρ (μητερ-) *mother*, θυγάτηρ (θυγατερ-) *daughter*. One noun, ἀνήρ (ἀνερ-) *man*, drops ε before ρ in all its cases except the nominative and vocative singular; δ is inserted where ε is dropped from forms of ἀνήρ. The dative plural of all these nouns has the auxiliary sound *α* added to the stem before the case ending.

The accent is to be carefully noted. It is recessive in the vocative singular.

[1] *to the front.*

321.

Sing.	N.	πατήρ, ὁ, *father*	μήτηρ, ἡ, *mother*
	G.	πατρ-ός [for πατέρ-ος]	μητρ-ός [for μητέρ-ος]
	D.	πατρ-ί [for πατέρ-ι]	μητρ-ί [for μητέρ-ι]
	A.	πατέρ-α	μητέρ-α
	V.	πάτερ	μῆτερ
Dual	N. A. V.	πατέρ-ε	μητέρ-ε
	G. D.	πατέρ-οιν	μητέρ-οιν
Plur.	N. V.	πατέρ-ες	μητέρ-ες
	G.	πατέρ-ων	μητέρ-ων
	D.	πατρά-σι(ν)	μητρά-σι(ν)
	A.	πατέρ-ας	μητέρ-ας
Sing.	N.	θυγάτηρ, ἡ, *daughter*	ἀνήρ, ὁ, *man*
	G.	θυγατρ-ός	ἀνδρ-ός [for ἀνέρ-ος]
	D.	θυγατρ-ί	ἀνδρ-ί etc.
	A.	θυγατέρ-α	ἄνδρ-α
	V.	θύγατερ	ἄνερ
Dual	N. A. V.	θυγατέρ-ε	ἄνδρ-ε
	G. D.	θυγατέρ-οιν	ἀνδρ-οῖν
Plur.	N. V.	θυγατέρ-ες	ἄνδρ-ες
	G.	θυγατέρ-ων	ἀνδρ-ῶν
	D.	θυγατρά-σι(ν)	ἀνδρά-σι(ν)
	A.	θυγατέρ-ας	ἄνδρ-ας

322. Dative of respect. — The instrumental dative (§ 141) may indicate *in respect to what* an expression is used :

γένει προσ-ήκων βασιλεῖ in respect to birth related to the king.

a. The accusative of specification (§ 279) is far more commonly used.

323. VOCABULARY XXXI

Ἀβροκόμᾱς, ᾱ (Doric gen., for **ου**), **ὁ**: *Abrocomas.*

ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: *man; husband.* **ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται** (or **Ἕλληνες**): *fellow soldiers* (or *Greeks*).

γένος, ους, τό: *kinship, family, birth.* Lat. *genus, gēns.*

δώ-δεκα (**δύο** + **δέκα**), indecl.: *twelve*. Dodeca-gon (**γωνίᾱ** *angle*).

ἐχθρός, ᾱ́, όν: *hostile*. **ἐχθρός** (subst.) **οῦ, ὁ**: personal *enemy*. To be distinguished from **πολέμιος** and **οἱ πολέμιοι** *the enemy* in war.

θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός, ἡ: *daughter*.

μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ: *mother*. Lat. *māter*.

Ὀρόντᾱς, ᾱ (Doric gen., for **ου**), **ὁ**: *Orontas*.

Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ: *Parysatis*, wife of Darius II, king of Persia, and mother of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger.

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ: *father*. Lat. *pater*.

προσ-ήκω: *come to, reach to, pertain to*; pres. partic. *related*, with dat.

στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα: *make an expedition*; dep. MID. *take the field, serve in war*. Cp. **στράτευ-μα**, etc.

συ-στρατεύω (**σύν** + **στρατεύω**, § 133. 4), usually dep. MID. **συ-στρατεύομαι**: *take the field with, serve in war with*, with dat.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

324. I. 1. ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων εἰμὶ τῇ Ἑλλάδι. 2. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄνδρες περὶ σπονδῶν ἥκοιεν. 3. ἀγαθοὶ δὴ φίλοι εἰσὶν χρήσιμοι ἀνδρί.[1] 4. Κῦρος οὖν ἀνα-βαίνει παρὰ τὸν πατέρα. 5. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται κατ-έλιπον πατέρας καὶ μητέρας ἐπεὶ συν-εστρατεύοντο Κύρῳ. 6. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος κώμᾱς τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. 7. Ὀρόντᾱς δ' ἤγετο[2] τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν[3] βασιλέως. 8. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ αὐτὸν ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. 9. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς λοχᾱγοὺς λαμβάνειν[4] ἄνδρας. 10. ἔλεξε γὰρ ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμᾱν, ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα, ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπ-έχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς. 11. πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι στρα-

[1] § 111.
[2] **ἄγω** in mid. sometimes means *marry*.
[3] §§ 67, 69.
[4] *take* = *enlist*.

τεύεσθαι. 12. Ὀρόντᾱς δέ, Πέρσης ἀνήρ, γένει τε προσ-ήκων βασιλεῖ,[1] ἐπι-βουλεύει Κύρῳ.

II. 1. I advise you to abandon this man. 2. Men have come[2] with reference to[3] a truce. 3. The father summoned his daughters (to his side).[4] 4. Cyrus ordered his generals to enlist men, in order that they might take the field with him against the king.

XXXII

THE SECOND AORIST MIDDLE AND THE FUTURE MIDDLE SYSTEMS OF Ω-VERBS. FUTURE SYSTEM OF εἰμί. FUTURE PARTICIPLE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. ὡς WITH FUTURE PARTICIPLE. INFINITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES OF *FITNESS* AND *ABILITY*

325. The second aorist middle of λείπω and similar verbs (§§ 83–88) differs from the second aorist active in the personal endings only. The second aorist indicative is inflected with the endings of the imperfect; while the second aorist subjunctive, optative, and imperative have the endings of the present tense in these moods.

The second person singular of the second aorist middle imperative in -οῦ always has the circumflex on the ultima; and the second aorist middle infinitive is always accented on the penult.

---

[1] § 111. [2] ἥκω. [3] *about.* [4] Omit.

326. SECOND AORIST SYSTEM OF λείπω IN THE MIDDLE VOICE

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἐ-λιπ-ό-μην		ἐ-λιπ-ό-μεθα
2.	ἐ-λίπ-ου	ἐ-λίπ-ε-σθον	ἐ-λίπ-ε-σθε
3.	ἐ-λίπ-ε-το	ἐ-λιπ-έ-σθην	ἐ-λίπ-ο-ντο
Subjv. 1.	λίπ-ω-μαι		λιπ-ώ-μεθα
2.	λίπ-ῃ	λίπ-η-σθον	λίπ-η-σθε
3.	λίπ-η-ται	λίπ-η-σθον	λίπ-ω-νται
Opt. 1.	λιπ-οί-μην		λιπ-οί-μεθα
2.	λίπ-οι-ο	λίπ-οι-σθον	λίπ-οι-σθε
3.	λίπ-οι-το	λιπ-οί-σθην	λίπ-οι-ντο
Imv. 2.	λιπ-οῦ	λίπ-ε-σθον	λίπ-ε-σθε
3.	λιπ-έ-σθω	λιπ-έ-σθων	λιπ-έ-σθων
Inf.	λιπ-έ-σθαι		
Partic.	λιπ-ό-μενος, η, ον		

Review the second aorist active system of λείπω, *i.e.* the second aorist indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 85, 208, 238, 257, 301).

327. The **future middle** differs from the future active in personal endings only. The subjunctive and imperative have no future tense in any voice.

328. The future middle of mute themes is formed with the same euphonic changes at the end of the theme as the future active (§ 153). Thus μετα-πέμπομαι *summon*, fut. μετα-πέμψομαι, δέχομαι *receive*, fut. δέξομαι, ἁρπάζω *plunder*, fut. mid. ἁρπάσομαι.

329. FUTURE SYSTEM OF λῡ́ω IN THE MIDDLE VOICE

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	λῡ́-σο-μαι { *I shall loose for myself* / *I shall ransom* }		λῡ-σό-μεθα
2.	λῡ́-σῃ, λῡ́-σει	λῡ́-σε-σθον	λῡ́-σε-σθε
3.	λῡ́-σε-ται	λῡ́-σε-σθον	λῡ́-σο-νται

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Opt. 1.	λῡ-σοί-μην		λῡ-σοί-μεθα
2.	λῦ-σοι-ο	λῦ-σοι-σθον	λῦ-σοι-σθε
3.	λῦ-σοι-το	λῡ-σοί-σθην	λῦ-σοι-ντο
Inf.	λῦ-σε-σθαι		
Partic.	λῡ-σό-μενος, η, ον		

Review the future active system of λῡ́ω, *i.e.* the future indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 151, 207, 254).

FUTURE SYSTEM OF εἰμί *I am*

330. The future of εἰμί is ἔσομαι *I shall be*, inflected like λῡ́-σο-μαι except in the third person singular of the indicative, which irregularly lacks the thematic vowel (ε).

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἔσομαι		ἐσόμεθα
2.	ἔσῃ, ἔσει	ἔσεσθον	ἔσεσθε
3.	ἔσται	ἔσεσθον	ἔσονται
Opt. 1.	ἐσοίμην		ἐσοίμεθα
2.	ἔσοιο	ἔσοισθον	ἔσοισθε
3.	ἔσοιτο	ἐσοίσθην	ἔσοιντο
Inf.	ἔσεσθαι		
Partic.	ἐσόμενος, η, ον		

331. The circumstantial **participle** may be used in the future to express a **purpose** (cp. § 213):

ἄνδρα πέμπει κελεύσοντα κτλ. he sends a man to command, etc.

332. ὡς often accompanies the participle of purpose as well as the causal participle (§ 213. *a*). It sometimes means *as, as if*, etc., and sometimes it can hardly be translated:

κελεύει τοὺς πελταστὰς πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ὡς δια-βησομένους[1] he orders the peltasts to proceed into the river as if to cross (*i.e.* as if with the purpose of crossing);

καὶ ὑμεῖς παρα-σκευάζεσθε ὡς ἀνα-βησόμενοι[2] and do you make yourselves ready in order to go inland.

[1] Fut. of **δια-βαίνω**, § 144.

[2] Fut. of **ἀνα-βαίνω**, § 280.

333. The **infinitive** is used to complete the meaning of certain adjectives, especially such as denote *fitness, ability,* and the like:

ἱκανοὶ τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν sufficient [troops] to guard the citadels;

ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἱκανὸς ἦν he was able to govern honorable and brave men.

334. VOCABULARY XXXII

ἀκρό-πολις, εως, ἡ: high part of a city, *citadel.* Acropolis.

ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον: *top of, highest point of*; **τὸ ἄκρον** (subst.): *the height.* Cp. Lat. *acus, acūtus, aciēs.*

Βαβυλών, ῶνος, ἡ: *Babylon.*

βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα: *plan, devise;* but the simple verb is commonly dep. mid. **βουλεύομαι**: *take counsel with oneself, plan.* Cp. **ἐπι-βουλεύω** and **συμ-βουλεύω.**

γίγνομαι (for **γι-γεν-ο-μαι,** theme **γεν-**), fut. **γενήσομαι** (the increase of the theme to **γενη-** is to be noted), 2 aor. **ἐγενόμην**: *become, be born, be; happen, arise, take place, turn out.* Cp. **γένος.** Genesis.

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, aor. to be learned later: *receive, accept.*

δια-βήσομαι, fut. of **δια-βαίνω** (Vocabulary XI), theme **βα-**: *shall go across, shall cross.*

εἱλόμην, 2 aor. mid. of **εἷλον** (Vocabulary XXVI): *I took for myself, I chose.* Subjv. **ἕλωμαι,** opt. **ἑλοίμην,** imv. **ἕλοῦ,** inf. **ἑλέσθαι,** partic. **ἑλόμενος, η, ον.**

εἶπον (Vocabulary XXIV), meaning *commanded, proposed, urged,* is followed by the inf. Cp. § 98.

ἱκανός, ή, όν: *sufficient, able.*

κατα-λαμβάνω (cp. **λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον**): *seize, occupy, overtake, come upon,* with acc.

λήψομαι (theme **ληβ-**), fut. of **λαμβάνω** (Vocabulary V): *shall take* or *receive.*

παρα-γίγνομαι (cp. **γίγνομαι**): *come (to); be at hand, be present.* Cp. **πάρ-ειμι.**

παύομαι, mid. of **παύω** (Vocabulary XXVI): *stop oneself, cease.*

πείσομαι: either (1) fut. of **πάσχω** *suffer* (Vocabulary XXII), or (2) fut. mid. of **πείθω** (Vocabulary I) in mid. meaning *obey* (with dat.).

πηγή, ῆς, ἡ: *spring* of water; generally pl. *source.*

ῥᾴδιος, ᾱ, ον: *easy.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

335. I. 1. ἦν δὲ φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς πρὸς[1] ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. 2. καὶ Κῦρος ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέᾱ εἰς Βαβυλῶνα. 3. Δᾱρείου[2] καὶ Παρυσάτιδος[2] γίγνονται παῖδες δύο. 4. τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἣν βούλωνται, δια-βήσονται. 5. οὐκ ἔφη παύσεσθαι. 6. ἔλεγε δ' ὅτι μισθὸν τάλαντον λήψοιντο. 7. ἀπ-ελθεῖν ῥᾴδιον ἔσται, ἢν βουλώμεθα. 8. οἱ Ἕλληνες παρ-εσκευάζοντο ὡς δεξόμενοι βασιλέᾱ. 9. πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολέμιοι ἡμῖν ἔσονται. 10. οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει σχεῖν[3] τοὺς ἄνδρας. 11. Πρόξενον δὲ ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας παρα-γενέσθαι, ὡς[4] εἰς Πῑσίδᾱς βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι. 12. Ξενίᾱς δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρ-εγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις. 13. ἐνόμισεν εἶναι ἱκανὸς[5] ἄρχειν. 14. σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι.[6] 15. τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε πείσομαι.[7] 16. στρατιώτης δέ τις εἶπεν ἑλέσθαι ἄλλους στρατηγούς, καὶ πέμψαι ἄνδρας κατα-ληψομένους[8] τὰ ἄκρα.

II. 1. Clearchus proposed to choose leaders, and to send them with soldiers to occupy the mountains. 2. He will not be able to control[9] bad men.

---

[1] *with reference to.*
[2] *from* gen., § 201.
[3] In sense of *restrain*, § 88.
[4] § 213. *a.*
[5] § 110. *d.*
[6] Fut. of **πάσχω.**
[7] Fut. mid. of **πείθω.**
[8] § 331.
[9] **ἄρχειν.**

XXXIII

CONSONANT DECLENSION (*Continued*). SOME IMPORTANT IRREGULAR NOUNS. μέγας AND πολύς

336. IRREGULAR NOUNS

1.

Sing. N.	γυνή, ἡ, *woman*	
G.	γυναικ-ός	
D.	γυναικ-ί	
A.	γυναῖκ-α	
V.	γύναι	
Dual N. A. V.	γυναῖκ-ε	
G. D.	γυναικ-οῖν	
Plur. N. V.	γυναῖκ-ες	
G.	γυναικ-ῶν	
D.	γυναιξί(ν)	
A.	γυναῖκ-ας	

2.

χείρ, ἡ, *hand*	
χειρ-ός	
χειρ-ί	
χεῖρ-α	
χείρ	
χεῖρ-ε	
χερ-οῖν and χειρ-οῖν	
χεῖρ-ες	
χειρ-ῶν	
χερ-σί(ν)	
χεῖρ-ας	

3.

Sing. N. A. V.	πῦρ, τό, *fire*
G.	πυρ-ός
D.	πυρ-ί
Plur. N. A. V.	πυρ-ά, τά (o-decl.), *watch fires*
G.	πυρ-ῶν
D.	πυρ-οῖς

4.

ὕδωρ, τό, *water*	
ὕδατ-ος	
ὕδατ-ι	
ὕδατ-α	
ὑδάτ-ων	
ὕδα-σι(ν)	

5.

Sing. N. A. V.	δόρυ, τό, *spear*
G.	δόρατ-ος
D.	δόρατ-ι
Dual N. A. V.	δόρατ-ε
G. D.	δοράτ-οιν
Plur. N. A. V.	δόρατ-α
G.	δοράτ-ων
D.	δόρα-σι(ν)

6.

γόνυ, τό, *knee*	
γόνατ-ος	
γόνατ-ι	
γόνατ-ε	
γονάτ-οιν	
γόνατ-α	
γονάτ-ων	
γόνα-σι(ν)	

337. TWO IMPORTANT IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

			MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
1.	Sing.	N.	μέγας *great*	μεγάλη	μέγα
		G.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου
		D.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ
		A.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα
	Plur.	N.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
		G.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
		D.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
		A.	μεγάλους	μεγάλᾱς	μεγάλα
2.	Sing.	N.	πολύς *much*	πολλή	πολύ
		G.	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
		D.	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
		A.	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
	Plur.	N.	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
		G.	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
		D.	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
		A.	πολλούς	πολλᾱ́ς	πολλά

338. VOCABULARY XXXIII

ἀπο-λαμβάνω (cp. **λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον**): *take* or *receive back; take off, cut off.*

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: *knee.* Lat. *genū.*

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: *woman, wife.*

δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: *spear.*

ἤδη, adv.: *now, already, straightway.*

Κελαιναί, ῶν, αἱ: *Celaenae,* a city in Phrygia.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: *great, large.* Mega-phone (**φωνή** *voice*).

νύκτωρ, adv. (cp. **νύξ**): *by night.*

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: *much, many; extensive, large.* **οἱ πολλοί**: *the many, the most.* **οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: *the most of the Greeks.* **τὸ πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος**: *the most of the army.* Poly-, poly-gon (**γωνίᾱ** *angle*), poly-technic (**τέχνη** *art*), etc.

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: *fire.* **πυρά, τά**: *watch fires.* Cp. pyre, pyro-technic (**τέχνη** *art*), etc.

Ταρσοί, ῶν, οἱ: *Tarsus,* the chief city of Cilicia.

τόξον, ου, τό: *bow.* Cp. **τοξότης, τόξευμα.**

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: *hand.* Chiro-graphy (**γράφω**).

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: *water; rain.* Hydro-, hydro-phobia (**φόβος**), etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

339. I. 1. ἔστι δὲ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς. 2. ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σῖτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. 3. μεγάλα δὲ τὰ τόξα τὰ Περσικά[1] ἐστιν. 4. οἱ δ' ἀπο-λήψονται καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας. 5. ἐν τῇ χειρὶ Κλέαρχος εἶχε τὸ δόρυ. 6. ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ κατ-έλαβον φυλακὴν τῆς νυκτός.[2] 7. ἔλεγόν τινες ὅτι κατ-ίδοιεν νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρά. 8. καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν.[3] 9. εἶχον δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων.[4] 10. τῷ δὲ δόρατι[5] παίει αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸ γόνυ. 11. διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγᾱς δύο καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσούς, τῆς Κιλικίᾱς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 12. οὗτος δ' ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν καλὸς μέν, μέγας δ' οὔ·[6] κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ἦσαν. 13. Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς ἤδη παρ-ῆσαν. 14. εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας.

II. 1. The wife of the king of Cilicia arrived[7] at[8] the camp. 2. On coming up[9] they kindled a fire. 3. The general marched five days' journey to Celaenae, a large and prosperous city. 4. The most of the barbarians had spears in their hands.

---

[1] §§ 67, 69. [2] § 155. [3] *there was.*
[4] §§ 278, 282. [5] § 141. [6] § 99.
[7] Use proper tense of **παρα-γίγνομαι**. [8] **εἰς**.
[9] Use aor. partic. and omit *on*.

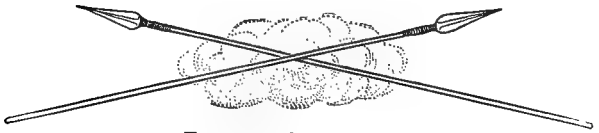

FIG. 19. — Greek Spears.

XXXIV

THE FIRST AORIST MIDDLE SYSTEM OF Ω-VERBS. INDIRECT QUESTIONS INTRODUCED BY THE INTERROGATIVE *τίς*, THE INDEFINITE RELATIVE *ὅστις*, AND OTHER INTERROGATIVE WORDS

340. The first aorist middle differs from the first aorist active (§ 160) only in the personal endings. The personal endings of the first aorist indicative middle are the same as in the imperfect middle; in the second person singular of the first aorist indicative, *-σα* + [*σ*]*ο* contracts to *-σω*. The other moods have in the first aorist middle the same personal endings as in the present middle. But the second person singular of the middle imperative in *-σαι* (*λῦσαι*) is peculiar in form, as is the second person singular of the active imperative in *-σον* (*λῦσον*).

341. A verb of three syllables naturally has recessive accent in the second person singular of the first aorist middle imperative. Thus *συμ-βούλευσαι consult.* From this form must be carefully distinguished the first aorist infinitive active *συμ-βουλεῦσαι to advise* (§ 166); and the third person singular of the first aorist optative active *συμ-βουλεύσαι* (or *-σειε*), final *-αι* being long in the optative mood (§ 253).

342. FIRST AORIST MIDDLE SYSTEM OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἐ-λῡ-σά-μην *I loosed for myself, I ransomed*		ἐ-λῡ-σά-μεθα
2.	ἐ-λῦ-σω	ἐ-λῦ-σα-σθον	ἐ-λῦ-σα-σθε
3.	ἐ-λῦ-σα-το	ἐ-λῡ-σά-σθην	ἐ-λῦ-σα-ντο

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Subjv. 1.	λῡ́-σω-μαι		λῡ-σώ-μεθα
2.	λῡ́-σῃ	λῡ́-σῃ-σθον	λῡ́-σῃ-σθε
3.	λῡ́-σῃ-ται	λῡ́-σῃ-σθον	λῡ́-σω-νται
Opt. 1.	λῡ-σαί-μην		λῡ-σαί-μεθα
2.	λῡ́-σαι-ο	λῡ́-σαι-σθον	λῡ́-σαι-σθε
3.	λῡ́-σαι-το	λῡ-σαί-σθην	λῡ́-σαι-ντο
Imv. 2.	λῦ-σαι	λῦ́-σα-σθον	λῦ́-σα-σθε
3.	λῡ-σά-σθω	λῡ-σά-σθων	λῡ-σά-σθων
Inf.	λῦ́-σα-σθαι		
Partic.	λῡ-σά-μενος, η, ον		

Review the first aorist active system of λῡ́ω, *i.e.* the first aorist indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive, and participle (§§ 162, 209. *b*, 235, 254, 297).

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

343. The same words that introduce direct questions may also introduce indirect questions. Thus τίς *who?* τί *what* (ποῦ *where?* etc.). Or the corresponding indefinite relative pronoun (or adverb) may be used. Thus ὅστις for τίς (and ὅπου for ποῦ, etc.). Examples are provided under §§ 344, 345.

a. εἰ after an interrogative verb may mean *whether.*

344. An indirect question after a primary tense of the verb of *asking* keeps its original mood and tense unchanged:

διᾰ-λέγου καὶ μάθε (§ 303. *a*) τίνες εἰσίν [~~or οἵ τινές εἰσιν~~] converse (with them) and learn who they are.

345. After a secondary tense of the verb of *asking* the verb of the indirect question may be changed to the optative. The tense used in the direct question must be retained, but the change of mood is optional:

ἤρετο ὅ τι [or τί] εἴη τὸ σύνθημα he asked what the watchword was. *In the direct form:* τί ἐστι τὸ σύνθημα; what is the watchword?

The original verb *ἐστί* might have been retained in the indirect question.

346. VOCABULARY XXXIV

ἀληθής, ές: *true.*

ἄρχομαι, ἄρξομαι, ἠρξάμην (mid. of **ἄρχω**, Vocabulary VIII): *begin*, with gen. or inf.

δια-πρᾰ́ττομαι (cp. **πρᾰ́ττω**), **δια-πρᾰ́ξομαι, δι-επρᾱ́ξάμην**: carry through to the end, *bring about*, *accomplish*, *effect* (for oneself); *manage* that (with acc. and inf.).

δυνατός, ή, όν: *able*, *strong*. Cp. **δύναμις**.

εἰ, after an interr. verb: *whether*.

ἠρόμην, 2 aor.: *I asked* (a question) or *inquired*; subjv. **ἔρωμαι**, opt. **ἐροίμην**, imv. **ἐροῦ**, inf. **ἐρέσθαι**, partic. **ἐρόμενος**.

θῡ́ομαι, θῡ́σομαι, ἐθῡσάμην (mid. of **θῡ́ω**, Vocabulary XXIII): *sacrifice*, *offer* for oneself or from one's own resources.

κατα-βαίνω, κατα-βήσομαι: *go down*, *descend*. Cp. **ἀνα-βαίνω** (Vocabulary XXVI).

σκέπτομαι, σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, dep. mid.: *view*, *observe*, *consider*. The pres. and impf. are rare in Attic. **Skeptic.**

συ-σκευάζω (**σύν** + **σκευάζω**, cp. **παρα-σκευάζω**), **συ-σκευάσω, συν-εσκεύασα**: *make ready* (by getting things together, **συν-**), *pack up*, with acc.; MID. *pack up one's own baggage*, *pack up*.

χαρίζομαι (theme **χαριδ-**), fut. to be learned later, **ἐχαρισάμην**, dep. mid.. *show a favor* to somebody (dat.), *gratify*, *grant* something (acc.) to somebody (dat.) *as a favor*. Cp. **χάρις**.

χιών, όνος, ἡ: *snow*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

347. I. 1. Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετ-επέμψατο, ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος. 2. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. 3. ἐπὶ τούτοις[1] ἐθύσαντο. 4. τούτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλῦον.[2] 5. ἤρξαντο δὲ κατα-βαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους. 6. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἐδέξαντο αὐτούς. 7. αὐτὸς δὲ δυνατὸς[3] ἦν παρα-σκευάσασθαι

[1] *upon this, thereupon.* [2] *the hindrance* (§ 212). [3] § 333.

χῑλόν. 8. λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,[1] ἐὰν αὐτῷ ταῦτα τὰ ὅπλα χαρίσωνται. 9. συν-έλεξα ὑμᾶς ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὅ τι χρὴ πράττειν. 10. συ-σκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς, ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς. 11. καὶ τὰς ἁμάξᾱς, ἃς παρ-εσκευάσατο Κῦρος, οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ δι-ήρπασαν. 12. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος δι-επρᾱ́ξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγοὺς ἥκειν, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχᾱγούς. 13. ταῦτα δὲ δια-πρᾱξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπὶ λόφον. 14. ἤρετο τὸν ἄνθρωπον εἰ ἀληθῆ ταῦτ' εἴη.

II. 1. Cyrus wondered what the watchword was. 2. We asked why they had taken the field against the king. 3. The barbarians plundered all the wagons, full of wine and grain, which Cyrus had prepared.

---

[1] § 119.

FIG. 20. — Helmet with Movable Cheek Pieces.

XXXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES IN -ων. GENITIVE OF COMPARISON. ACCUSATIVE OF THE *WAY BY WHICH*. SUPERLATIVE TRANSLATED BY *VERY*

348. The comparative degree of an adjective in -ος is commonly formed by adding -τερος to the stem of the adjective as seen in the positive degree. Thus δίκαιος *just;* comparative δικαιό-τερος (ᾱ, ον) *more just.* Similarly the superlative degree is commonly formed by the suffix -τατος. Thus δικαιό-τατος (η, ον) *most just.*

a. All comparatives and superlatives have recessive accent.

349. If the penult of the adjective is short in the positive degree, the ο of the stem is lengthened to ω before the comparative and superlative suffixes. Thus ἄξιος *worthy*, comparative ἀξιώ-τερος, superlative ἀξιώ-τατος.

350. A penult is counted long, although its vowel is short, if its vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant (§ 6). Thus the penult of πιστός *faithful* is long, and the comparative and superlative are therefore πιστό-τερος, πιστό-τατος.

351. AN ILLUSTRATIVE LIST OF ADJECTIVES COMPARED

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
a.	δίκαιος, ᾱ, ον, *just*	δικαιότερος, ᾱ, ον	δικαιότατος, η, ον
	ἰσχῡρός, ᾰ́, όν, *strong*	ἰσχῡρότερος, ᾱ, ον	ἰσχῡρότατος, η, ον
	μακρός, ᾰ́, όν, *long*	μακρότερος, ᾱ, ον	μακρότατος, η, ον
	πιστός, ή, όν, *faithful*	πιστότερος, ᾱ, ον	πιστότατος, η, ον

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
b.	ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον, *worthy*	ἀξιώτερος, ᾱ, ον	ἀξιώτατος, η, ον
	φοβερός, ᾱ́, όν, *fearful*	φοβερώτερος, ᾱ, ον	φοβερώτατος, η, ον
	χαλεπός, ή, όν, *hard, difficult, harsh, severe*	χαλεπώτερος, ᾱ, ον	χαλεπώτατος, η, ον

Similarly are compared:

c.	βραχύς, εῖα, ύ, *short*	βραχύτερος, ᾱ, ον	βραχύτατος, η, ον
	[πρέσβυς, poetic, *old* [1]]	πρεσβύτερος, ᾱ, ον, *older, elder*	πρεσβύτατος, η, ον
d.	ἀληθής, ές, *true*	ἀληθέσ-τερος, ᾱ, ον	ἀληθέσ-τατος, η, ον
	ἀσφαλής, ές, *safe*	ἀσφαλέσ-τερος, ᾱ, ον	ἀσφαλέσ-τατος, η, ον
e.	εὐδαίμων, ον, *prosperous*	εὐδαιμον-έσ-τερος, ᾱ, ον	εὐδαιμον-έσ-τατος, η, ον

352. The following are compared by the suffixes *-ίων, ῑον*, comparative, and *-ιστος, η, ον*, superlative:

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
a.	ἡδύς, εῖα, ύ, *sweet*	ἡδίων, ἥδῑον	ἥδιστος, η, ον
	ταχύς, εῖα, ύ, *swift, quick*	[ταχ-ίων =] θᾶττων, θᾶττον	τάχιστος, η, ον
b.	αἰσχρός, ᾱ́, όν, *shameful*	αἰσχίων, αἴσχῑον	αἴσχιστος, η, ον
	ἐχθρός, ᾱ́, όν, *hostile*	ἐχθίων, ἔχθῑον	ἔχθιστος, η, ον

These drop *-ρός* and add *-ίων, -ιστος*.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES IN -ων, GENITIVE -ονος

353. Comparatives in *-ων*, neut. *-ον*, gen. *-ονος*, are declined like *εὐδαίμων* (§ 222), with these exceptions: the accusative singular masculine and feminine and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, masculine and feminine, may contract. The contracted accusative plural masculine and feminine copies the nominative plural. The nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural may be similarly contracted.

[1] Cp. pl. πρέσβεις, Vocabulary XXVII.

a. The contracted forms come from stems in *-οσ*, as *ἡδίοσ-α, ἡδίοσ-ες*; *sigma* dropping between two vowels, *ο + α = ω*, and *ο + ε = ου*.

354.

		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	N.	ἡδίων *sweeter*	ἥδῖον
	G.	ἡδίονος	
	D.	ἡδίονι	
	A.	ἡδίονα or ἡδίω	ἥδῖον
	V.	ἥδῖον	
Dual	N. A. V.	ἡδίονε	
	G. D.	ἡδῖόνοιν	
Plur.	N. V.	ἡδίονες or ἡδίους	ἡδίονα or ἡδίω
	G.	ἡδῖόνων	
	D.	ἡδίοσι(ν)	
	A.	ἡδίονας or ἡδίους	ἡδίονα or ἡδίω

355. Genitive of comparison. — The genitive case follows a comparative when *ἤ than* is omitted. This is the *from* use of the genitive. (Similarly in Latin the ablative follows a comparative when *quam*, "than," is omitted.)

οἶνος τούτου ἡδίων wine sweeter than this.

356. Akin to the cognate accusative (§ 181) is the **accusative** of the *way by which* found with a verb of *motion:*

ὁδὸν πορεύεσθαι to travel a road.

357. The **superlative** degree may be sometimes translated by *very*. Thus *ἥδιστος sweetest* or *very sweet*.

358. VOCABULARY XXXV

Learn the adjectives in §§ 351, 352. They are not repeated in the following list.

Ἀρταπάτης, ου, ὁ: *Artapates*, a friend of Cyrus.

βασιλικός, ή, όν (cp **βασιλεύς** and **βασ(λειος)**): *kinglike, fit to be king; royal.*

εἰσ-άγω (cp. **ἄγω**): *lead in.*

ἐπι-τυγχάνω, ἐπι-τεύξομαι (dep. fut.), **ἐπ-έτυχον**: *chance upon, happen upon, find*, with dat.

νέος, ᾱ, ον: *new, fresh, young.* Comp. **νεώτερος**, sup. **νεώτατος**. Cp. Lat. *novus*. Neo-lithic (**λίθος** *stone*).

οὔ-πω, adv.: *not yet, never yet.*

ὄχλος, ου, ὁ: *crowd, throng; annoyance, bother.*

ὡς: adv. with sup. to express the very highest degree. Cp. Lat. *quam* with sup. Thus **ὡς μακρότατος**: *as long as possible.* See also previous Vocabularies (XXII, XXIV, XXVI, XXVIII).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

359. I. 1. Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. 2. χαλεπώτατος δὲ ἐχθρός[1] ἐστιν. 3. πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. 4. οἴνῳ τούτου ἡδίονι οὔπω ἐπ-έτυχον ἐγώ. 5. τοὺς δὲ ἰσχῡροτάτους τῶν πελταστῶν ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλῦον. 6. ἐπορεύοντο δὲ μακροτέρᾱν ὁδόν. 7. οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες αἰσχίους εἰσὶ τῶν πρόσθεν.[2] 8. δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι δέκα σταθμοὺς ὡς μακροτάτους. 9. φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ ἡμῖν. 10. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίᾱν ἀπο-πέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.[3] 11. ὁ Ἀριαῖος φίλος ἐστὶ τοῖς Κύρου ἐχθίστοις.[4] 12. μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσ-ῆγον Ὀρόντᾱν εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνήν, τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου φίλων. 13. Κῦρος δὲ ἤδη ἦν βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος. 14. πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερώτατος.

---

[1] The noun, § 323.

[2] Supply *men*, § 70. *b*.

[3] §§ 284, 356.

[4] Used as noun: *most bitter enemies.*

II. 1. They proceeded home by the quickest way. 2. It is necessary for a soldier to be as faithful as possible if he is about to do guard duty.[1] 3. I think that road is safer than this.[2]

XXXVI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*). IRREGULAR COMPARISON. DOUBLE QUESTIONS

360. The following common adjectives show irregularities of comparison:

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1.	**ἀγαθός, ή, όν,** *good*, etc.	**ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον,** *braver, better*	**ἄριστος, η, ον**
	(morally *better*)	**βελτίων, βέλτιον**	**βέλτιστος, η, ον**
	(*stronger, better*)	**κρείττων, κρεῖττον**	**κράτιστος, η, ον**
2.	**κακός, ή, όν,** *bad, cowardly*, etc.	**κακίων, κάκιον**	**κάκιστος, η, ον**
		χείρων, χεῖρον	**χείριστος, η, ον**
		ἥττων, ἧττον	**ἥκιστα**, adv., *least of all, by no means*
3.	**καλός, ή, όν,** *beautiful, noble*, etc.	**καλλίων, κάλλιον**	**κάλλιστος, η, ον**
151 4.	**μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα,** *big*	**μείζων, μεῖζον**	**μέγιστος, η, ον**
5.	**μῑκρός, ᾱ́, όν,** *small*	**μῑκρότερος, ᾱ, ον**	**μῑκρότατος, η, ον**
		μείων, μεῖον, *smaller, fewer* (in pl.)	
6.	**ὀλίγος, η, ον,** *little, few*	**ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον**	**ἐλάχιστος, η, ον**
	(The comparative and superlative may be given with **μῑκρός** also.)		
7.	**πολύς, πολλή, πολύ,** *much, many*	**πλείων, πλεῖον** and **πλέον**	**πλεῖστος, η, ον**
8.	**ῥᾴδιος, ᾱ, ον,** *easy*	**ῥᾴων, ῥᾷον**	**ῥᾷστος, η, ον**

[1] §§ 156. 2, 181.

[2] Be careful about the gender.

For the declension of the comparatives in *-ων, -ον*, cp. *ἡδίων*, § 354.

361. The following lack the positive:

πρότερος, ᾱ, ον, *former*	**πρῶτος, η, ον,** *first*
ὕστερος, ᾱ, ον, *later*	**ὕστατος, η, ον,** *latest*

Ἔσχατος, η, ον, *last, extreme*, is found in the superlative only.

362. A **double question**, direct or indirect, may be introduced by *πότερον* (or *πότερα*) . . . *ἤ whether . . . or*. In the double indirect question the same rules apply as in single indirect questions (§§ 344, 345).

πότερον οἱ στρατηγοὶ βούλονται πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν; do the generals wish to proceed or to delay?

ἤρετο πότερον οἱ στρατηγοὶ βούλοιντο πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν he asked whether the generals wished to proceed or to delay.

The original verb *βούλονται* might have been retained in the indirect question.

363. The double *indirect* question may also be introduced by *εἰ . . . ἤ whether . . . or*:

ἤρετο εἰ οἱ στρατηγοὶ βούλοιντο πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν he asked whether the generals wished to proceed or to delay.

364. VOCABULARY XXXVI

Learn the meanings of all the adjectives in §§ 360, 361. They are not repeated in the following list.

ἔπειτα, adv.. *thereupon, then, next.*

πότερον (πότερα) . . . ἤ, introducing a double question, direct or indirect: *whether . . . or.*

προσ-έρχομαι (cp. **ἔρχομαι**): *go to, come to, come up*; may take dat. of pers. or **εἰς** and acc.

πρόβατον, ου, τό: *cattle, sheep.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

365. I. 1. ὥστε ὥρᾱ λέγειν ὅ τι τις νομίζει ἄριστον εἶναι. 2. δεῖ δὲ ἡμᾶς μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν.[1] 3. κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. 4. ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς κρατίστους κᾰ́ειν τᾱ̀ς ἀμάξᾱς. 5. ἤρετο δὲ εἰ οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν ἱππέων εἶεν Θρᾷκες ἢ οὔ. 6. ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσ-ερχόμενος. 7. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντᾱς γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾱ ὅτι ἥξει ἔχων ἱππέᾱς ὡς πλείστους. 8. ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, νομίζων ὑμᾶς ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω. 9. οὗτοι οἱ ἵπποι μείονές εἰσι τῶν Περσικῶν ἵππων. 10. ῥᾷόν ἐστι πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν; 11. Πρόξενος δ' οὐκ ἤρετο πότερον βέλτῑον εἴη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μέλλειν. 12. ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις λέγετε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε.[2] 13. ἦσαν δὲ τάφροι, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· αἱ δὲ ἔσχαται ἦσαν μῑκρόταται. 14. εἰ βούλοιό τῳ[3] φίλος εἶναι, ὡς μέγιστος φίλος ἂν εἴης. 15. χρὴ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ὡς ἐλάχιστα πρόβατα ἁρπάσαι.

II. 1. There were very many[4] horses in the plain. 2. This grain was very abundant[5] in the land. 3. If there is any other, better way, speak out.[6] 4. He commanded his generals to enlist as many and as brave men as possible.

---

[1] Cp. § 359. I. 7. [2] *consider.* [3] § 227.
[4] § 357. [5] Sup. of πολύς. [6] Omit *out.*

XXXVII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. IRREGULAR ADVERBS. GENITIVE AFTER ADVERBS OF PLACE

366. The positive degree of an adverb is commonly formed from any adjective in the positive degree by changing final **ν** of the genitive plural neuter to **ς**. The accent of the adjective is retained in the adverb. Thus

GENITIVE PLURAL NEUTER ADJECTIVE	CORRESPONDING ADVERB
δικαίων (from **δίκαιος**)	**δικαίως** *justly*
ἰσχῡρῶν (from **ἰσχῡρός**)	**ἰσχῡρῶς** *strongly, exceedingly, harshly*
ἀσφαλῶν (from **ἀσφαλής**)	**ἀσφαλῶς** *safely*
ἡδέων (from **ἡδύς**)	**ἡδέως** *gladly*

367. Not infrequently the neuter singular accusative (adverbial accusative, § 284) of the adjective in the positive degree is used for the corresponding adverb. Thus **ταχύ** *quickly.*

368. The *neuter singular accusative* of the comparative degree of an adjective is used for the comparative degree of the adverb; and the *neuter plural accusative* of the superlative degree of an adjective is used for the superlative degree of the adverb.

EXAMPLES OF COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
δικαίως *justly*	**δικαιότερον**	**δικαιότατα**
ἰσχῡρῶς *strongly, exceedingly, harshly*	**ἰσχῡρότερον**	**ἰσχῡρότατα**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
φοβερῶς *fearfully*	**φοβερώτερον**	**φοβερώτατα**
ἀσφαλῶς *safely*	**ἀσφαλέστερον**	**ἀσφαλέστατα**
ταχέως } *swiftly,* or irregular **τάχα** } *quickly*	**θᾶττον**	**τάχιστα**
κακῶς *badly*	**κάκῑον** *worse*	**κάκιστα**
καλῶς *beautifully*	**κάλλῑον**	**κάλλιστα**
ἡδέως *gladly*	**ἥδῑον**	**ἥδιστα**

369. A LIST OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1.	**ἄνω** *up*	**ἀνωτέρω** *higher*	**ἀνωτάτω** *highest*
2.	**ἐγγύς** *near*	**ἐγγύτερον** **ἐγγυτέρω**	**ἐγγύτατα** **ἐγγυτάτω**
3.	**εὖ** *well* (adv. of **ἀγαθός**)	**ἄμεινον** *better*	**ἄριστα** *best*
		βέλτῑον **κρεῖττον**	**βέλτιστα** **κράτιστα**
4.	**μάλα** *very*	**μᾶλλον** *more*	**μάλιστα** *most*

370. Adjectives may be compared by using **μᾶλλον** and **μάλιστα** with the positive degree. Thus **μᾶλλον φίλοι** *more friendly.*

371. Various other adverbial endings may be best learned with the words themselves, as **οἴκαδε** *homeward.*

372. An **adverb of place** is followed by the genitive case:

ἐγγὺς τοῦ χωρίου near the stronghold.

Under this head comes also **πέραν** (Vocabulary XXIII).

373. Note **ὡς** (or **ὅτι**) **τάχιστα** (cp. § 358) *as quickly as possible; **ὡς μάλιστα** as much as possible.*

374. VOCABULARY XXXVII

Learn the adverbs in §§ 366–369. Except **ἄνω**, they are not repeated in this list.

ἄνω, adv.: *up;* up from the sea, *inland, into the interior.* Cp. **ἀνά**.

ἀ-παράσκευος, ον: *unprepared.* Cp. **παρα-σκευάζω**.

ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ (cp. **ἄρ-ιστος**) : *fitness, excellence, bravery; virtue, noble-mindedness, magnanimity.*

δέοι, pres. opt. of **δεῖ** : *it is necessary* (Vocabulary XX).

κολάζω (theme **κολαδ-**), **κολάσω, ἐκόλασα** : *chastise, punish.*

μάχομαι (cp. **μάχη**), fut. to be learned later, **ἐμαχεσάμην** (aor. with lengthened theme) : *fight.* The enemy is expressed by the dat. or **πρός** (*against*) and acc.[1] Cp. § 317.

ὄνομα, ατος, τό : *name.* **Syn-onym** (**συν-**).

ὅσος, η, ον, rel. pron.: *as great as, as much as, as many as, all that; how great, how much, how many.*

ὅσα : *as many things as, all that.*

ὅτι, as adv., strengthens a superlative, like **ὡς** (Vocabulary XXXV). Thus **ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατος** : *as unprepared as possible.*

οὕτω and **οὕτως** (cp. **οὗτος**), adv.: *thus, in this way* (usually with reference to what goes before), *so.*

πόλεμος, ου, ὁ (cp. **πολέμιος**) : *war.*

πολύ, adv. (cp. **πολύς**) : *much, by far.* See § 367.

προθῡμως (adv. of **πρόθῡμος** *ready, eager*) : *readily, eagerly, zealously.* Comp. **προθῡμότερον**, sup. **προθῡμότατα**.

τὸ πρόσθεν (adv. acc.) : *before, formerly.* Cp. Vocabulary XXVI.

συμ-πορεύομαι : *proceed with, accompany.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

375. I. 1. Κῦρος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπορεύοντο ἄνω. 2. κάκῖον δὲ ἔπρᾱξαν.[2] 3. ἄλλος δὲ εἶπε[3] στρατηγοὺς ἑλέσθαι ὡς τάχιστα. 4. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἀκούσαντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετήν, ἥδῖον καὶ προθῡμότερον συνεπορεύοντο. 5. ἔτρεχον γὰρ πολὺ θᾶττον τῶν ἵππων.[4]

[1] **μάχεσθαι σύν τινι**, on the other hand, means to *fight with the aid of somebody*, who is an ally, not an enemy.

[2] *did = fared.* [3] § 334. [4] § 355.

6. ἥδιστα ἂν ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα τούτου τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ ὅσα ἔπραξεν. 7. εἰς τὰς ἐγγύτατω[1] κώμας ἦκεν ἔχων τοὺς πρώτους.[2] 8. δικαίως ἄν μοι χαρίζοιτο. 9. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐκόλαζεν ἰσχυρῶς. 10. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι μᾶλλον φίλοι Κύρῳ ἦσαν ἢ βασιλεῖ. 11. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος θᾶττον ἐπορεύετο, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα. 12. οὕτως πορευοίμεθα ἂν ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι, ὡς κράτιστα ἂν μαχοίμεθα. 13. ἦσαν γὰρ ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ οὔτε πόλεις οὔτε κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. 14. ἐξ-ηλαυνον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πολὺ ἔτι προθῦμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. 15. λέγει ὅτι κάλλιστα διελέγοντο περὶ ἀρετῆς.

II. 1. The king collected his army quickly, in order that he might fight with the enemy while they were[3] as unprepared as possible. 2. The enemy ran more swiftly than before. 3. We marched as quickly as possible that we might be first on the other side of the river.

---

[1] § 70. [2] *the van.* [3] Omit *while they were.*

XXXVIII

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN. THE INDIRECT REFLEXIVE *οἷ*. ATTRIBUTIVE POSITION OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Review the paradigms of personal pronouns (§ 304) and of *αὐτός* (§ 122). For *ἑαυτοῦ* cp. also § 378.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, AND ἑαυτοῦ

376. The reflexive pronouns are made up, in the singular, from the stems of the personal pronouns and the forms of *αὐτός* in the oblique (§ 123. 3) cases.

			MASC.	FEM.
1.	Sing.	G.	ἐμαυτοῦ *of myself*	ἐμαυτῆς
		D.	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ
		A.	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν
	Plur.	G.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν *of ourselves*	
		D.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς
		A.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς
2.	Sing.	G.	σεαυτοῦ[1] *of yourself*	σεαυτῆς
		D.	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
		A.	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
	Plur.	G.	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν *of yourselves*	
		D.	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
		A.	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς

			MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
3.	Sing.	G.	ἑαυτοῦ[2] *of himself*	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
		D.	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ
		A.	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό

[1] Or, contracted, σαυτοῦ, σαυτῆς, etc.

[2] Or, contracted, αὑτοῦ, αὑτῆς, αὑτοῦ, etc.

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Plur.	G.	ἑαυτῶν[1] *of themselves*	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
	D.	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς
	A.	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτᾱ́ς	ἑαυτά
Plur. also:	G.	σφῶν αὐτῶν *of themselves*		
	D.	σφίσιν αὐτοῖς	σφίσιν αὐταῖς.	
	A.	σφᾶς αὐτούς	σφᾶς αὐτᾱ́ς	

THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN, *one another*

			MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
377. Dual	G. D.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν
	A.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλᾱ	ἀλλήλω
Plur.	G.	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
	D.	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
	A.	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλᾱς	ἄλληλα

THE INDIRECT REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON

378. Sing.	G.	[οὗ], [οὑ][2]	Plur. N.	σφεῖς
	D.	οἷ, οἱ, *to* or *for himself* or *herself*	G.	σφῶν
			D.	σφίσι(ν)
	A.	[ἕ], [ἑ]	A.	σφᾶς

a. This pronoun is an *indirect* reflexive in Attic Greek; that is, used in a subordinate clause, it refers to the subject of the *main* clause:

ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν πέμπειν σφίσι πλοῖα they ordered him to send boats to them.

379. The **genitive** of the reflexive pronoun, when denoting possession, has the attributive (§ 67) position:

συν-έλεξε τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτᾱς he collected his own soldiers.

---

[1] Or, contracted, **αὑτῶν, αὑτῶν, αὑτῶν**, etc.

[2] Enclitic forms are [οὑ], οἱ, [ἑ]. Bracketed forms are very rare in Attic prose.

a. It will be recalled that the possessive genitive of the *personal* pronoun has the predicate position (§§ 127, 308).

380. In such expressions as that just described, the noun is often understood (cp. § 70. *b*) :

οἱ ἑαυτοῦ (supply στρατιῶται) his own soldiers ; τὰ ἑαυτῶν their own affairs *or* their own possessions.

381. VOCABULARY XXXVIII

For ἀλλήλοιν, ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ and σαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ and αὐτοῦ, and οὗ see the preceding paradigms.

αἰσθάνομαι (theme αἰσθ-, pres. tense suffix αν%), fut. αἰσθήσομαι (with lengthened theme), 2 aor. ἠσθόμην, subjv. αἴσθωμαι, etc. : *perceive*. An-aesthetic (ἀν- privative).

εἰσ-ελαύνω (cp. ἐλαύνω) : *drive in, ride* or *march in*, with εἰς and acc.

ἐκκλησίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ : *assembly*. [In a later age, *church*.] Ecclesiastic.

ἐπι-βουλή, ῆς, ἡ : *plot* (against). Cp. ἐπι-βουλεύω.

ἕτοιμος, η, ον, or ἕτοιμος, ον : *ready, prepared*.

οἴομαι (often οἶμαι), fut. οἰήσομαι (with lengthened theme) : *think, suppose*.

Συέννεσις, ιος (nón-Attic gen.), ὁ : *Syennesis*, king of Cilicia.

τάξις (ταγ + σι + ς), εως, ἡ : *order, arrangement* ; military *line, column, division*. Cp. τάττω.

τάττω (theme ταγ-, pres. tense suffix *y*%, cp. φυλάττω, § 182, NOTE), τάξω, ἔταξα : *arrange, draw up, marshal* troops. Tactics, etc.

χωρίς, adv. : *apart* ; prep. with gen. . *apart from*.

ὧδε, adv. (cp. ὅδε) : *thus, as follows*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

382. I. 1. πρῶτον[1] γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον[1] οἱ θεῶν ὅρκοι[2] κωλύουσιν ἡμᾶς πολεμίους εἶναι[3] ἀλλήλοις. 2. ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο. 3. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτήν. 4. Κῦρος

[1] § 284. [2] *oaths by the gods*. [3] hinder us *from being*, etc.

FIG. 21. — Monument of Dexileos, an Athenian Knight (ἱππεύς).

δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσ-ήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετ-επέμψατο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν. 5. Κλέαρχος δὲ συν-ήγαγεν ἐκκλησίᾱν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. 6. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συν-αγαγὼν τούς θ'[1] ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτᾱς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων[2] τὸν βουλόμενον,[3] ἔλεξεν ὧδε. 7. αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἤδη ἔταξεν. 8. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἀπ-ῆλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος. 9. Ὀρόντᾱς δὴ νομίσᾱς ἑτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέᾱς γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾱ. 10. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντᾱς ᾕρετο τὸν ἄνδρα πιστὸν οἱ εἶναι. 11. ἦξω δ' αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν. 12. τότε ἔμαθες τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν. 13. ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ. 14. Μένων συν-έλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων.

II. 1. Cyrus commanded each general to draw up his own men. 2. Clearchus wished his own soldiers to proceed first.[4] 3. The king's wife rode past in her own carriage.

---

[1] For τ' = τε (§ 31). [2] § 179. [3] § 212.
[4] Put *first* in pred. position.

XXXIX

THE PASSIVE VOICE OF Ω-VERBS. FIRST AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM. EUPHONIC LAWS OF MUTES BEFORE MUTES. DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN *-εἰς*. DEPONENT PASSIVES. AGENT EXPRESSED BY *ὑπό* AND GENITIVE. CONSTRUCTION AFTER PASSIVE OF *λέγω say*

383. The present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses are the same in form as the corresponding tenses of the middle voice. The perfect tenses will be studied later (§§ 452 ff.). Only the aorist passive and the future passive have forms distinct from the middle. The sign of the first aorist passive and of the first future passive is *θη* or *θε*. This sign is added to the verb theme before the usual suffixes.

THE FIRST AORIST PASSIVE

384. The aorist passive uses the active personal endings throughout. In the aorist indicative, imperative, and infinitive the endings are added directly to the passive sign *θη*.[1] In the other moods *θε* is the form of the passive sign. The aorist subjunctive, as usual, has the long thematic vowel *ω/η* as its mood sign, before which *ε* (of *θε*) is absorbed. The aorist optative has the mood sign *ιη* (after *θε*) in the singular, but regularly (in classical Greek) the short mood sign *ι* in the dual and plural. As before noted (§ 252), the sign in the third person plural is *ιε*.

[1] *θε* in 3 pl. imperative.

385. FIRST AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λύω

		SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic.	1.	ἐ-λύ-θη-ν *I was loosed*		ἐ-λύ-θη-μεν
	2.	ἐ-λύ-θη-ς	ἐ-λύ-θη-τον	ἐ-λύ-θη-τε
	3.	ἐ-λύ-θη	ἐ-λυ-θή-την	ἐ-λύ-θη-σαν
Subjv.	1.	λυ-θῶ [for λυ-θέ-ω]		λυ-θῶ-μεν
	2.	λυ-θῇς [for λυ-θέ-ῃς]	λυ-θῆ-τον	λυ-θῆ-τε
	3.	λυ-θῇ [for λυ-θέ-ῃ]	λυ-θῆ-τον	λυ-θῶ-σι(ν)
Opt.	1.	λυ-θείη-ν		λυ-θεῖ-μεν
	2.	λυ-θείη-ς	λυ-θεῖ-τον	λυ-θεῖ-τε
	3.	λυ-θείη	λυ-θεί-την	λυ-θεῖε-ν
	Less common	1.		λυ-θείη-μεν
		2.	λυ-θείη-τον	λυ-θείη-τε
		3.	λυ-θειή-τῆν	λυ-θείη-σαν
Imv.	2.	λύ-θη-τι [1]	λύ-θη-τον	λύ-θη-τε
	3.	λυ-θή-τω	λυ-θή-των	λυ-θέ-ντων
Inf.		λυ-θῆ-ναι [2]		
Partic.		λυ-θείς, εῖσα, έν		

386. The first aorist passive formation *ἐ-λύ-θην* is typical of all vowel themes. But mute themes suffer euphonic changes before the passive suffix *θη* (*θε*).

MUTES BEFORE MUTES

387. 1. A labial mute (*π β φ*) or a palatal mute (*κ γ χ*) before a lingual mute (*τ δ θ*) must be of the same order (§ 28); *i.e.* smooth before smooth, middle before middle, and rough before rough. The *class* of the mute remains unchanged:

π + θ = φθ	κ + θ = χθ	π + τ = πτ
β + θ = φθ	γ + θ = χθ	γ + τ = κτ

[1] For λύ-θη-θι: -θι, the imv. suffix, is changed to τ (*smooth*) to avoid repetition of the rough mute θ at the beginning of successive syllables.

[2] All infinitives in -ναι are accented on the penult.

ἐ-πεμπ-θην (1 aor. pass. of πέμπω) becomes ἐπέμφθην.

ἐ-λειπ-θην (λείπω) becomes ἐλείφθην.

ἐ-ληβ-θην (λαμβάνω, themes λαβ- and ληβ-) becomes ἐλήφθην.

ἐ-φυ-λακ-θην (φυλάττω, theme φυλακ-) becomes ἐφυλάχθην.

ἐ-λεγ-θην (λέγω *say*) becomes ἐλέχθην.

ἐ-πρᾱγ-θην (πράττω, theme πρᾱγ-) becomes ἐπράχθην.

ἐ-ταγ-θην (τάττω, theme ταγ-) becomes ἐτάχθην.

2. A lingual mute (τ δ θ) before another lingual mute is changed to *sigma*.

ἐ-πειθ-θην (1 aor. pass. of πείθω) becomes ἐπείσθην.

ἡρπαδ-θην (ἁρπάζω, theme ἁρπαδ-) becomes ἡρπάσθην.

DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES IN -είς, -εῖσα, -έν

λυθείς (STEM λυθεντ-) *having been loosed*, 1 AOR. PASS. PARTIC. OF λύω

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
388. Sing.	N. V.	λυθείς	λυθεῖσα	λυθέν
	G.	λυθέντος	λυθείσης	λυθέντος
	D.	λυθέντι	λυθείσῃ	λυθέντι
	A.	λυθέντα	λυθεῖσαν	λυθέν
Dual	N. A. V.	λυθέντε	λυθείσᾱ	λυθέντε
	G. D.	λυθέντοιν	λυθείσαιν	λυθέντοιν
Plur.	N. V.	λυθέντες	λυθεῖσαι	λυθέντα
	G.	λυθέντων	λυθεισῶν	λυθέντων
	D.	λυθεῖσι(ν)	λυθείσαις	λυθεῖσι(ν)
	A.	λυθέντας	λυθείσᾱς	λυθέντα

a. In the nominative singular masculine and dative plural masculine and neuter, ε preceding ντ is lengthened to ει in compensation for the loss of ντ before σ (cp. § 200).

389. Certain deponent verbs (§ 316) lack the aorist middle, and have, instead, the aorist passive in the depo-

nent use. For this reason they are commonly called **deponent passive** verbs. Thus *βούλομαι*, aor. *ἐβουλήθην I wished*; *δια-λέγομαι*, aor. *δι-ελέχθην I conversed*; *οἴομαι*, aor. *ᾠήθην I thought*; *πορεύομαι*, aor. *ἐπορεύθην I proceeded.*

Take care never to write the aorist of *πορεύομαι* as [redacted]. The future is *πορεύσομαι* (middle).

390. The **agent**, with a passive verb, is expressed by *ὑπό by* with the genitive.

391. The **passive of λέγω** *say* is followed by the infinitive in indirect discourse (cp. § 110). This passive has both a *personal* and an *impersonal* use:

ἐλέγετο ἐλθεῖν he was said to have come (personal use);

ἐλέγετο αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν it was said that he came (impersonal use);

ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων and Syennesis, too, was said to be on the heights.

392. VOCABULARY XXXIX

ἀν-άγω (ἀνά + ἄγω): *lead up*; lead "up" from the coast.

ἄν-οδος, ου, ἡ (ἀνά + ὁδός): *road up, way up.*

τὸ Ἑλληνικόν (cp. **Ἑλληνικός**, Vocabulary XXVII): *the Greek force* (neut. subst.).

κατα-πέμπω (cp. **πέμπω**): *send down*, especially to the sea.

Λῡδίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ; *Lydia*, a district of Western Asia Minor, of which Sardis was the chief city.

νόμος, ου, ὁ: *custom, law.* **Deuteronomy** (**δεύτερος** *second*).

ὀκτώ, indecl.: *eight.* Cp. Lat. *octō*.

ὅπως, rel. adv.: *how, in what way* (cp. Vocabulary XXII).

πάνυ, adv. (cp. **πᾶς**): *wholly, altogether, very.*

πείθω, in mid. and pass.: *obey* (be persuaded or convinced by somebody), with dat. Cp. Vocabulary I.

πυνθάνομαι (theme **πυθ-**, pres. tense suffix **αν/ε**, cp. **λαμβάνω**, **τυγχάνω**, § 218), fut. **πεύσομαι** (for **πευθ-**, a longer form of the theme, + **σομαι**), 2 aor. **ἐπυθόμην**: *inquire, ask; learn, perceive.*

τῑμή, ῆς, ἡ: *honor.*

τοι-γαρ-οῦν: *therefore* (a strong particle of inference).

ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ: *servant, helper, supporter.*

ὑπό (also **ὑπ'** before smooth breathing, and **ὑφ'** before rough breathing, § 31), prep.: with GEN. *from under, by* (with pass. verb), ~~*because of*~~, *from*; with DAT. *under, beneath* (with verbs of rest); with ACC. *under* (with verbs of motion). **Hypodermic** (**δέρμα** *skin*), etc.

χρόνος, ου, ὁ: *time.* **Chrono-meter** (**μέτρον** *measure*), **chrono-logy** (**λόγος** *account*).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

393. Give the meaning of the following passive forms: *λείπεται, ἐλείποντο, τάττονται, λυθῆναι, λέγεται, λεγόμενος, ἤγετο, ἁρπάζεται, πεμπόμενος, κολάζονται, ἄρχεσθαι.*

394. I. 1. *ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ ἔσεσθε.* 2. *εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσ-ήχθη.* 3. *Κῦρος δ' οὔποτε ἐξ-ήχθη*[1] *διώκειν.*[2] 4. *πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατ-ελείφθησαν.* 5. *κατ-επέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης*[3] *Λυδίας.* 6. *τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρέται Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.* 7. *οὕτως οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν.* 8. *ταῦτα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη.* 9. *ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς ἦν εἰς*[4] *μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι.* 10. *ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας ὀκτώ.* 11. *ὁ δὲ Ξενίας ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα*[5] *πορευθείη.* 12. *πρὸς*[6] *ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι πολὺν χρόνον*[7] *δια-λεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπ-ήλθον.* 13. *οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀν-ήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα.* 14. *πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη*[8] *ἰδεῖν.*

---

[1] From **ἐξ-άγω** in sense of *induce.*
[2] Complementary infinitive.
[3] *as satrap,* in apposition to the subject, § 53. *j.*
[4] *for.*
[5] *most successfully.*
[6] *with reference to.*
[7] § 142.
[8] § 156. 1. *a.*

II. 1. Cyrus ordered the soldiers to be marshaled for[1] battle. 2. The general inquired in what way he should travel,[2] in order to reach home safely.[3] 3. The very[4] timbers had been plundered[5] from[6] the houses by the king's army.

XL

THE FIRST FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM. PRESENT GENERAL CONDITIONS. CONDITIONAL RELATIVE PROTASIS IN PRESENT TIME. GENITIVE ABSOLUTE. GENITIVE OF VALUE. DATIVE OF CAUSE

395. The first future passive indicative is formed from the verb theme as it appears in the first aorist passive, plus the first passive suffix $\theta\eta$ (§ 383), plus the future tense sign σ%, plus the passive personal endings, which are the same as the middle. The optative has its usual mood sign.

Observe that the first future passive is exactly like the future middle with the insertion of $\theta\eta$ before the future tense sign.

396. FIRST FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	λυ-θή-σο-μαι *I shall be loosed*		λυ-θη-σό-μεθα
2.	λυ-θή-ση or -σει	λυ-θή-σε-σθον	λυ-θή-σε-σθε
3.	λυ-θή-σε-ται	λυ-θή-σε-σθον	λυ-θή-σο-νται
Opt. 1.	λυ-θη-σοί-μην		λυ-θη-σοί-μεθα
2.	λυ-θή-σοι-ο	λυ-θή-σοι-σθον	λυ-θή-σοι-σθε
3.	λυ-θή-σοι-το	λυ-θη-σοί-σθην	λυ-θή-σοι-ντο
Inf.	λυ-θή-σε-σθαι		
Partic.	λυ-θη-σό-μενος, η, ον		

---

[1] εἰς. [2] Cp. I. 11. [3] Say *be saved homeward.*
[4] Say *the timbers themselves*, § 123. 1. [5] Use aor. pass. [6] ἀπό.

397. Like λυθήσομαι are inflected: πεμφθήσομαι (πέμπω), πεισθήσομαι (πείθω), λειφθήσομαι (λείπω), ἀχθήσομαι (ἄγω), ἁρπασθήσομαι (ἁρπάζω); ληφθήσομαι (λαμβάνω); πραχθήσομαι (πρᾶττω); σωθήσομαι (σῴζω).

For the euphonic changes in the mutes before the passive suffix θη compare the first aorist passive and § 387.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

398. The conditions studied thus far have been particular; that is, they have referred to definite and usually single acts. But when the *if* clause (protasis) refers to a repeated act, or to any one of a number of acts, the condition is called *general.*

Thus *if he says this, he speaks the truth* is a particular condition in present time, for in the protasis a single present act is indicated: εἰ ταῦτα λέγει, ἀληθῆ λέγει (cp. § 106). But *if ever he says anything* (or *whenever he says anything*), *he speaks the truth* is a general condition in present time, for the protasis and apodosis indicate a repeated act or any one of a number of acts.

While the Greek makes no distinction between particular and general conditions in future time, so far as form is concerned, it does make a most important distinction between such conditions in present time and in past time.

399. Present general conditions. — ἐάν (or ἤν or ἄν) introduces the subjunctive in the protasis of a present general condition; the apodosis has the present indicative or its equivalent to express continued or repeated action in present time. This form of condition differs from the more vivid future (§ 241) in the apodosis only.

ἐάν τι λέγῃ, ἀληθῆ λέγει if ever he says anything, he speaks the truth.

400. The conditional relative protasis in present time. — In place of ἐάν (or ἤν or ἄν) with the subjunctive the protasis of a present general condition is often introduced by a relative or temporal word plus ἄν, exactly like the protasis of a more vivid future condition (§ 248):

ὅταν τι λέγῃ, ἀληθῆ λέγει whenever he says anything, he speaks the truth;

ἅ τινα ἂν λέγῃ, ἀληθῆ λέγει whatever he says, he speaks the truth.

401. Genitive absolute. — A circumstantial participle (generally present or aorist) and its subject may stand together in the genitive case in a construction grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. This construction corresponds to the Latin *ablative absolute*.

ἐξ-ήλαυνον τῶν πολεμίων οὐ κωλῡόντων they marched forth without hindrance from the enemy (*lit.* the enemy not hindering).

a. The genitive absolute may express any of the relations (time, cause, etc.) of the circumstantial participle.

b. ὡς sometimes accompanies the participle in the genitive absolute. For its force compare § 213. *a*.

Κῦρος συν-έλεξε στράτευμα, ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσιν Cyrus collected an army on the ground that Tissaphernes was plotting against his cities (*cause*).

402. The **genitive** is used to denote **value** or price. This construction is regular with ἄξιος:

φίλος πολλοῦ ἄξιος a friend worth much (*i.e.* valuable).

403. The instrumental **dative** may denote **cause**:

ἀνάγκῃ λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια from necessity (on account of necessity) we take provisions.

404. VOCABULARY XL

ἄκων, ουσα, ον: *unwilling*. Declined like **λῦων** (cp. § 206. *a*). Used like a partic. in the gen. abs. const.

κίνδῡνος, ου, ὁ: *danger*. **κίνδῡνός ἐστι(ν)**: *there is danger*. Cp. **κινδῡνεύω**.

ὅπῃ, rel. adv.: *where, wherever; how, in what way*. Cp. **πῃ**, Vocabulary XVII.

στρατοπεδεύω (**στρατόπεδον**) and mid. dep. **στρατοπεδεύομαι**, aor. **ἐστρατοπεδευσάμην**: *encamp*.

φιλίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**φίλος**): *friendship*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

405. I. 1. οὗτος συλ-ληφθήσεται, εἰ παίσει[1] τὸν στρατιώτην. 2. καὶ ἐνόμισαν συλ-ληφθήσεσθαι. 3. οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν[2] ὅστις[3] ἀνθρώπων σωθήσεται. 4. παρ-ἦν δὲ ὁ σατράπης βουλόμενος μαθεῖν τί πρᾱχθήσεται. 5. ἀγαθοὶ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ πράττοντες[4] ὅ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. 6. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος φίλος ἐστὶν ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾖ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾖ. 7. ὅποι δ' ἂν ἐλθόντες ἀγορὰν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἀνάγκη λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 8. οὐ κολασθήσεται ὑπὸ Κύρου διὰ φιλίᾱν. 9. τοῦτο τὸ πεδίον κάλλιστον τρέχειν,[5] ὅπου ἄν τις βούληται. 10. νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξ-εστιν πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ ἂν ἕλησθε. 11. οὐκ ἂν βουλοίμην ἀπ-ελθεῖν Κύρου ἄκοντος. 12. εἰς Πῑσίδᾱς Κῦρος ἐβούλετο στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα[6] παρ-εχόντων τῶν Πῑσιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. 13. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιὼν πολλή. 14. κίνδῡνος οὖν ἐστιν, ἢν πορεύησθε ἐπὶ[7] τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

---

[1] § 242. [2] § 102. [3] *there is not who* = *nobody*.
[4] § 212. [5] *for running*, § 333.
[6] **πράγματα πᾰρ-έχω**: *cause trouble*. [7] *after*.

II. 1. They thought they should be abandoned by the other soldiers. 2. They will be led up to the king. 3. If even the barbarians do not provide a market, we take provisions ourselves, from necessity. 4. Wherever the Greeks go, they plunder the land.

XLI

THE SECOND AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM. DATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

406. Some verbs have aorists and futures in the passive voice formed without the letter θ of the first passive suffix (§ 383). Otherwise they are like the first aorist and the first future passive, and do not usually differ in meaning. Mute themes naturally suffer no euphonic change before the suffix, which is η (or ϵ). λύω has no second aorist or second future passive.

THE SECOND AORIST PASSIVE

407. The second aorist passive adds the second passive sign η to the theme in the indicative, imperative,[1] and infinitive; and the second passive sign ϵ to the theme in other moods. The inflection is like the first aorist.

408. SECOND AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM OF βλάπτω (THEME βλαβ-) *hurt*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	ἐ-βλάβ-η-ν *I was hurt*		ἐ-βλάβ-η-μεν
2.	ἐ-βλάβ-η-s	ἐ-βλάβ-η-τον	ἐ-βλάβ-η-τε
3.	ἐ-βλάβ-η	ἐ-βλαβ-ή-την	ἐ-βλάβ-η-σαν

[1] Except the 3 pl. imv., which has ε.

	SING.		DUAL	PLUR.
Subjv. 1.	βλαβ-ῶ [for βλαβ-έ-ω]			βλαβ-ῶ-μεν
2.	βλαβ-ῇς	etc.	βλαβ-ῆ-τον	βλαβ-ῆ-τε
3.	βλαβ-ῇ		βλαβ-ῆ-τον	βλαβ-ῶ-σι(ν)
Opt. 1.	βλαβ-είη-ν			βλαβ-εῖ-μεν
2.	βλαβ-είη-ς		βλαβ-εῖ-τον	βλαβ-εῖ-τε
3.	βλαβ-είη		βλαβ-εί-την	βλαβ-εῖε-ν
		Less common 1.		βλαβ-είη-μεν
		Less common 2.	βλαβ-είη-τον	βλαβ-είη-τε
		Less common 3.	βλαβ-ειή-την	βλαβ-είη-σαν
Imv. 2.	βλάβ-η-θι		βλάβ-η-τον	βλάβ-η-τε
3.	βλαβ-ή-τω		βλαβ-ή-των	βλαβ-έ-ντων
Inf.	βλαβ-ῆ-ναι			
Partic.	βλαβ-είς, εῖσα, έν[1]			

409. Similarly are inflected:

συν-ε-λέγ-η-ν (*συλ-λέγω collect*) *ἐ-κόπ-η-ν* (*κόπτω cut*[3])
ἐ-τράπ-η-ν[2] (*τρέπω turn*) *ἐ-γράφ-η-ν* (*γράφω write*)
ἐ-τράφ-η-ν (*τρέφω nourish*) *ἐ-στράφ-η-ν*[2] (*στρέφω turn*)

410. The instrumental dative (§ 141) is used to denote the **degree of difference** (corresponding to the Latin ablative):

πέντε ἡμέραις πρότερον earlier by five days, five days before;
πολλῷ ὕστερον much later (*lit.* later by much).

a. But **πολύ** (adv. acc., § 284) is more common than the dative **πολλῷ** in this sense.

---

[1] For the declension cp. **λυθείς**, § 388.

[2] Used commonly in intr. or mid. sense: *turned.*

[3] **κόπτω** *cut* is formed by adding **τ**/κ to the theme **κοπ-** in the pres. system. The **τ** does not appear outside of the pres. system. The fut. is **κόψω**, aor. **ἔκοψα**, 2 aor. pass. **ἐκόπην**.

411. VOCABULARY XLI

ἀνα-στρέφω: *turn back, turn about* (intr.); PASS. in mid. sense, *turn about, face about, rally.*

ἀπο-κόπτω: *cut off.* See § 409.

βλάπτω (theme **βλαβ-**),[1] fut. **βλάψω**, aor. **ἔβλαψα**, 1 aor. pass. **ἐβλάφθην**, 2 aor. pass. **ἐβλάβην**: *hurt, harm.*

δια-κόπτω: *cut through, cut in pieces, break through.* See § 409.

ἐκ-πλήττω (**πλήττω** *strike*, theme **πληγ-** or **πλαγ-**, **πλήξω**, **ἔπληξα**, 2 aor. pass. **ἐπλήγην**), with 2 aor. pass. **ἐξ-επλάγην**: *strike out* of one's wits, *terrify utterly, bewilder.*

ἔνδον, adv.: *within.* **οἱ ἔνδον**: *those within.*

ἔξω, adv.: *without, outside*, sometimes with gen. **οἱ ἔξω**: *those without.*

ἔφ-οδος, ου, ἡ (**ἐπί** + **ὁδός**): *way to, approach.*

κατα-κόπτω: *cut down.* See § 409.

Κίλιξ, ικος, ὁ: *Cilician*, a native of Cilicia.

στρέφω (themes **στρεφ-**, **στραφ-**), **στρέψω**, **ἔστρεψα**, 2 aor. pass. (intr.) **ἐστράφην**: *turn; wheel about.* Cp. **τρέπω**.

τρέφω (themes **τρεφ-**, **τραφ-**, for **θρεφ-**, etc.), fut. **θρέψω**, aor. **ἔθρεψα**, 2 aor. pass. **ἐτράφην**: *feed, support, rear.*

ὥσπερ, rel. adv.. *just as, as, as if, like.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

412. I. 1. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλ-λεγέντες ἐβουλεύοντο. 2. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐτράπησαν εἰς φυγήν. 3. οὐκ ἂν σωθεῖμεν, εἰ δια-κοπείη ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ. 4. ἐβλάβητε ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων. 5. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρ-εσκευάζοντο ὡς δεξόμενοι βασιλέᾱ. 6. οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον οἵ τ' ἔνδον συν-ελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατ-εκόπησαν. 7. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης λόφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀν-εστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ. 8. ἐξ-επλάγη δὲ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ[2] τοῦ στρατεύματος. 9. καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπ-εκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου. 10. ἐν ταύταις ταῖς πόλεσιν ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε. 11. ἀλλ' ἐτρά-

[1] Cp. **κόπτω** (theme **κοπ-**) for the formation of the pres. stem. [2] § 403.

φησαν τοῖς προβάτοις[1] ἃ ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων ἔλαβον. 12. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὗτοι ἔφυγον, ἐτράπησαν δὴ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. 13. ἔφασαν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἁρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων. 14. ἔστι δ' ὅστις[2] κατελήφθη ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ὥσπερ ὑπὸ τῶν ἱππέων ἐκ-πλαγείς.

II. 1. The Greeks rallied, and received[3] (the attack of)[4] the enemy. 2. We admire the cities in which the Greeks were born and reared. 3. The Cilician woman came to these cities five days before[5] Cyrus.[6]

XLII

THE SECOND FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM. PAST GENERAL CONDITIONS. CONDITIONAL RELATIVE PROTASIS IN PAST TIME. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE IN PROTASIS OF PAST GENERAL RELATIVE CONDITION

413. Verbs that have a second aorist passive, like *ἐβλάβην*, *ἐκόπην*, *συν-ελέγην*, and *ἐγράφην*, usually form a second future passive by adding the future suffix *σ%* and the (primary) personal endings of the middle voice to the second passive stem, which consists of the theme plus *η*. The inflection is like that of the first future passive, and the meanings are identical.

---

[1] Dat. of means, § 141.

[2] *there is who = somebody.*

[3] The aor. of **δέχομαι** is **ἐδεξάμην.**

[4] Omit.

[5] Use the feminine **προτέρᾱ** in agreement with the subject.

[6] § 355.

414. SECOND FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM OF βλάπτω (THEME βλαβ-) *hurt*

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	βλαβ-ή-σο-μαι *I shall be hurt*		βλαβ-η-σό-μεθα
2.	βλαβ-ή-σῃ or -σει	βλαβ-ή-σε-σθον	βλαβ-ή-σε-σθε
3.	βλαβ-ή-σε-ται	βλαβ-ή-σε-σθον	βλαβ-ή-σο-νται
Opt. 1.	βλαβ-η-σοί-μην		βλαβ-η-σοί-μεθα
2.	βλαβ-ή-σοι-ο	βλαβ-ή-σοι-σθον	βλαβ-ή-σοι-σθε
3.	βλαβ-ή-σοι-το	βλαβ-η-σοί-σθην	βλαβ-ή-σοι-ντο
Inf.	βλαβ-ή-σε-σθαι		
Partic.	βλαβ-η-σό-μενος, η, ον		

415. Similarly are inflected:

γραφ-ή-σο-μαι, 2 fut. pass. of *γράφω write.*
συλ-λεγ-ή-σο-μαι, 2 fut. pass. of *συλ-λέγω collect.*

416. Past general conditions. — *εἰ* introduces the optative in the protasis of a past general condition; the apodosis has the imperfect indicative (or an equivalent) to express repeated action in past time.

This form of condition differs from the less vivid future (§ 267) in the apodosis only:

εἴ τι λέγοι, ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν if he [ever] said anything, he [always] spoke the truth.

417. The conditional relative protasis in past time. — In place of *εἰ* with the optative, the protasis of a past general condition is often introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb (cp. § 400):

ὁπότε τι λέγοι, ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν whenever he said anything, he spoke the truth;
ἅ τινα λέγοι, ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν whatever he said [at any time], he spoke the truth.

418. Not uncommonly the **imperfect indicative** introduced by a *relative* is used for the optative in the protasis of a past general condition. The following sentence shows both uses combined:

ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα (where βουλοίμεθα might also be used), ἣν μὲν χώρᾱν ἐθέλοιμεν δι-αρπάζοντες, ἣν δ' ἐθέλοιμεν κᾰ́οντες we proceeded through this country whithersoever we would, sacking whatever land we wished, and burning whatever we wished.

a. The negative of the protasis, as always, is μή.

419. VOCABULARY XLII

ἀεί, adv.. *always, continually, in succession.*

ἀπο-λείπω (cp. **λείπω**): *leave behind, desert, abandon.*

γυμνάζω (theme **γυμναδ-**), **γυμνάσω**, etc. (like **ἁρπάζω**): *exercise.* Cp. **γυμνής**. Gymnastic.

δεινός, ή, όν: *fearful, terrible, frightful; skillful.* **τὸ δεινόν** (subst.): *danger.*

ἕπομαι (for **σέπομαι**), **ἕψομαι**, 2 aor. **ἐσπόμην**, impf. with irreg. aug. **εἱπόμην** (cp. **εἶχον**): *follow*, with dat. of association (§ 317). Cp. Lat. *sequor.*

θηρεύω, θηρεύσω, etc.: *hunt; catch* (by hunting). Cp. **θηρίον**.

θηρίον, ου, τό: *wild beast.*

κατ-άγω (cp. **ἄγω**), *lead down; bring* a ship (especially a captured one) *into harbor; restore* exiles.

ὁπόσος, η, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: *as many as; how great*, (pl.) *how many.* Cp. **ὅσος**.

ὁπότε, rel. adv.: *when, whenever, as often as; since.* Cp. **ὅτε**.

παρ-έρχομαι (cp. **ἔρχομαι**), 2 aor. **παρ-ῆλθον**: *go by, go past.*

πολλάκις, adv. (**πολύς**): *often.*

σπεύδω (theme **σπευδ-**), **σπεύσω**, **ἔσπευσα**: *urge on, hasten.*

τέκνον, ου, τό: *child.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

420. I. 1. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται πάντες συλ-λεγήσονται. 2. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἐπιστολῇ γραφήσεται τάδε. 3. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς τῷ ἄρχοντι τῆς κώμης ταύτης ἔλεξεν ὅτι

οὐ βλαβήσοιτο. 4. καὶ εἰ δέοι γέφῡραν δια-βαίνειν, ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος, βουλόμενος δια-βαίνειν πρῶτος. 5. Κῦρος δὲ ἐθήρευε θηρία ἀφ' ἵππου,[1] ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. 6. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπεν οἶνον πρὸς τοὺς φίλους πολλάκις, ὁπότε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι. 7. σταθμοὺς δὲ πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο ἐλθεῖν ἢ πρὸς χῑλόν. 8. ἐλάμβανε δὲ ὅ τι βούλοιτο. 9. ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν φίλων ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἀεὶ αὐτὸν ἐλάμβανεν. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρ-έλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, οἱ βάρβαροι εἵποντο αὐτοῖς. 11. τοιγαροῦν πολλοὶ ἤθελον κινδῡνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἴοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. 12. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐλάμβανον, ὅπου τις αὐτοῖς ἐπι-τυγχάνοι. 13. ὁπόσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα, κατ-ῆγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 14. ἀπ-έλειπον τὸν στρατηγὸν πάντες ὅσοι συν-επορεύοντο, ὅτε[2] ἔξω[3] τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιντο.

II. 1. He will be hurt, if he goes[4] into this danger. 2. Whenever they had to cross a river, all hastened. 3. Cyrus used to hunt wild animals on horseback whenever he went to the mountains.

---

[1] *from horseback* = *on horseback*, the attention being directed away *from* the horse while a man is hunting.

[2] *whenever.* [3] *out of.*

[4] Use the proper form of **πορεύομαι.**

XLIII

NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS. ARTICLE WITH "ROUND" NUMBERS. EMPHATIC NEGATIONS

421. Commit to memory the numerals from 1 to 21 (inclusive); the others are to be memorized as they are needed. Some, as *ἑκατόν* and *χίλιοι*, have already occurred in the special vocabularies.

1	εἷς, μία, ἕν	19	ἐννεακαίδεκα
2	δύο	20	εἴκοσι(ν)
3	τρεῖς, τρία	21	εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι(ν) or εἴκοσι (καὶ) εἷς
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	30	τριᾶκοντα
5	πέντε	40	τετταράκοντα
6	ἕξ	50	πεντήκοντα
7	ἑπτά	60	ἑξήκοντα
8	ὀκτώ	70	ἑβδομήκοντα
9	ἐννέα	80	ὀγδοήκοντα
10	δέκα	90	ἐνενήκοντα
11	ἕνδεκα	100	ἑκατόν
12	δώδεκα	200	διᾱκόσιοι, αι, α
13	τρεῖς (τρία) καὶ δέκα or τρισκαίδεκα	300	τριᾱκόσιοι, αι, α
14	τέτταρες καὶ δέκα or τετταρεσκαίδεκα	400	τετρακόσιοι, αι, α
15	πεντεκαίδεκα	500	πεντακόσιοι, αι, α
16	ἑκκαίδεκα	600	ἑξακόσιοι, αι, α
17	ἑπτακαίδεκα	700	ἑπτακόσιοι, αι, α
18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα	800	ὀκτακόσιοι, αι, α
		900	ἐνακόσιοι, αι, α

1,000 χίλιοι, αι, α
2,000 δισχίλιοι, αι, α (δίς *twice*)
3,000 τρισχίλιοι, αι, α (τρίς *three times*)
4,000 τετρακισχίλιοι, αι, α (τετράκις *four times*)
5,000 πεντακισχίλιοι, αι, α (πεντάκις *five times*)
6,000 ἑξακισχίλιοι, αι, α (ἑξάκις *six times*)
7,000 ἑπτακισχίλιοι, αι, α (ἑπτάκις *seven times*)

8,000	ὀκτακισχίλιοι, αι, α (ὀκτάκις *eight times*)
9,000	ἐνακισχίλιοι, αι, α (ἐνάκις *nine times*)
10,000	μύριοι, αι, α, or μῦριάς (gen. άδος) myriad
20,000	δισμῦριοι, αι, α, or δύο μῦριάδες (gen. -ων)
30,000	τρισμῦριοι, αι, α, or τρεῖς μῦριάδες
etc.	

422. DECLENSION OF εἷς *one*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	εἷς	μία	ἕν
G.	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός
D.	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί
A.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν

423. δύο *two* sometimes is declined:

N. A. δύο G. D. δυοῖν

a. Often it is used as indeclinable.

424. DECLENSION OF τρεῖς *three*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
N.	τρεῖς	τρία
G.	τριῶν	
D.	τρισί(ν)	
A.	τρεῖς	τρία

425. DECLENSION OF τέτταρες *four*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
N.	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
G.	τεττάρων	
D.	τέτταρσι(ν)	
A.	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

426. DECLENSION OF οὐδείς *nobody*

		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.
Sing.	N.	οὐδείς	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν *nothing*	Plur. N.	οὐδένες
	G.	οὐδενός	οὐδεμιᾶς	οὐδενός	G.	οὐδένων
	D.	οὐδενί	οὐδεμιᾷ	οὐδενί	D.	οὐδέσι(ν)
	A.	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν	A.	οὐδένας

a. μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, *nobody, nothing*, is similarly declined. μηδείς is used wherever μή is the appropriate negative.

427. The **article** often accompanies "round" numbers. It is not to be translated:

ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν about one hundred.

428. Emphatic negations. — If a simple or a compound negative is followed by one or several *compound* negatives in the same clause, the negation is made more emphatic. The negatives must be of the same sort (*i.e.* all οὐ and its compounds, or all μή and its compounds):

οὐδ' ἄλλος ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν nor did anybody else suffer any injury.

429. VOCABULARY XLIII

Numerals are not repeated (from § 421) in this Vocabulary and the following Vocabularies.

δῶρον, ου, τό: *gift.* Cp. Lat. *dōnum.*

μη-δέ: *and not, nor, not even.* Used like μή. Cp. οὐδέ.

μηδ-είς, μηδε-μία, μηδ-έν: *nobody, no one, no, nothing.*

μή-τε . . . μή-τε: *neither . . . nor.* Used like μή. Cp. οὔτε . . . οὔτε

οὐδ-είς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν (οὐδέ + εἷς): *nobody, no one, no, nothing.*

Πᾱσίων, ωνος, ὁ: *Pasion.*

Σοφαίνετος, ου, ὁ: *Sophaenetus.*

σύμ-πᾶς, πᾶσα, παν (σύν + πᾶς): *all together, all, whole.* Cp. ἅ-πᾶς.

συν-έρχομαι (cp. ἔρχομαι), 2 aor. συν-ῆλθον: *go* or *come together, assemble.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

430. 1. 1. καὶ ἤγαγον αὐτοὺς ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν. 2. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀν-έβαινεν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος. 3. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε παρ-έσχε[1] Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. 4. καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς χῑλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότᾱς διᾱκοσίους. 5. καὶ ἐγένοντο[2] οἱ σύμπαντες[3] ὁπλῖται[4] μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι,

[1] From παρ-έχω. [2] *amounted to.* [3] Subj. [4] Pred. nom.

πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχῑλίους. 6. καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συν-ελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχᾱγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. 7. καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ Κλέαρχον παθεῖν ἔφασαν. 8. μηδὲ σὺ δια-λέγου[1] μηδενί, μήτε στρατηγῷ μήτε ἄλλῳ ἄρχοντι. 9. παρ' οὐδενὸς οὔτε δῶρα οὔτε μισθὸν δέχομαι. 10. Ξενίᾱς μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρ-εγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις, ὁπλίτᾱς εἰς τετρακισχῑλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρ-ἦν ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χῑλίους, γυμνῆτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁπλίτᾱς ἔχων χῑλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁπλίτᾱς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πᾱσίων δὲ τριᾱκασίους μὲν ὁπλίτᾱς, τριᾱκοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρ-εγένετο.

II. 1. The general arrived with three hundred hoplites and a thousand bowmen. 2. There were two thousand and five hundred peltasts, and about ten thousand light-armed troops of the barbarians. 3. Then the Greeks came to the Harpasus[2] river, which was[3] four plethra wide.[4]

---

[1] § 309. [2] "Αρπασος, ου, ὁ. [3] Say *being*. [4] § 279.

XLIV

THE FIRST PERFECT AND FIRST PLUPERFECT IN THE ACTIVE VOICE. REDUPLICATION. DECLENSION OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE. OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF *FEARING*. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE AFTER VERBS OF *BEGINNING*, ETC.; AFTER VERBS OF *PERCEPTION*. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

431. The perfect active tense stem consists of the reduplicated theme, to which is added the perfect active tense suffix.

The first perfect active tense suffix is *κα* in the perfect indicative (which becomes *κε* in the third person singular). Its forms in the pluperfect indicative (*κε*) and elsewhere may best be learned by inspection of the paradigms.

432. **Reduplication** is a sign of all perfect tenses (including the pluperfect and future perfect) throughout the moods.

a. Verbs that begin with a single consonant reduplicate the theme by prefixing its initial consonant followed by *ε*.

λέ-λυ-κα, perfect active of *λύω*; *βέ-βη-κα*, perfect of *βαίνω* (theme *βα-* or *βη-*).

b. Verbs that begin with a rough mute prefix the smooth mute of the same class (§§ 27, 28) in reduplicating the theme:

τέ-θυ-κα, perfect of *θύω*; *τέ-θνη-κα*, perfect of *θνῄσκω* (cp. § 137).

c. Verbs that begin with two or more consonants or a double consonant (§ 6) or the letter *ῥ* have *syllabic*

augment (§ 77. 1) throughout the perfect in place of reduplication:

ἐ-στράτευ-κα, perfect of στρατεύω.

d. But verbs that begin with a mute and a liquid (§ 27) generally reduplicate in the regular way:

τέ-θνη-κα, perfect of θνήσκω.

e. Verbs that begin with a vowel (or diphthong) have the *temporal* augment (§ 77. 2) throughout the perfect in place of reduplication:

ἤρπα-κα, perfect of ἁρπάζω (theme ἁρπαδ-).

f. A lingual mute (τ δ θ) at the end of the theme is dropped before the perfect suffix κα:

ἤρπα-κα for ἡρπαδ-κα; πέπει-κα for πεπειθ-κα (from πείθω).

g. The accent can never recede back of the reduplication or augment (cp. § 131). Compound verbs are reduplicated, as they are augmented, after the prefix (§ 130):

δια-βέβηκα, perfect of δια-βαίνω.

433. The pluperfect, like the imperfect (§ 234), belongs only to the indicative mood. It has syllabic augment, too, in addition to reduplication, if the theme begins with a consonant:

ἐ-λε-λύ-κη, pluperfect active of λύω.

434. PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF λύω

	SING.	
Pf. Indic.	1.	λέ-λυ-κα *I have loosed*
	2.	λέ-λυ-κα-ς *you have loosed*
	3.	λέ-λυ-κε(ν) *he has loosed*
	DUAL	
	2.	λε-λύ-κα-τον
	3.	λε-λύ-κα-τον

PLUR.

1. λε-λύ-κα-μεν *we have loosed*
2. λε-λύ-κα-τε *you have loosed*
3. λε-λύ-κᾱ-σι(ν) [1] *they have loosed*

Inf. λε-λυ-κέ-ναι [2] *to have loosed*

Partic. λε-λυ-κώς,[3] -κυῖα, -κός, *having loosed*

SING.

Plup. Indic. 1. ἐ-λε-λύ-κη *I had loosed*
2. ἐ-λε-λύ-κη-ς *you had loosed*
3. ἐ-λε-λύ-κει(ν) *he had loosed*

DUAL

2. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-τον
3. ἐ-λε-λυ-κέ-την

PLUR.

1. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-μεν *we had loosed*
2. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-τε *you had loosed*
3. ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-σαν *they had loosed*

435. DECLENSION OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	λελυκώς *having loosed*	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
G.	λελυκότος	λελυκυίᾱς	λελυκότος
D.	λελυκότι	λελυκυίᾳ	λελυκότι
A.	λελυκότα	λελυκυῖαν	λελυκός
Dual N. A. V.	λελυκότε	λελυκυίᾱ	λελυκότε
G. D.	λελυκότοιν	λελυκυίαιν	λελυκότοιν
Plur. N. V.	λελυκότες	λελυκυῖαι	λελυκότα
G.	λελυκότων	λελυκυιῶν	λελυκότων
D.	λελυκόσι(ν)	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι(ν)
A.	λελυκότας	λελυκυίᾱς	λελυκότα

a. Having loosed, having heard, etc., are more frequently expressed in Greek by the aorist than by the perfect participle.

[1] For λε-λυ-κα-νσι(ν). [2] For accent see § 385, footnote 2.

[3] All perfect active participles, like second aorist active participles, are accented on the ultima.

436. Periphrastic forms of the perfect subjunctive and optative, made up of the perfect active participle and the proper forms of *εἰμί* (subjunctive, § 247; optative, § 265), are more common than the simple forms, which are purposely omitted from this lesson.

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Subjv. 1.	λελυκὼς ὦ		λελυκότες ὦμεν
2.	λελυκὼς ᾖς	λελυκότε ἦτον	λελυκότες ἦτε
3.	λελυκὼς ᾖ	λελυκότε ἦτον	λελυκότες ὦσι(ν)
Pf. Opt. 1.	λελυκὼς εἴην		λελυκότες εἴημεν
2.	λελυκὼς εἴης	λελυκότε εἴητον	λελυκότες εἴητε
3.	λελυκὼς εἴη	λελυκότε εἰήτην	λελυκότες εἴησαν

a. The shorter forms *εἶτον*, *εἶμεν*, etc., also occur.

437. The perfect imperative active almost never occurs.

438. Object clauses after verbs of fearing. — After a verb of fearing in a primary tense (§ 39) *μή lest* introduces the subjunctive (present or aorist) to express the object of fear (provided this is future). *Lest not* is expressed by *μὴ οὐ*:

δέδοικα μὴ κακῶς πράξωσιν I fear lest they do (= fare) ill;

δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω (pres. subjv.) *ἱκανοὺς φίλους* I fear lest I shall not have enough friends.

a. After a secondary tense *μή lest* may introduce the optative (or subjunctive, cp. § 268):

ἐδεδοίκη μὴ κακῶς πράξειαν (or *πράξωσιν*) I feared lest they should fare ill.

439. The **supplementary participle** (§ 215) is used in agreement with the subject of verbs meaning *begin*, *continue*, *cease*, *be pleased*, etc.:

ἥδομαι, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου δικαίους λόγους I am pleased, Clearchus, to hear just words from you.

440. The **supplementary participle** is used in agreement with the object of verbs of *perception* (of the mind or senses):

εἶδε Κλέαρχον ἐλαύνοντα he saw Clearchus riding.

441. Supplementary participle in indirect discourse. — In the use of § 440 the participle often represents a finite verb of the main clause of a quotation; and if so, the participle is said to be in the construction of indirect discourse. The tenses of the participle in indirect discourse are used in exactly the same way as the tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§§ 110. *a*, *b*; 156. 1; 277). That is, the present participle represents the present tense (and imperfect tense) of the finite verb; the perfect, aorist, and future participles represent respectively the perfect, aorist, and future tenses of the finite verb. If ἄν accompanied the finite verb (*e.g.* in the potential optative), it is retained with the equivalent participle in indirect discourse:

πυνθάνεται (or αἰσθάνεται) Κῦρον προσ-ελαύνοντα he learns (*or* he perceives) that Cyrus is drawing near;

Direct form: Κῦρος προσ-ελαύνει Cyrus is drawing near.

εἶδον ῥᾳδίως[1] ἂν τὸ τεῖχος ληφθέν they saw that the wall might be easily taken;

Direct form: ῥᾳδίως ἂν τὸ τεῖχος ληφθείη the wall may be easily taken.

For an example of the perfect participle, see § 442. *a*.

442. Verbs of *perception* commonly admit the construction with ὅτι as well:

πυνθάνεται (or αἰσθάνεται) ὅτι Κῦρος προσ-ελαύνει he learns (*or* he perceives) that Cyrus is drawing near.

---

[1] Adv. of **ῥᾴδιος**, § 360. 8.

a. ἀκούω *hear* allows either a ὅτι clause (§ 262) or the infinitive (§ 262. *a*) or the participle in indirect discourse:
ἤκουσαν Κῦρον τεθνηκότα they heard that Cyrus was dead;
Direct form: Κῦρος τέθνηκεν Cyrus is dead.

Examples of the other constructions have already occurred (§§ 203. I. 10; 264. I. 6).

443. VOCABULARY XLIV

δέδοικα, pf. with pres. meaning (from δείδω): *fear;* 1 aor. ἔδεισα. Cp. δεινός.

ἔνθα, rel. adv.: *where;* dem.: *there;* of time, ἔνθα δή: *then indeed.*

εὑρίσκω, fut. εὑρήσω, 2 aor. ηὗρον, pf. act. ηὕρηκα, pf. mid. to be learned later, aor. pass. ηὑρέθην: *find.* Eureka.

ἥδομαι (theme ἡδ-): *be pleased;* ἡσθήσομαι: *shall be pleased;* ἥσθην: *was pleased; with* something (dat. § 403). See § 439. Cp. ἡδύς.

καιρός, οῦ, ὁ: *the right measure, right time, right place; proper time; opportunity, crisis.*

κράτος, ους, τό: *strength, might.* ἀνὰ κράτος: *to the limit of strength, at full speed.*

λανθάνω (themes λαθ-, ληθ-, cp. λαμβάνω, τυγχάνω, § 218), fut. λήσω, 2 aor. ἔλαθον (other parts to be learned later): *lie hid, escape notice of;* with supplementary partic., in construction like τυγχάνω (§ 215): thus ἔλαθεν ἐλθών *he went secretly,* lit. *he escaped notice going.*

μή, conj.: *lest,* after verbs of *fearing.* μὴ οὐ: *lest not.* See § 438.

Μιθραδάτης, ου, ὁ: *Mithradātes.*

τέθνηκα, pf. of θνῄσκω: *be dead, be slain.* Cp. ἀπο-θνῄσκω (§ 137). The simple verb is common in the perfect.

ὑπερβολή, ῆς, ἡ: *passing over, pass.* Hyperbole.

χαράδρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *ravine.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

444. I. 1. καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους λελύκᾶσιν.[1] 2. πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἡρπάκαμεν. 3. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο αὐτοὺς διαβεβηκότας, ἥσθη. 4. Κῦρος δὲ ἥσθη τὸν ἐκ[2] τῶν

[1] Cp. § 121. I. 7.

[2] *inspired by.*

Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών. 5. ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ οὐχ εὕρωμεν τὴν οἰκαδε ὁδόν. 6. καὶ ἐδεδοίκη μὴ οὐχ ἥδοιτο τῷ ἵππῳ.[1] 7. Ἀβροκόμᾱς ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα. 8. νῦν οὖν καιρός ἐστιν φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν, ἵνα μὴ κολασθῶμεν. 9. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος τέθνηκεν. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες δια-βεβηκότες ἀπ-εἶχον τῆς χαράδρᾱς ὅσον[2] ὀκτὼ σταδίους, ἔνθα δὴ δι-έβαινε καὶ[3] ὁ Μιθραδάτης. 11. τοῦτο τὸ στράτευμα ἐλάνθανε τρεφόμενον αὐτῷ.[4] 12. δείσαντες μὴ ἀπο-ληφθείησαν ἔφευγον ἀνὰ κράτος. 13. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος. 14. ὁ δὲ Ξενίᾱς πέπεικε τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον λέγειν ὧδε.

II. 1. We were glad to see the army of Cyrus. 2. We heard that the soldiers had crossed[5] the ravine. 3. A man came riding at full speed and said that Cyrus was dead. 4. Our soldiers captured the height unobserved.[6] 5. He fears that[7] the enemy will come secretly[8] in the night.

---

[1] § 403.
[2] Adv. acc., *as far as, about.*
[3] *also.*
[4] § 53. *d.*
[5] Use all possible constructions.
[6] Say *escaped notice taking*, etc.
[7] *lest.*
[8] Say *escape notice coming.*

XLV

THE SECOND PERFECT AND THE SECOND PLUPERFECT ACTIVE. ATTIC REDUPLICATION. REDUPLICATION WITH *εἰ-*. SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE WITH *δῆλός ἐστιν*, ETC.

445. There is a second form of the perfect and pluperfect active made with the suffix *α* (also *ε*) instead of *κα* (*κε*). It is like the first perfect except for the want of the letter *κ*. This **second perfect** belongs only to certain verbs: some with themes ending in a mute and some with themes ending in a liquid. The theme itself often undergoes modification of its vowel sound; and a smooth mute (*π*, *κ*) or middle mute (*β*, *γ*, cp. § 28) before the suffix *α* (or *ε*) is usually (but not always) changed to the corresponding rough.

πέ-πομφ-α (*πέμπ-ω*) I have sent;
πέ-ποιθ-α (*πείθ-ω*) I trust;
πέ-πονθ-α (*πάσχω*, themes *παθ-*, *πενθ-*) I have suffered;
πέ-φευγ-α (*φεύγ-ω*) I have fled;
λέ-λοιπ-α (*λείπ-ω*) I have left;
ἦχ-α (*ἄγ-ω*) I have led;
γέ-γον-α (*γίγνομαι*, theme *γεν-*) I have been born, become, I am;
γέ-γραφ-α (*γράφ-ω*) I have written.

a. Some verbs like *πείθω* have both perfects, but with different meanings:

πέ-πει-κα means I have persuaded (*πέποιθα, second perfect,* I trust).

446. SECOND PERFECT SYSTEM OF λείπω

		SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic.	1.	λέ-λοιπ-α *I have left*		λε-λοίπ-α-μεν *we have left*
	2.	λέ-λοιπ-α-ς *you have left*	λε-λοίπ-α-τον	λε-λοίπ-α-τε *you have left*
	3.	λέ-λοιπ-ε *he has left*	λε-λοίπ-α-τον	λε-λοίπ-ᾱσι(ν) *they have left*
Subjv.	1.	λε-λοιπ-ὼς ὦ (cp. § 436), etc.		
Opt.	1.	λε-λοιπ-ὼς εἴην (cp. § 436), etc.		
Imv.		Almost never occurs in the perfect active (§ 437)		
Inf.		λε-λοιπ-έ-ναι *to have left*		
Partic.		λε-λοιπ-ώς, -υῖα, -ός, *having left* (Cp. § 435)		
Plup. Indic.	1.	ἐ-λε-λοίπ-η *I had left*		ἐ-λε-λοίπ-ε-μεν *we had left*
	2.	ἐ-λε-λοίπ-η-ς *you had left*	ἐ-λε-λοίπ-ε-τον	ἐ-λε-λοίπ-ε-τε *you had left*
	3.	ἐ-λε-λοίπ-ει(ν) *he had left*	ἐ-λε-λοιπ-έ-την	ἐ-λε-λοίπ-ε-σαν *they had left*

447. Attic reduplication. — Some verbs beginning with a short vowel followed by a consonant prefix the first two letters and lengthen the initial vowel of the theme:

ἐλ-ήλυθ-α [2 pf. from theme ἐλυθ-, of which a shorter form is seen in ἦλθον (ἐλθ-)] I have come[1];

ἐλ-ήλα-κα [1 pf. from theme ἐλα- (ἐλαύνω)] I have driven *or* marched.

448. A few verbs have **εἰ-** prefixed to the theme for **reduplication**:

εἴ-ληφ-α (2 pf. of λαμβάνω, themes ληβ-, λαβ-) I have taken;
συν-εί-λοχ-α (2 pf. of συλ-λέγω, theme λεγ-) I have collected;
εἴ-ρη-κα (1 pf. from theme ῥη-) I have said.

[1] This verb supplies the 2 pf. of **ἔρχομαι**. But **ἥκω** (§ 137) is commonly used for the *simple* **ἐλήλυθα**.

449. The **supplementary participle** in indirect discourse is common in agreement with the subject of δῆλός ἐστι(ν) *he is evident* and similar expressions, such as:

φανερός ἐστι(ν)
and φανερὸς γέγονε(ν) } he is evident.

δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδόν Cyrus was clearly hastening (*lit.* was evident hastening) all the way.

a. The construction δῆλόν (ἐστιν) ὅτι *it is evident that* also occurs (§ 270. I. 2).

450. VOCABULARY XLV

ἄγγελος, ου, ὁ: *messenger*. Angel.

εἴρηκα, pf [1]: *I have said, I have mentioned.*

ἔνιοι, αι, α: *some.*

ἱερός, ά, όν: *sacred, holy.* Hierarchy (**ἄρχω**).

προ-έρχομαι (cp. **ἔρχομαι**), 2 aor. **προ-ῆλθον**, 2 pf. **προ-ελήλυθα** (§ 447): *go before, go forward, proceed.*

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο (declined like **οὗτος**, § 171), dem. pron.: *so much, so great, so many;* often followed by correlative word like **ὅσος** *as.* The neut. is also **τοσοῦτον** as well as **τοσοῦτο**. Cp. Lat. *tantus.*

φανερός, ά, όν: *visible, clear, evident.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

451. I. 1. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ κακὰ πεπόνθᾶσιν. 2. πεπόμφᾶσι δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πρέσβεις ἐπ' [2] ἄλλην στρατιάν. 3. ἀπο-λελοίπᾶσιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίᾶς καὶ Πᾶσίων. 4. νῦν δ' ἐπι-βουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας. 5. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Ἀριαῖος πεφευγὼς εἴη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων. 6. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὼς εἴη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα. 7. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ Τισσαφέρνης ἐνίους συν-ειλήφᾶσιν ἡμῶν. 8. ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι [3] ὄντες ὅσοι [4] νῦν συν-εληλύθατε μέγιστον

[1] Supplies the pf. act. of **λέγω** *say.*
[2] *to fetch, after.*
[3] *so many.*
[4] *as.*

ἔχετε καιρόν. 9. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προ-εληλυθότων αὐτῶν[1] ἦκε πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης. 10. καὶ κατ-ειληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ὁδόν. 11. καὶ τοῦτον τὸν λόφον παρ-ελήλυθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 12. συν-εληλυθότες δ' ἦσαν ἐνταῦθα καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πρόβατα πολλά. 13. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν ὁ λοχᾱγὸς πεφευγώς. 14. Μένων δὲ δῆλος ἦν ἐπι-βουλεύων τῷ φίλῳ. 15. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἔχων οὓς[2] εἴρηκα ἐξ-ἦλθεν ἐκ τοῦ ἱεροῦ χωρίου.

II. 1. It has become clear that Cyrus is[3] plotting against his brother. 2. You have evidently come together[4] in order to advise us. 3. They have seized our generals and captains.

XLVI

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE OF VOWEL THEMES. INFINITIVE WITH *μέμνημαι remember how*, ETC. DATIVE OF AGENT

452. The middle and passive voices have identical forms in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses as well as in the present and imperfect (cp. § 383).

453. The perfect middle (passive) tenses reduplicate the theme in the same way as the perfect active tenses, and have augment for reduplication under similar circumstances (§§ 432, 447, 448).

[1] § 401.

[2] Supply **τούτους** as antecedent.

[3] Say *Cyrus has become clear*.

[4] *you are evident having come together* (cp. I. 12).

454. In the perfect middle indicative (and pluperfect), imperative, infinitive, and participle, the endings are added directly to the theme without any connecting vowels. The perfect subjunctive and optative are periphrastic forms, made up of the perfect middle (passive) participle and the proper forms of *εἰμί* (cp. the perfect subjunctive and optative active, § 436). ●

a. There are no second perfect or second pluperfect tenses in the middle and passive voices.

455. PERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λῡ́ω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	λέ-λυ-μαι { *I have ransomed* (Pass. *I have been loosed*)		λε-λύ-μεθα
2.	λέ-λυ-σαι	λέ-λυ-σθον	λέ-λυ-σθε
3.	λέ-λυ-ται	λέ-λυ-σθον	λέ-λυ-νται
Imv. 2.	λέ-λυ-σο	λέ-λυ-σθον	λέ-λυ-σθε
3.	λε-λύ-σθω	λε-λύ-σθων	λε-λύ-σθων
Inf.	λε-λύ-σθαι [1]		
Partic.	λε-λυ-μένος,[2] η, ον		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἐ-λε-λύ-μην { *I had ransomed* (Pass. *I had been loosed*)		ἐ-λε-λύ-μεθα
2.	ἐ-λέ-λυ-σο	ἐ-λέ-λυ-σθον	ἐ-λέ-λυ-σθε
3.	ἐ-λέ-λυ-το	ἐ-λε-λύ-σθην	ἐ-λέ-λυ-ντο

PERIPHRASTIC FORMS

Pf. Subjv. 1.	λε-λυ-μένος ὦ		λε-λυ-μένοι ὦμεν
2.	λε-λυ-μένος ᾖς	λε-λυ-μένω ἦτον	λε-λυ-μένοι ἦτε
3.	λε-λυ-μένος ᾖ	λε-λυ-μένω ἦτον	λε-λυ-μένοι ὦσι(ν)
Opt. 1.	λε-λυ-μένος εἴην		λε-λυ-μένοι εἶημεν
2.	λε-λυ-μένος εἴης	λε-λυ-μένω εἴητον	λε-λυ-μένοι εἴητε
3.	λε-λυ-μένος εἴη	λε-λυ-μένω εἰήτην	λε-λυ-μένοι εἴησαν

a. The shorter forms *εἶτον*, *εἶμεν*, etc., also occur.

[1] The pf. mid. (pass.) inf. is always accented on the penult.

[2] The pf. mid. (pass.) partic. is always accented on the penult.

456. The perfect middle of *γίγνομαι* is *γε-γέν-η-μαι* (cp. the fut. *γεν-ή-σο-μαι* for the lengthened theme).

The perfect middle of *στρατοπεδεύω* is *ἐ-στρατοπέδευ-μαι* (§ 432. *c*).

457. The **infinitive** is used with verbs of *remembering*, *learning*, etc., when they mean *remember how*, *learn how*:

εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι straightway from boyhood they learn how to rule and to be ruled.

a. Such verbs take a *ὅτι* clause or a participle in indirect discourse in the sense *remember that*, *learn that*, as has already been described (§§ 441, 442).

458. Dative of agent. — The dative case may be used to express the agent with the perfect and pluperfect passive:

ἡ γέφῡρα λέλυται Κύρῳ the bridge has been destroyed by Cyrus.

459. VOCABULARY XLVI

ἄ-δικος, ον (ἀ- priv. and **δίκη**; cp. **δίκαιος**): *unjust*.

εἴσω, adv.: *within*, with gen.

κατα-κλείω: *shut up*, *confine*, *inclose*.

κλείω, fut. **κλείσω**, 1 aor. **ἔκλεισα**, 1 pf. **κέκλεικα**, pf. mid. **κέκλει-μαι**, 1 aor. pass. **ἐκλείσθην** (σ is irregularly inserted): *shut*.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: *Cretan*, a native of Crete.

κωμ-άρχης, ου, ὁ (**κώμη** + **ἄρχω**): *ruler* or *head man of a village*, *village chief*.

μέμνημαι: *remember*, a pf. with pres. meaning; fut. to be learned later; aor. **ἐμνήσθην** (σ is irregularly inserted).

The pres. act. is **μι-μνῆ-σκω** *remind*, which form is made up of the reduplication **μι-** plus the theme **μνη-** (long form of **μνα-**) plus the pres. suffix **ισκ**$\bar{\epsilon}$; fut. **μνήσω**, 1 aor. **ἔμνησα**. Lat. *meminī*. **Mnemonic**.

πύλη, ης, ἡ: *gate*. Cp. **Θερμο-πύλαι**, lit. "Hot Gates."

τιτρώσκω (theme **τρω-**, reduplicated in pres. **τι-τρω**, and with the pres. suffix **σκ**$\bar{\epsilon}$), fut. **τρώσω**, 1 aor. **ἔτρωσα**, pf. mid. **τέτρωμαι**, 1 aor. pass. **ἐτρώθην**: *wound*.

τοξεύω (cp. **τόξον**), fut. **τοξεύσομαι**, 1 aor. **ἐτόξευσα**, pf. pass. **τετόξευ-μαι**, 1 aor. pass. **ἐτοξεύθην**: *shoot* with bow and arrow.

ψῑλός, ή, όν: *bare*, *unprotected*; *light-armed*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

460. I. 1. ἀκούων δὲ οὐ μέμνησαι. 2. ἦγε δ' αὐτοὺς ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος[1] διὰ χιόνος. 3. καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. 4. ὁ δὲ τοξότης ἦκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν χεῖρα. 5. πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι. 6. αἱ δὲ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο. 7. φησὶν οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι. 8. ἐτύγχανε γὰρ Ἀριαῖος ἐφ' ἁμάξης πορευόμενος ὅτι[2] ἐτέτρωτο. 9. μετὰ ταῦτα μετ-επέμψαντο Τισσαφέρνην οἵ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος, ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρᾶς πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. 10. λελυμένης[3] δὲ τῆς γεφύρᾶς οὐχ ἕξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 11. ἐγώ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, μέμνημαι ἡμῖν[4] ὅρκους γεγενημένους.[5] 12. μεμνήσθω ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ εἶναι.[6] 13. μεμνήσθω ὅτι ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ ἐστιν. 14. μεμνήσθω ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ ὤν.[7] 15. οἱ γὰρ Κρῆτες βραχύτερα[8] τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψῑλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὁπλῑτῶν κατ-εκέκλειντο.

II. 1. The barbarians had encamped near the Greeks. 2. The village chief has been loosed (from shackles)[9] by Cheirisophus. 3. The crowd (of camp followers)[9] has been shut up within the (ranks of)[9] hoplites. 4. Let him remember that Cyrus is a brave man.[10]

---

[1] *loosed* from shackles.
[2] § 310.
[3] *broken down, destroyed.*
[4] § 458.
[5] = *have been made* (§§ 440, 441).
[6] § 457.
[7] When the subject of the participle in indirect discourse (§ 441) is the same as that of the verb on which the participle depends, it agrees in case.— Sentences 13 and 14 mean the same thing.
[8] *a shorter distance* (§ 351. *c*).
[9] Omit.
[10] Express in two ways.

XLVII

PERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE OF MUTE THEMES. EUPHONIC RULES: MUTES BEFORE μ. *SIGMA* DROPPED BETWEEN TWO CONSONANTS.

461. Themes that end in a mute (§§ 27, 28) naturally suffer euphonic changes in the perfect and pluperfect middle before the personal endings, which are added directly to the theme.

The following rules of euphony therefore must be added to those already learned (§§ 153, 387):

MUTES BEFORE μ

462. 1. A labial mute (π β ϕ) before μ becomes μ:

λέ-λειμ-μαι for λε-λειπ-μαι (λείπω).

2. A palatal mute (κ χ) before μ becomes γ:

πέ-φύλαγ-μαι for πε-φυλακ-μαι (φυλάττω, theme φυλακ-).

a. γ before μ is naturally kept unchanged:

τέ-ταγ-μαι (pf. mid. of τάττω, theme ταγ-).

3. A lingual mute (τ δ θ) before μ becomes σ:

πέ-πεισ-μαι for πε-πειθ-μαι (πείθω).

463. **Sigma** coming between two consonants is dropped:

λέ-λειφ-θε for λε-λειπ-σθε.

464. The **third person plural** of the perfect and pluperfect indicative middle of mute themes is a periphrastic form made up of the perfect participle and εἰσί(ν) (perfect) or ἦσαν (pluperfect).

a. With a neuter plural subject ἐστί(ν) and ἦν are used for εἰσί(ν) and ἦσαν respectively; or the regularly formed third person singular of the verb is used.

465. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE OF λείπω (THEME λειπ-)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	λέ-λειμ-μαι [1] (Pass.) *I have been left*		λε-λείμ-μεθα [1]
2.	λέ-λειψαι [2]	λέ-λειφ-θον [4]	λέ-λειφ-θε [4]
3.	λέ-λειπ-ται [3]	λέ-λειφ-θον [4]	λε-λειμ-μένοι [1] εἰσί(ν)
Subjv. 1.	λε-λειμ-μένος [1] ὦ		
2.	λε-λειμ-μένος [1] ᾖς, etc.		
Opt. 1.	λε-λειμ-μένος [1] εἴην		
2.	λε-λειμ-μένος [1] εἴης, etc.		
Imv. 2.	λέ-λειψο [2]	λέ-λειφ-θον [4]	λέ-λειφ-θε [4]
3.	λε-λείφ-θω [4]	λε-λείφ-θων [4]	λε-λείφ-θων [4]
Inf.	λε-λεῖφ-θαι [4]		
Partic.	λε-λειμ-μένος [1]		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἐ-λε-λείμ-μην [1]		ἐ-λε-λείμ-μεθα [1]
2.	ἐ-λέ-λειψο [2]	ἐ-λέ-λειφ-θον [4]	ἐ-λέ-λειφ-θε [4]
3.	ἐ-λέ-λειπ-το [3]	ἐ-λε-λείφ-θην [4]	λε-λειμ-μένοι [1] ἦσαν

a. All other labial mute (*π β φ*) themes are inflected on the model of *λέ-λειμ-μαι*:

γέ-γραμ-μαι, pf. mid. of *γράφω* (theme *γραφ-*);
συν-είλημ-μαι, pf. mid. of *συλ-λαμβάνω* (themes *λαβ-*, *ληβ-*).

b. But *πέμπω* (theme *πεμπ-*) forms the pf. mid. or pass. *πε-πεμμ-μαι* (§ 462. 1); and one *μ* of the unpronounceable combination is dropped (*πέ-πεμ-μαι*):

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	πέ-πεμ-μαι (Pass.) *I have been sent*		πε-πέμ-μεθα
2.	πέ-πεμψαι	πέ-πεμφ-θον	πέ-πεμφ-θε
3.	πέ-πεμπ-ται	πέ-πεμφ-θον	πε-πεμ-μένοι εἰσί(ν)

[1] § 462. 1. [2] § 153. 1. [3] § 387. 1. [4] §§ 463; 387. 1.

466. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE OF τάττω *arrange* (THEME ταγ-)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	τέ-ταγ-μαι[1] (Pass.) *I have been arranged* or *marshaled*		τε-τάγ-μεθα[1]
2.	τέ-ταξαι[2]	τέ-ταχ-θον[4]	τέ-ταχ-θε[4]
3.	τέ-τακ-ται[3]	τέ-ταχ-θον[4]	τε-ταγ-μένοι[1] εἰσί(ν)
Subjv. 1.	τε-ταγ-μένος[1] ὦ		
2.	τε-ταγ-μένος[1] ᾖς, etc.		
Opt. 1.	τε-ταγ-μένος[1] εἴην		
2.	τε-ταγ-μένος[1] εἴης, etc.		
Imv. 2.	τέ-ταξο[2]	τέ-ταχ-θον[4]	τέ-ταχ-θε[4]
3.	τε-τάχ-θω[4]	τε-τάχ-θων[4]	τε-τάχ-θων[4]
Inf.	τε-τάχ-θαι[4]		
Partic.	τε-ταγ-μένος,[1] η, ον		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἐ-τε-τάγ-μην[1]		ἐ-τε-τάγ-μεθα[1]
2.	ἐ-τέ-ταξο[2]	ἐ-τέ-ταχ-θον[4]	ἐ-τέ-ταχ-θε[4]
3.	ἐ-τέ-τακ-το[3]	ἐ-τε-τάχ-θην[4]	τε-ταγ-μένοι[1] ἦσαν

a. Like τέταγμαι are inflected all other verbs with themes ending in a palatal mute (κ γ χ):

ἦγ-μαι, pf. mid. of ἄγω (theme ἀγ-);
ἐκ-πέ-πληγ-μαι, pf. mid. of ἐκ-πλήττω (theme πληγ-);
πέ-πρᾱγ-μαι, pf. mid. of πρᾱ́ττω (theme πρᾱγ-).

467. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT MIDDLE OR PASSIVE OF πείθω (THEME πειθ-)

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Pf. Indic. 1.	πέ-πεισ-μαι[5] (Pass.) *I have been persuaded*		πε-πείσ-μεθα[5]
2.	πέ-πει-σαι[6]	πέ-πει-σθον[6]	πέ-πει-σθε[6]
3.	πέ-πεισ-ται[7]	πέ-πει-σθον[6]	πε-πεισ-μένοι[5] εἰσί(ν)

[1] § 462. 2. *a.* [2] § 153. 2. [3] § 387. 1.
[4] §§ 463; 387. 1. [5] § 462. 3. [6] § 153. 3. [7] § 387, 2.

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Subjv. 1.	πε-πεισ-μένος[1] ὦ		
2.	πε-πεισ-μένος[1] ᾖς, etc.		
Opt. 1.	πε-πεισ-μένος[1] εἴην		
2.	πε-πεισ-μένος[1] εἴης, etc.		
Imv. 2.	πέ-πει-σο[2]	πέ-πει-σθον[2]	πέ-πει-σθε[2]
3.	πε-πεί-σθω[2]	πε-πεί-σθων[2]	πε-πεί-σθων[2]
Inf.	πε-πεῖ-σθαι[2]		
Partic.	πε-πεισ-μένος[1]		
Plup. Indic. 1.	ἐ-πε-πείσ-μην[1]		ἐ-πε-πείσ-μεθα[1]
2.	ἐ-πέ-πει-σο[2]	ἐ-πέ-πει-σθον[2]	ἐ-πέ-πει-σθε[2]
3.	ἐ-πέ-πεισ-το[3]	ἐ-πε-πεί-σθην[2]	πε-πεισ-μένοι[1] ἦσαν

a. Like *πέ-πεισ-μαι* are inflected all other verbs with themes ending in a lingual mute (*τ δ θ*):

ἤρπασ-μαι, pf. mid. of *ἁρπάζω* (theme *ἁρπαδ-*);
παρ-εσκεύασ-μαι, pf. mid. of *παρα-σκευάζω* (theme *σκευαδ-*).

468. VOCABULARY XLVII

ἄλλῃ, adv. (dat. fem. of **ἄλλος**, with **ὁδῷ** or **χώρᾳ** understood): *elsewhere, in another place* or *direction*.

ἀ-πορίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (cp. **ἄ-πορος, πορεύομαι**): lack of way out, *embarrassment, difficulty*.

ἔμ-προσθεν, adv. (**ἐν** + **πρόσθεν**): *in front, before*. It may take the gen.

ἐν-τυγχάνω (cp. **τυγχάνω**): *chance upon, happen upon, come upon by chance, encounter*, with dat.

ἐπι-τάττω (cp. **τάττω**): *enjoin* something (acc.) *on* somebody (dat.), *direct, command*.

κατά-βασις, εως, ἡ (**κατα-βαίνω**): *descent, way down* a mountain side; the *descent* from the interior to the sea.

μόνος, η, ον: *alone, only*. **Monarchy** (**ἄρχω**), **mono-gamy** (**γάμος** *marriage*), etc.

ὁποῖος, ᾱ, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: *of what sort, what sort of*.

ποτόν, οῦ, τό: *drink*.

που, indef. adv., enclitic: *somewhere, anywhere*.

προ-κατα-λαμβάνω (cp. **κατα-λαμβάνω**, Vocabulary XXXII): *seize* or *occupy beforehand*.

σῖτίον, ου, τό (diminutive of **σῖτος**): *grain, food*.

[1] § 462. 3. [2] § 153. 3. [3] § 387. 2.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

469. I. 1. βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσ-έρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρ-εσκευασμένος. 2. οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο οὐδὲ τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις. 3. κατα-λαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλεῖστα δι-ηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι[1] σῖτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν. 4. δι-ήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ[2] αὐτὰ[3] τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα.[4] 5. καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγύς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ᾧ ἐπ-ετέτακτο[5] ταῦτα πράττειν. 6. καὶ ἐγὼ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας τεταγμένων οὐκ ἔφυγον. 7. τὸ στράτευμα πολὺ ἦν, ὥστε τὸν Πέρσην ἐκ-πεπλῆχθαι. 8. καὶ ὁποίοις λόγοις Κλέαρχος ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλη γέγραπται.[6] 9. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-ειλημμένοι ἦσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 10. μόνοι δὲ κατα-λελειμμένοι ἦσαν, οὐδὲ ἱππέᾱ οὐδένα[7] σύμμαχον ἔχοντες. 11. προ-κατ-είληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν[8] ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως λόφος. 12. Χειρίσοφος δὲ εἶδε προ-κατ-ειλημμένην τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. 13. καλόν τι[9] πρὸς τοὺς ἐν Σάρδεσι βαρβάρους ἐπέπρᾱκτο ὑμῖν.[10] 14. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐν-τυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατ-ειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.

II. 1. Cyrus, prepared for battle, advanced against the enemy. 2. Most of the possessions had been plundered by the king's army. 3. These soldiers have been led up to the king.

---

[1] Cp. § 232. I. 3. [2] *even.* [3] *very*, § 123. 1; cp. § 394. II. 3.
[4] Subject of **δι-ήρπαστο.** [5] *it had been directed.*
[6] *it has been written.* [7] § 428.
[8] § 53. *d.* [9] *a noble deed* (cp. § 232. I. 10). [10] § 458.

XLVIII

THE FUTURE PERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE. MEANING OF FUTURE PERFECT. VERBAL ADJECTIVES IN *-τός* AND *-τέος*. DATIVE OF AGENT WITH VERBALS IN *-τέος*

470. There is but one form for the future perfect middle and passive (§ 383); the meaning is generally passive; but the form is uncommon in either the middle or passive use.

471. The future perfect passive (middle) is formed from the reduplicated (perfect) theme, plus the future suffix *σ%*, to which the endings of person (indicative) or mood and person (optative) are added. The middle endings are used. The forms are like the future middle, with reduplication of the theme.

472. FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE (MIDDLE) OF λύω

	SING.	DUAL	PLUR.
Indic. 1.	λε-λῡ́-σο-μαι *I shall have been loosed*		λε-λῡ-σό-μεθα
2.	λε-λῡ́-ση, -σει	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθον	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθε
3.	λε-λῡ́-σε-ται	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθον	λε-λῡ́-σο-νται
Opt. 1.	λε-λῡ-σοί-μην		λε-λῡ-σοί-μεθα
2.	λε-λῡ́-σοι-ο	λε-λῡ́-σοι-σθον	λε-λῡ́-σοι-σθε
3.	λε-λῡ́-σοι-το	λε-λῡ-σοί-σθην	λε-λῡ́-σοι-ντο
Inf.	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθαι		
Partic.	λε-λῡ-σό-μενος, η, ον		

473. Like λε-λῡ́-σο-μαι are inflected:

λε-λείψο-μαι (λείπω) I shall have been left;
κε-κόψο-μαι (κόπτω) I shall have been cut;
με-μνή-σο-μαι (μέμνημαι) I shall remember (see Vocabulary XLVI).

474. The future perfect passive may be used to denote a future act as *sure to occur.* It is then an emphatic future:

κατα-κεκόψονται they shall be surely cut down;
λελείψεται he will be left.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES

475. Their form. — Verbal adjectives end in **-τός, ή, όν,**[1] and **-τέος, ᾱ, ον.** These endings are generally added to that form of the verb theme which is used in the first aorist passive (without the augment). If the theme ends in a mute, the necessary euphonic changes must be made (§ 387. 1 and 2).

476. Their meaning. — The adjective with the suffix **-τός** may denote (1) a completed act like the Latin perfect passive participle; or (2) a possible act, like Latin adjectives in *-bilis*, English *-able:*

λυ-τός that may be loosed, looseable;
ἄ-βα-τος that may not be trodden on, impassable (ἐ-βά-θην, from βαίνω);
ἀ-διά-βα-τος not to be crossed, impassable (δι-ε-βά-θην);
ἀ-φύλακ-τος unguarded (ἐ-φυλάχ-θην).

477. The adjective with the suffix **-τέος** denotes a necessity, like the Latin gerundive:

διωκτέος (necessary) to be pursued (ἐ-διώχ-θην was pursued);
δια-βατέος (necessary) to be crossed (δι-ε-βά-θην was crossed);
πρᾱκτέος (necessary) to be done (ἐ-πρᾱ́χ-θην was done).

---

[1] Compound verbals in **-τος** have recessive accent and two endings: **-τος** (masc. and fem.), **-τον** (neut.). But prepositional compounds denoting *possibility* are usually of three endings and accented like simple verbals. Thus **δια-βατός, ή, όν,** *able to be crossed, fordable* (of a river).

Such verbal adjectives may be used:

1. *Personally:* ποταμὸς δια-βατέος ἐστίν *a river must be crossed.*

2. *Impersonally*[1]*:* πειστέον (πείθομαι *obey*) ἐστίν *it must be obeyed, obedience must be rendered* (with dat.); πορευτέον (πορεύομαι) ἐστίν *it must be proceeded, one must proceed;* σκεπτέον (σκέπτομαι *consider*) ἐστίν *it must be considered.*

ἐστί(ν) may be omitted (§ 291).

478. With the verbal in *-τέος* the **agent** is regularly expressed by the **dative** (cp. § 458):

ταῦτα πρᾱκτέα μοι this must be done by me.

479. It must be observed that *necessity* is far more commonly expressed by δεῖ and the infinitive (§ 223) with subject accusative, and by similar expressions, than by the verbal adjective in *-τέος*.

480. VOCABULARY XLVIII

βαθύς, εῖα, ύ: *deep.*

δεσπότης, ου, ὁ: *master.* Despot.

δια-βατέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **δια-βαίνω**): necessary *to be crossed.*

δια-βατός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of **δια-βαίνω**): *able to be crossed, fordable* (of a river). Cp. **ἀ-διά-βατος** (§ 108).

διωκτέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **διώκω**): necessary *to be pursued.*

θαυμαστός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of **θαυμάζω**): *admirable, wonderful, strange.*

μετά-πεμπτος, ον (verbal adj. of **μετα-πέμπομαι**): *sent after, summoned.*

πειστέον (verbal adj. of **πείθομαι**), impers.: *one must obey,* with dat.

πορευτέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **πορεύομαι**): necessary *to be passed over, to be traversed;* neut. impers.. *one must proceed.*

σκεπτέον (verbal adj. of **σκέπτομαι**), impers.: *it must be considered, one must consider.*

τρω-τός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of **τιτρώσκω**): *able to be wounded, vulnerable.*

ὑπο-ζύγιον, ου, τό (**ζυγόν** *yoke*): something *under the yoke, beast of burden.*

[1] The impersonal verbal may even take an object. Thus **διωκτέον ἐστὶ τὰ θηρία** *one must pursue the wild beasts.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

481. I. 1. ἢν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φᾱσιν. 2. ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείψεται. 3. νῦν δὲ διωκτέον ἐστίν. 4. ἐὰν γὰρ ἀλλήλοις μαχέσησθε, νομίζετε[1] ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατα-κεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον. 5. πορευτέον ἐστὶν ὅτι τάχιστα. 6. ὁ δὲ λοχᾱγὸς ἔμαθεν ὅτι ἀφύλακτον εἴη τὸ ἱερὸν χωρίον. 7. καὶ πειστέον ἐστὶ τῷ δεσπότῃ. 8. παρ-ἦν δὲ καὶ[2] Χειρίσοφος, μετά-πεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου. 9. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους στα-θμοὺς[3] ὡς μακροτάτους. 10. ποταμὸς δὲ βαθὺς ἡμῖν ἐστι δια-βατέος. 11. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τρωτοί εἰσι μᾶλλον ἡμῶν. 12. εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀγαθός ἐστιν, οὐδὲν[4] θαυμαστόν.[5] 13. σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ὡς πλεῖστα ὑποζύγια ἁρπάσωμεν. 14. κατὰ γὰρ μέσον[6] τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον ποταμὸν ηὗρον[7] διαβατόν.

II. 1. The horses will certainly[8] be loosed. 2. We must proceed five days' journey to Celaenae, that large and prosperous city. 3. If he should not be brave, it would not be at all[9] strange. 4. A messenger reported[10] that the river was impassable.

---

[1] Imv. [2] *also.* [3] § 181. [4] *in no respect* (§ 284).
[5] § 291. [6] § 192. [7] § 443. [8] § 474.
[9] *not at all* = **οὐδέν** (§ 284). [10] **ἔφη.**

XLIX

SYNOPSIS OF THE Ω-VERB. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF TYPICAL VERBS. SOME COMMON SUFFIXES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

482. SYNOPSIS OF λῡ́ω *loose*; THEME { λῡ- / λυ-

ACTIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
Pres.	λῡ́ω	λῡ́ω	λῡ́οιμι	λῦε	λῡ́ειν	λῡ́ων
Impf.	ἔλῡον					
Fut.	λῡ́σω		λῡ́σοιμι		λῡ́σειν	λῡ́σων
Aor.	ἔλῡσα	λῡ́σω	λῡ́σαιμι	λῦσον	λῦσαι	λῡ́σᾱς
Pf.	λέλυκα	§ 436	§ 436		λελυκέναι	λελυκώς
Plup.	ἐλελύκη					

MIDDLE

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
Pres.	λῡ́ομαι	λῡ́ωμαι	λῡοίμην	λῦου	λῡ́εσθαι	λῡόμενος
Impf.	ἐλῡόμην					
Fut.	λῡ́σομαι		λῡσοίμην		λῡ́σεσθαι	λῡσόμενος
Aor.	ἐλῡσάμην	λῡ́σωμαι	λῡσαίμην	λῦσαι	λῦσασθαι	λῡσάμενος
Pf.	λέλυμαι	λελυμένος ὦ	λελυμένος εἴην	λέλυσο	λελύσθαι	λελυμένος
Plup.	ἐλελύμην					
Fut. Pf.	λελῡ́σομαι		λελῡσοίμην		λελῡ́σεσθαι	λελῡσόμενος

PASSIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC
Pres. Impf.	like the Middle					
Fut.	**λυθήσομαι**		**λυθησοίμην**		**λυθήσεσθαι**	**λυθησόμενος**
Aor.	**ἐλύθην**	**λυθῶ**	**λυθείην**	**λύθητι**	**λυθῆναι**	**λυθείς**
Pf. Plup. Fut. Pf.	like the Middle					

483. SYNOPSIS OF λείπω *leave* IN THE SECOND AORIST AND SECOND PERFECT; THEMES λειπ-, λοιπ-, λιπ-

ACTIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
2 Aor.	**ἔλιπον**	**λίπω**	**λίποιμι**	**λίπε**	**λιπεῖν**	**λιπών**
2 Pf.	**λέλοιπα**	§ 446	§ 446		**λελοιπέναι**	**λελοιπώς**
2 Plup.	**ἐλελοίπη**					

MIDDLE

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
2 Aor.	**ἐλιπόμην**	**λίπωμαι**	**λιποίμην**	**λιποῦ**	**λιπέσθαι**	**λιπόμενος**

484. SYNOPSIS OF βλάπτω *hurt* IN THE SECOND AORIST PASSIVE AND SECOND FUTURE PASSIVE; THEME βλαβ-

PASSIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INF.	PARTIC.
2 Fut.	βλαβήσομαι		βλαβησοίμην		βλαβήσεσθαι	βλαβησόμενος
2 Aor.	ἐβλάβην	βλαβῶ	βλαβείην	βλάβηθι	βλαβῆναι	βλαβείς

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

485. The following tense systems have now been studied — all the tense systems of the ordinary Greek verb:

1. Present (including imperfect): Active, Middle (Passive).
2. Future: Active, Middle.
3. First Aorist: Active, Middle.
4. Second Aorist: Active, Middle.
5. First Perfect (including first pluperfect): Active.
6. Second Perfect (including second pluperfect): Active.
7. Perfect Middle (including pluperfect and future perfect).
8. First Passive (first aorist and first future passive).
9. Second Passive (second aorist and second future passive).

a. If one knows the first form in each of these systems (the first person singular of the indicative mood), he can by the rules already mastered produce the complete inflection of the ω-verb. Therefore the first forms in these systems are together known as the **principal parts** of the verb.

486. It is not usual for a *single* verb to be inflected in all of the above tense systems. Most verbs are in this sense defective.

487. The following list (page 219) includes the principal parts of some typical verbs already studied. Vacant places indicate that the tense system is wanting. For the principal parts of the other verbs that have been introduced into the work thus far, consult the general VOCABULARY at the end of the book.

488. The **second perfect active** *πέπομφα* illustrates the tendency to change an *ε* sound in the theme to *ο* in this tense. Cp. also *λέλοιπα* (*λείπω*).

489. The **second aorist passive** *ἐστράφην* illustrates the tendency to change an *ε* sound in the theme to *α* in this tense. Cp. also *ἐτράπην* (*τρέπω*).

490. The verbs *στρέφω turn*, *τρέπω turn*, and *τρέφω nourish*, change *ε* of the theme to *α* in the perfect middle: *ἔστραμμαι*, *τέτραμμαι*, *τέθραμμαι*.

SOME COMMON SUFFIXES USED IN FORMING NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

NOUNS

491. Indicating the AGENT:

-ευ-: *ἱππεύς* (*ἵππος horse*) *horseman.*
-τα-: *τοξότης* (*τόξον bow*) *bowman;*
πελταστής (*πελτάζω be a peltast*) *peltast.*
-τηρ-: *σωτήρ* (*σῴζω save*) *savior.*
-τορ-, nom. *-τωρ*: *ῥήτωρ*, gen. *ῥήτορος* (*εἴ-ρη-κα I have spoken*), *orator.*

Pres.	Meaning	Theme	Fut.	1 Aor.	2 Aor.	1 Pf. Act.	2 Pf. Act.	Pf. Mid.	1 Aor. Pass.	2 Aor. Pass.
ἄγω	*lead*	ἀγ-	ἄξω		ἤγαγον		ἦχα	ἦγμαι	ἤχθην	
ἁρπάζω	*seize*	ἁρπαδ-	ἁρπάσω	ἥρπασα		ἥρπακα		ἥρπασμαι	ἡρπάσθην	
βλάπτω	*hurt*	βλαβ-	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα			βέβλαφα	βέβλαμμαι	ἐβλάφθην	ἐβλάβην
ἔχω	*have*	[σ]εχ- σχ- σχη-	ἕξω σχήσω		ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα		ἔσχημαι		
θύω	*sacrifice*	θῡ- θυ-	θύσω	ἔθῡσα		τέθυκα		τέθυμαι	ἐτύθην (for ἐθύθην)	
λαμβάνω	*take*	λαβ- ληβ-	λήψομαι		ἔλαβον		εἴληφα	εἴλημμαι	ἐλήφθην	
λείπω	*leave*	λειπ- λοιπ- λιπ-	λείψω		ἔλιπον		λέλοιπα	λέλειμμαι	ἐλείφθην	
λῡ́ω	*loose*	λῡ- λυ-	λῡ́σω	ἔλῡσα		λέλυκα		λέλυμαι	ἐλύθην	
πείθω	*persuade*	πειθ- ποιθ-	πείσω	ἔπεισα		πέπεικα	πέποιθα, § 445. *a*	πέπεισμαι	ἐπείσθην	
πέμπω	*send*	πεμπ- πομπ-	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα			πέπομφα	πέπεμμαι	ἐπέμφθην	
στρέφω	*turn*	στρεφ- στραφ-	στρέψω	ἔστρεψα				ἔστραμμαι		ἐστράφην
συλ-λέγω	*collect*	λεγ- λογ-	συλ-λέξω	συν-έλεξα			συν-είλοχα	συν-είλεγμαι	συν-ελέχθην	συν-ελέγην

492. Indicating QUALITY or an ABSTRACT IDEA:

-ιᾱ-: σωτηρίᾱ (σωτήρ *savior*) *safety*;
ὑποψίᾱ (ὑπ-όψομαι *I shall suspect*) *suspicion*;
φιλίᾱ (φίλος *friend*) *friendship*.

493. Indicating ACTION:

-σι-: κατάβασις (καταβαίνω *descend*) *descent*;
τάξις (τάττω *arrange*) *arrangement* (cp. § 381).

494. Indicating RESULT of action:

-ματ-: πρᾶγμα, gen. πράγματος (πρᾶττω *do*), *deed*, etc.;
στράτευμα (στρατεύω *make an expedition*) *expedition, army*.

495. Indicating SMALLNESS, etc., although the diminutive idea is not always preserved:

-ιο-: χρῡσίον (χρῡσός *gold*) piece of *gold*;
παιδίον (παῖς *child*) *little child*;
χωρίον (χῶρος *place*) *place, stronghold*

ADJECTIVES

496. *-ιο-*: πολέμιος (πόλεμος *war*) *hostile*;
Λακεδαιμόνιος (Λακεδαίμων *Lacedaemon*) *Lacedaemonian*,
δίκαιος (δίκη *justice*) *just*;
ἀρχαῖος (ἀρχή *beginning*) *ancient*.

-ικο-: βασιλικός (βασιλεύς *king*) *kinglike*;
Ἑλληνικός (Ἕλλην *a Greek*) *Greek*;
πολεμικός (πόλεμος *war*) *warlike*.

L

CONTRACT NOUNS OF THE Ā-DECLENSION AND OF THE O-DECLENSION. CONTRACT ADJECTIVES. THE INFINITIVE WITH THE ARTICLE USED AS A NOUN

497. Learn the declension of *γῆ earth*, *μνᾶ mina* (§ 594); *νοῦς mind* (§ 596); *χρῡσοῦς, ῆ, οῦν, golden*, *ἀργυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν, silver*, *ἁπλοῦς, ῆ, οῦν, simple* (§ 609); *εὔνους, ουν, well-disposed* (§ 610).

498. RULES OF CONTRACTION

$\epsilon + o = ou$

$o + o = ou$

Any short vowel before a long vowel (or diphthong) or before *α* is absorbed.

But, in the singular of the **ᾱ**-declension,

$\epsilon + \bar{a} = \eta$ (*ᾱ* after *ρ*).

a. The syllable resulting from contraction is always long, — a long vowel or a diphthong.

b. Contract nouns and adjectives are regularly circumflexed on the ultima throughout. But forms of the **o**-declension have the acute accent (*not* the circumflex) on the ultima of the nominative, accusative, and vocative dual, when the ultima is accented.

499. Compounds of *νοῦς mind* and *πλοῦς voyage* keep the accent throughout on the same syllable as in the nominative singular. Thus *εὔνων*, genitive plural (for *εὐνόων*). Such compounds also do not contract in the neuter plural rominative and accusative. Thus *εὔνοα*.

500. The infinitive preceded by a neuter article (*τό, τοῦ, τῷ*) may be used as a noun, in the various constructions of a noun:

τὸ ἀποθνῄσκειν (nom. or acc.) death;
φόβος τοῦ στρατεῦσαι fear of taking the field;
ἐκώλῡσεν αὐτοὺς τοῦ κᾰ́ειν (gen. of separation) *τὴν χώρᾱν* he hindered them from burning the land.

a. This construction of the infinitive is common after prepositions. Frequent is *διὰ τό* followed by an infinitive:

διὰ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδόν on account of the fact that the road was narrow.

501. VOCABULARY L

ἁπλοῦς, ῆ, οῦν: *simple, sincere.*
ἀργύριον, ου, τό: *silver, money.*
ἀργυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν: *of silver, silver.*
γῆ, ῆς, ἡ: *earth, land.* Geometry (**μέτρον** *measure*).
ἔκ-βασις, εως, ἡ (**ἐκ-βαίνω**): passage out, mountain *pass.*
εὖ-νους, ουν: *well-disposed.*
μνᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ: *mina*, one sixtieth of a talent; *i.e.* about $18.
νοῦς, οῦ, ὁ: *mind.*
πλοῦς, οῦ, ὁ: *voyage; a sailing, sailing weather.* Cp. **πλοῖον.**
ποτέ, enclitic adv. of time: *ever, at any time, at some time, once* on a time.
προσ-έχω, with **τὸν νοῦν**: *direct* the mind *to*, with dat.
Τίγρης, ητος, ὁ: *Tigris*, a great river of western Asia.
τόπος, ου, ὁ: *place.* Topic.
χρῡσοῦς, ῆ, οῦν: *golden, of gold, gold.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

502. I. 1. *ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὥσπερ θάλαττα.* 2. *καὶ λέγεται*[1] *ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.* 3. *ἦρξαν τοῦ διαβαίνειν τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν.* 4. *οἱ πολέμιοι ἐθαύμαζον τί οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐν νῷ ἔχοιεν.*[2] 5. *ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἦγε πρὸς τὴν φανερᾶν*

[1] Impers. [2] § 345.

ἔκβασιν ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν. 6. ἐξήλαυνον ὡς τάχιστα διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκην εἶναι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 7. νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξεστιν πορεύεσθαι, ὅπῃ ἂν ἕλησθε,[1] καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. 8. ἔπεμψε δὲ σάλπιγγά τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκηνὴν ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν.[2] 9. φίλους δὲ ἁπλοῦς τε καὶ εὔνους Κῦρος εἶχεν. 10. οἱ καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ εὖνοι αὐτῷ ἦσαν. 11. φόβον βασιλεὺς παρέσχε[3] τοῦ στρατεῦσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν. 12. ἐκώλῡσε τοὺς ἱππέας τοῦ διαρπάζειν τὴν χώρᾱν.

II. 13. δυνατὸς ἦν χῑλὸν παρασκευάζεσθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτᾱς. 14. καὶ ὑμεῖς παρασκευάζεσθε[4] ὡς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀναξόμενοι,[5] ἐὰν πλοῦς ᾖ. 15. βασιλέᾱ δ' ἔφασαν ἔχειν θώρᾱκα χρῡσοῦν καὶ ἀσπίδα χρῡσῆν. 16. ὁ δ' εἶχε δέκα μνᾶς ἀργυρίου.[6] 17. ὁ δὲ κωμάρχης τᾱ̀ς πύλᾱς ἔκλεισε διὰ τὸ μὴ ἐθέλειν δέχεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας.

III. 1. What have you in mind? 2. They had fear[7] of marching against the king. 3. All the soldiers were well-disposed to Cyrus.

---

[1] § 248. 1 or § 400. [2] § 402. [3] *caused.* [4] Imv.

[5] **ἀν-άγομαι** sometimes, as here, means *put to sea;* for the construction see §§ 331, 332.

[6] *Of* gen. (§ 53. *f*), denoting material. [7] Use the noun.

LI

CONTRACT VERBS. PRESENT SYSTEM OF *ποιέω*. DISSYLLABIC VERBS IN *-έω*. TWO ACCUSATIVES AFTER VERBS OF *MAKING, APPOINTING; ASKING, DEPRIVING*. CONSTRUCTION OF *δοκέω*

503. The inflection of contract verbs differs from that of regular ω-verbs in the present system only. In all other systems these verbs, if regular, are inflected like the corresponding tenses of *λύω*.

504. The syllable resulting from contraction receives an accent if either one of the component syllables, in the uncontracted form, had an accent; it receives a circumflex, if the *first* vowel had the acute; but it receives an acute, if the *second* vowel had the acute.

505. Examples of accentuation of contract verbs:

ποιέω	contracts to *ποιῶ*	*ἐποίεον*	contracts to *ἐποίουν*
ποιέομεν	" " *ποιοῦμεν*	*ἐποίεε*	" " *ἐποίει*
ἑσταώς	" " *ἑστώς*		

PRESENT SYSTEM OF ποιέω

506. Learn the inflection in the present system of the active and middle (= passive) voices of *ποιέω do, make* (§ 643).

a. Similarly are inflected *αἱρέω take*, mid. *choose; ἀφικνέομαι arrive; ἡγέομαι lead* (with gen. or dat.) or *think*.

507. RULES OF CONTRACTION

ε + *ε* = *ει*

ε + *ο* = *ου*

ε before a long vowel or diphthong is absorbed.

508. Verbs in *-έω* of two syllables, like *πλέω sail*, contract only when *ει* results; otherwise they are uncontracted:

πλέω, πλεῖς, πλεῖ, πλέομεν, πλεῖτε, πλέουσι;
δέῃ, subjv. of *δεῖ* (it is necessary).

509. Outside of the present system the final *ε* of the theme is regularly lengthened to *η*:

ποιῶ (*-έω*), *ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην.*

Exceptions must be learned as they occur. Thus *ᾑρέθην I was chosen*, not *ᾑρήθην* (from *αἱρέω*).

510. Verbs of *making*, *appointing*, and similar meanings may take **two accusatives**, one of which stands in a predicate relation to the other:

σατράπην αὐτὸν ἐποίησεν he made him satrap;
εὔνουν αὐτὸν ἐνόμισεν he thought him well-disposed.

511. Verbs of *asking* and *depriving* may take **two accusatives**, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing:*

αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν μισθόν he asks him for pay;
ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν to deprive the Greeks of their land.

512. **Δοκῶ** (*-έω*) *seem* is commonly used personally (cp. § 391) with the infinitive in indirect discourse:

δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι παύεσθαι it seems not to be an hour for resting (*lit.* the hour seems not, etc.);
ἐδόκουν ταχὺ ποιεῖν ταῦτα they seemed to do this quickly.

a. There is also a less common but nevertheless frequent use of *δοκεῖ* as an impersonal verb, in the meaning *it seems good* or *best.* The accompanying infinitive is the subject of the impersonal verb:

ἐδόκει αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἄνω it seemed best to him to proceed inland.

b. Δοκῶ (*-έω*) sometimes means *I think* like *νομίζω*:

ἐδόκει βασιλέα ἥξειν he thought the king would come.

513. VOCABULARY LI

αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ᾕρηκα, ᾕρημαι, ᾑρέθην: *take, capture, seize*; MID. *choose*. See Vocabularies XXVI, XXXII. **Heresy.**

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ᾔτησα, ᾔτηκα, ᾔτημαι, ᾐτήθην: *ask* a favor, *beg*, *ask for* something *from* somebody (two accusatives); MID. *ask* for oneself.

ἀπο-πλέω: *sail away*.

ἀφ-αιρέομαι (mid. of **αἱρέω**): *take away for oneself, deprive, rob* somebody of something (two accusatives).

ἀφ-ικ-νέ-ομαι (theme **ἰκ-**; **νε-** appears only in pres. system), **ἀφ-ίξομαι, ἀφ-ῖκόμην, ἀφ-ῖγμαι**: *arrive, come*.

δοκέω (theme **δοκ-**, but **δοκε-** in pres. system), **δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην**: *seem, be reputed; seem best; think*. Dogma.

ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἥγημαι: *lead, guide* (with gen. or dat.); *think, believe*. Cp. **ἡγεμών**.

θέω, θεύσομαι: *run*.

ὅθεν, rel. adv.: *whence, from which place, from what source*.

πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι (**σ** is irregularly inserted): *sail*. Cp. **πλοῖον, πλοῦς**.

ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην: *do, make*; the mid. is translated like the act., but implies *in* or *for one's own interest*. Poet (**ποιητής**).

πολεμικός, ή, όν (**πόλεμος**): *suited to war, warlike; hostile*.

πῶ-ποτε, adv. of time: *ever yet, ever*.

πῶς, interr. adv.. *how? in what way?* Cp. **ὅπως**.

στρατεῖᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**στρατεύω**): *expedition*.

τρόπος, ου, ὁ (**τρέπω**): *turn, manner, method, character*. Tropic.

φοβέω (**φόβος**), **φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην**: *frighten*; MID. with dep. aor. pass., *be afraid, fear*. The mid. forms are common (**φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην**).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

514. I. 1. καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ[1] τοῦτον τὸν λόφον αἱροῦσιν. 2. αἱροῦνται αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς στρατείᾱς. 3. ἐδόκει δὲ δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἱρήσονται αὐτὸν στρατηγόν. 4. εἷς δὲ εἶπε[2] Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν.

[1] § 141.

[2] *proposed* (§ 334).

5. Κλέαρχος δὴ ἐδόκει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ πολεμικός. 6. ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ἐβουλεύετο τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ ἄνω στρατεύεσθαι. 7. πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ πλεῖν οἴκαδε. 8. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι. 9. καὶ στρατηγοὺς αἱροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα. 10. τοὺς δ' ἀνθρώπους τὰ χρήματα ἀφαιροῦνται. 11. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ παρὰ Κῦρον. 12. συνεβουλεύετο[1] πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο. 13. οὗτοι δὲ ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. 14. οὐδένα πώποτε τὴν χώρᾱν Κῦρος ἀφείλετο.

II. 15. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος[2] διὰ χιόνος. 16. καὶ[3] πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. 17. φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ἕπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν[4] οὐκ ἔσται[5] ἐξελθεῖν. 18. καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν ὅπου τὸν δρόμον[6] πεποιηκὼς εἴη.[7] 19. αἱρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. 20. τούτους ἄρχοντας ἐποίει τῆς χώρᾱς.

III. 1. We chose him general of the expedition. 2. I should fear to ask[8] him for pay. 3. Cyrus was reputed to have been[9] a kingly man.

---

[1] Mid. *he consulted.* [2] Cp. § 460. I. 2. [3] *also.*
[4] To a place *from which.* [5] *it will not be possible.* [6] *race course.*
[7] The optative is due to implied indirect discourse, the direct form being **ὅπου . . . πεποίηκας.** [8] Cp. sentence 17 above. [9] **γενέσθαι.**

LII

PRESENT SYSTEM OF *τῑμάω*. IRREGULAR CONTRACT VERBS IN *-άω*. INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS OF *PROMISING*, *HOPING*, AND *SWEARING*. CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *WHILE*, *UNTIL*, AND *BEFORE*

515. Learn the inflection in the present system of the active and middle (= passive) voices of *τῑμάω honor* (§ 643).

a. Similarly are inflected *ἐρωτάω ask*, impf. *ἠρώτων*; *ἐάω permit*, impf. *εἴων* (with irregular augment); *πειράομαι try*.

516. RULES OF CONTRACTION

α + an *ε*-sound (*ε*, *η*, *ει*, *ῃ*) = *ᾱ* (or *ᾳ*).
α + an *o*-sound (*o*, *ω*, *οι*, *ου*) = *ω* (or *ῳ*).
ι in the uncontracted form is *subscript* in the contracted form.

517. Some verbs, including *χράομαι use*, and *ζάω live*, irregularly have *η* wherever *ᾱ* would naturally occur in the contracted forms; they likewise have *ῃ* for *ᾳ*:

χρῆσθαι (pres. inf.), not *χρᾶσθαι*;
ζῆν (pres. inf.), not *ζᾶν*;
ζῇ (3 sing. pres. indic.), not *ζᾷ*.

518. Outside of the present system the final **α** of the theme is regularly lengthened to **η**:

τῑμῶ (*τῑμάω*), *τῑμήσω*, *ἐτίμησα*, *τετίμηκα*, *τετίμημαι*, *ἐτῑμήθην*.

a. But after *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ* (cp. §§ 114, 139) the final **α** of the theme is retained in its long form, outside of the present system:

ἐῶ (ἐάω), ἐάσω, εἴᾱσα,[1] εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱμαι, εἰάθην; πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, etc.

χράομαι, however, has χρήσομαι, etc.

519. The **infinitive** (commonly future) is used after verbs of *promising*, *hoping*, and *swearing*:

περὶ τούτων ὑπέσχετο βουλεύσεσθαι about these matters he promised to take counsel.

a. The future infinitive used as above represents the future indicative of direct discourse:

περὶ τούτων βουλεύσομαι about these matters I will take counsel.

b. The negative used with this infinitive is οὐ, although οὐ was used in direct discourse (cp. § 110. *e*):

ὑπέσχετο οὐ παύσεσθαι he promised not to stop (*direct*: οὐ παύσομαι).

520. The **supplementary participle** in indirect discourse (§ 441) is especially common after forms of ὁρῶ (ὁράω) *see*:

ὁρῶ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι I see there are horses in the army (*direct*: ἵπποι εἰσίν).

521. Besides the temporal conjunctions meaning *when* (§§ 168, 202), there are other conjunctions of time meaning *so long as*, *while*, *until*: ἕστε, ἕως, μέχρι (*until*); and meaning *until* or *before*: πρίν.

522. ἕστε, ἕως, and μέχρι (§ 521) take the same constructions as ἐπεί *when* (§§ 167, 248. 2 and *a*, 400, 417). That is to say:

[1] The augment is irregular.

1. When they introduce a definite past act, they take a past tense of the indicative (negative *οὐ*):

τί οὐκ ἐποίησεν, ἕστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; what did he not do, until[1] he obtained a truce?

ἕως πόλεμος ἦν, ἡδόμην so long as[1] there was war, I rejoiced.

2. When they introduce a future or a repeated act, they take the subjunctive (with *ἄν*) after a primary tense or the optative after a secondary tense:

ταῦτα ποιεῖτε ἕστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω do this until[1] I come;

ἕστε δ' ἂν πολεμῆτε, ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὸν μισθόν and so long as[1] you are at war, I promise you your pay.

523. **πρίν** *until* when following a negative clause usually takes:

1. The indicative of a definite past act:

οὐκ ἐπορεύετο πρὶν Σωκράτει συνεβουλεύσατο he did not proceed until he had consulted Socrates;

οὐκ ἐλθεῖν ἤθελε, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισεν he did not wish to come, until his wife persuaded him.

2. The subjunctive (with *ἄν*) of a future act:

μὴ ἀπέλθητε πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσητε, κτλ. do not go away until you hear, etc.

524. **πρίν** *before* depending on an affirmative clause takes the infinitive alone or with subject accusative:

ἔφυγον πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν they fled before we arrived.

---

[1] The context must determine between *while* (*so long as*) and *until* as translations of ἕστε and ἕως.

525. VOCABULARY LII

ἐάω, ἐᾱ́σω, εἴᾱσα, εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱμαι, εἰᾰ́θην: *permit, allow, let.* For impf. **εἴων**, etc., see §§ 515. *a*, 518. *a*.

ἐπι-θῡμέω, ἐπι-θῡμήσω, ἐπ-εθῡ́μησα: *have one's heart set on, yearn, desire*, with inf. or gen.

ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα, ἠρώτηκα, ἠρώτημαι, ἠρωτήθην: *ask* a question, *inquire.* To be distinguished from **αἰτέω** (Vocabulary LI). Cp. **ἠρόμην** (Vocabulary XXXIV), which is often used for **ἠρώτησα**. See also §§ 343–345.

ἕστε, temporal conj.: *while, so long as, until.*

ἕως, temporal conj.: *while, so long as, until.*

ζάω, ζήσω: *live.*

θεάομαι, θεᾱ́σομαι, ἐθεᾱσάμην, τεθέᾱμαι: *look on, gaze at, see.* **Theater.**

μέχρι, temporal conj.: *until.*

νῑκάω (νίκη), νῑκήσω, ἐνίκησα, νενίκηκα, νενίκημαι, ἐνῑκήθην: *conquer, surpass.*

ὁράω (impf. **ἑώρων**[1]), fut. **ὄψομαι**, 2 aor. **εἶδον** (Vocabulary XIX), **ἑώρᾱκα** or **ἑόρᾱκα, ἑώρᾱμαι** or **ὦμμαι, ὤφθην**: *see, behold.*

πειράομαι, πειρᾱ́σομαι, ἐπειρᾱσάμην, πεπείρᾱμαι, and **ἐπειρᾰ́θην**: *try, attempt.* **Pirate.**

πολεμέω (πόλεμος), **πολεμήσω, ἐπολέμησα, πεπολέμηκα, πεπολέμημαι, ἐπολεμήθην**: *wage war, make war on*, with dat. (§ 317), or **πρός** and acc.

πρίν, temporal conj.: *before, until.* **πρόσθεν** (Vocabulary XXVI) . . . **πρίν** = Lat. *prius* . . . *quam*: *earlier than, before.*

τῑμάω (τῑμή), τῑμήσω, ἐτίμησα, τετίμηκα, τετίμημαι, ἐτῑμήθην: *honor.*

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι (**ἴσχω**, strong form of **ἔχω**, with pres. suffix **νε-**), **ὑπο-σχήσομαι, ὑπ-εσχόμην, ὑπ-έσχημαι**: *undertake, promise.*

χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, with pass. aor. **ἐχρήσθην**: *use*, with dat. of means; cp. Lat. *ūtor* with abl.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

526. I. 1. ἕως[2] ἂν παρῇ τις, χρῶμαι αὐτῷ. 2. καὶ ταῦτα ἐποίουν, μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο. 3. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι φεύγουσι πρὶν ὁρᾶν τὰς τάξεις τὰς τῶν πολεμίων.

[1] This imperfect is irregular in having *double* augment, both syllabic **ἑ-** and temporal **-ω-**; cp. also pf. **ἑώρᾱκα** and **ἑώρᾱμαι**.

[2] *while.*

4. καὶ ὑπῐσχνεῖτο μὴ κακὸς ἔσεσθαι. 5. πειράσομαι δὲ τοῖς πολεμίοις πολεμεῖν ἔστ'[1] ἂν δοκῇ αὐτοῖς πολέμου[2] παύσασθαι. 6. Μένων δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθῡμῶν τῑμᾶσθαι. 7. ὅστις ζῆν ἐπιθῡμεῖ, πειράσθω νῑκᾶν. 8. Κῦρος εἶᾱ τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 9. ταύτην τὴν γέφῡραν ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 10. τὰ ὅπλα ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν[3] καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι. 11. ὑπῐσχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν. 12. εἰ δέ τινα ὁρᾷη ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, οὐδένα τὴν χώρᾱν πώποτε ἀφείλετο. 13. κᾆν[4] ὑμᾶς ὁρῶσιν ὄντας κακούς, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται. 14. ἠρώτων δ' αὐτὸν τί χρὴ ποιεῖν.

II. 15. οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπολέμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον. 16. βασιλεὺς δ' ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους[5] ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νῑκῷεν τὸ καθ' αὑτούς.[6] 17. οὓς ἑώρᾱ ἐθέλοντας κινδῡνεύειν, τούτους[7] ἄρχοντας τῆς χώρᾱς ἐποίει καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτῑμᾱ. 18. θεῶνται οἱ παῖδές τινας τῑμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως. 19. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνῑκων τοὺς Πέρσᾱς καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.

III. 1. Before they advanced ten stadia, the Greeks tried to cross this river. 2. While there was war, we kept using the provisions of both friends and enemies. 3. We saw that the soldiers were honoring Cyrus.

---

[1] *until.*
[2] § 201.
[3] With the inf. (§ 277).
[4] § 30.
[5] Gen. of source (§ 201).
[6] *the division opposite themselves.*
[7] Antecedent of **οὓς** at the beginning: *those whom.*

LIII

PRESENT SYSTEM OF δηλόω. COMPLEX SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

527. Learn the inflection in the present system of the active and middle (= passive) voices of δηλόω *show* (§ 643).

a. Similarly are inflected ἀξιόω *demand*, σκηνόω (a parallel form of σκηνάω) *encamp*.

528. RULES OF CONTRACTION

ο + ε or ο or ου = ου.
ο + η or ω = ω.
ο + a diphthong containing ι (ει, οι, ῃ) = οι.

529. Outside of the present system the final **ο** of the theme is regularly lengthened to **ω**:

δηλῶ (δηλόω), δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθην.

COMPLEX SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

530. When a complex sentence is quoted, whether after a verb that requires ὅτι, or after a verb that requires the infinitive or the participle, the verb of the main clause of the quotation comes under the rules already explained (§§ 110, 260, 276, 277, 441, 519).

The only new principle involved concerns the verb of the *subordinate* clause. This verb is retained in the original mood and tense after a primary tense of the introductory verb of *saying* or *thinking;* but it may be changed to the same tense of the optative after a secondary tense of the introductory verb; *except* that, even in the secondary

sequence, dependent secondary tenses of the indicative (*i.e.* imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect) are regularly kept unchanged.

a. Dependent optative clauses of the direct discourse are of course retained in the indirect discourse after both primary and secondary tenses. ἄν with the optative in direct discourse is retained in indirect discourse.

b. The verb of a dependent clause can not be changed to the infinitive.

c. Changes of person are made as the sense requires.

d. The negative of the direct discourse is, as usual, retained in the indirect.

EXAMPLES

1. *Sentence quoted after primary tense:* ἢν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φᾱσιν (*direct:* οὐ μεμνήσῃ) and if anything turns out successfully, they say you will not remember. (Here the dependent clause ἢν . . . γένηται is retained unchanged, since the introductory verb is φᾱσίν.)

2. *Sentence quoted after secondary tense:*

   a. Original sentence: εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψεται τὸ ἄκρον, οὐκ ἔσται δυνατὸν παρελθεῖν unless somebody shall seize the height in advance, it will not be possible to go past.

   b. Quoted sentence: ἔφη εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο τὸ ἄκρον, οὐκ ἔσεσθαι δυνατὸν παρελθεῖν he said that unless somebody should seize the height in advance, it would not be possible to go past. (In the dependent clause, προκαταλήψεται might be retained.)

3. *Dependent secondary tenses of indicative retained:* ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὼς εἴη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο . . . καὶ ὅτι ἤκουε, κτλ. a messenger came saying that Syennesis had left the heights since he had perceived . . . and because he heard, etc. (Here λελοιπὼς εἴη represents the original λέλοιπε *has left* of the messenger's

language; but neither ἤσθετο nor ἤκουε could be changed to the optative, since in the direct discourse they were *dependent secondary* tenses of the indicative. The tense that determines the sequence is seen in ἦκεν.)

531. When a subjunctive introduced by ἐάν or ἐπάν, or ὅστις ἄν, or similar words, is changed to the optative after a secondary tense of the introductory verb of *saying* or *thinking*, ἄν is omitted; that is, ἐάν becomes εἰ, ἐπάν becomes ἐπεί, ὅστις ἄν becomes ὅστις, etc.:

a. Original sentence: οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβήσονται ἐὰν (or ἐπὰν) μηδεὶς κωλύσῃ the Greeks will cross if (*or* when) nobody hinders.

b. Quoted sentence in secondary sequence: ἔφη τοὺς Ἕλληνας διαβήσεσθαι εἰ (or ἐπεὶ) μηδεὶς κωλύσειεν he said the Greeks would cross if (*or* when) nobody should hinder.

Of course the original subjunctive introduced by ἐάν or ἐπάν might have been retained in the last sentence.

532. VOCABULARY LIII

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος), ἀξιώσω, ἠξίωσα, ἠξίωκα, ἠξίωμαι, ἠξιώθην: *deem worthy; claim as one's right, demand; ask.*

δηλόω (δῆλος), δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθην: *show, make evident.*

ἔρημος, η, ον, and **ἐρημος, ον**: *deserted.* **σταθμοὶ ἔρημοι**: *marches through the desert.* **Eremite.**

πλῆθος, ους, τό: *crowd, throng, host, multitude.*

σκηνόω (σκηνή), ἐσκήνωσα, ἐσκήνωκα: *stay in a tent, camp.*

τελευτάω (τελευτή *end*), τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα, ἐτελευτήθην: *end, finish, die.*

τοίνυν, inferential particle, postpositive: *therefore, then.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

533. I. 1. ταῦτ' οὖν οὐκ ἀξιοῦμεν. 2. τῑμᾶσθαι δ' ἠξίου. 3. ὡς ὁρᾶτε, σκηνοῦμεν ἐν τῇ τάξει.[1] 4. ἄλλοι

[1] *in our order.*

δέ τινες ἔλεξαν ὅτι εἰ βασιλεὺς ἐθέλοι ἐπὶ τὴν Κιλικίαν στρατεύειν, πορεύοιντο ἂν σὺν αὐτῷ.[1] 5. καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐσκήνου. 6. καὶ ἔχων τὰ χωρία πειρᾶται σκηνοῦν. 7. εἶπε δὲ Κῦρος ὅτι ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα[2] παύσηται τῆς στρατείας,[3] εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει τὸν στρατηγόν. 8. καὶ νῦν τοίνυν ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τοῦ πλήθους[4] εἶναι. 9. ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις. 10. καὶ ἠξίουν αὐτοὺς τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλεύειν. 11. εἶπε δ' ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέρᾱν τοῦ ποταμοῦ γένηται.[5] 12. εἰ δὲ δή ποτε Κῦρος πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλεῖστοι[6] μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι,[7] μετεπέμπετο τοὺς φίλους, ὡς δηλοίη οὓς τιμᾷ.

II. 13. καὶ σοὶ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω. 14. καὶ ὡς[8] ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ[9] δεδήλωται. 15. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους δέκα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται κακῶς σκηνοῦσιν. 16. δηλοῖ δὲ τοῖς φύλαξι πέντε μνᾶς ἀργυρίου καὶ θώρᾱκα χρῡσοῦν. 17. ἔλεξεν ὅτι οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν μισθὸν λάβοιεν ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Σάρδεις.

III. 1. Cyrus promised[10] to provide[11] a market as soon as[12] he should arrive at Sardis. 2. He kept demanding that these gifts should be sent[13] to the king.

---

[1] Note that **λέγουσιν** might be used for **ἔλεξαν** without affecting the following construction (§ 530. *a*).

[2] **ἐπειδή** (**ἐπειδάν**) **τάχιστα** = *as soon as.* [3] § 201. [4] § 355.

[5] The dependent clause might also read **ὃς . . . γένοιτο** (without **ἄν**).

[6] *very many men.* [7] § 156. 2. [8] *how.* [9] *the previous account.*

[10] Always compose complicated indirect discourse in the *direct form first.*

[11] Cp. § 526. I. 11 for construction after **ὑπισχνέομαι.**

[12] Cp. sentence 7 above. [13] Use acc. with inf.: *these gifts to be sent.*

LIV

DECLENSION OF CONTRACT PARTICIPLES. ὅπως WITH FUTURE INDICATIVE. VARIOUS IDIOMS

534. Learn the declension of *ποιῶν, τῑμῶν, δηλῶν* (§ 622 and *a*).

a. Similarly are declined *ζῶν living, νῑκῶν conquering, ὁρῶν seeing*, etc.

535. Object clauses introduced by ὅπως. — Verbs signifying *to strive for, to care for*, or *to effect*, may be followed by ὅπως (meaning *how*) with the future indicative, which is almost always retained even after a secondary tense. The negative is μή:

βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ he plans how he shall never again be in the power of his brother.

a. But such verbs are often followed by ὅπως or ὡς with the present or aorist subjunctive or (after a secondary tense) optative, like ordinary purpose clauses (§§ 243, 268):

διεπράξατο ὅπως εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσέλθοι he contrived how to enter into the fortification (*i.e.* that he might enter).

536. Worthy of special attention is the construction of **ἔχω with an adverb**:

καλῶς ἔχειν to be handsome *or* well;
κακῶς ἔχειν to be bad;
οὕτως ἔχειν to be thus *or* so;
ἄλλως ἔχειν to be otherwise.

537. Also noteworthy are the expressions: *κακῶς ποιεῖν to do ill to, to injure*, with the accusative; and its passive

κακῶς πάσχειν ὑπό τινος to be injured by anybody. Other adverbs like *εὖ well* may be similarly used with *ποιεῖν* and *πάσχειν*: *εὖ πάσχειν ὑπό τινος = to be treated kindly by anybody.*

ἱκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν he will be most competent both to benefit and to injure you.

538. Used in a different sense are:

κακῶς πρᾶττειν to fare badly (cp. examples, § 438);
εὖ or *καλῶς πρᾶττειν* to fare well.

539. VOCABULARY LIV

ἀθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *discouragement, despondency.*

ἄλλως (adv. of **ἄλλος**): *otherwise.*

ἀπ-άγω: *lead away, lead back.*

γε, enclitic particle, regularly following the emphatic word: *certainly, surely, at least.*

ἐξ-απατάω (**ἀπατάω** *deceive*, **ἀπατήσω, ἠπάτησα, ἠπάτηκα, ἠπάτημαι, ἠπατήθην**): *utterly deceive, cheat.*

ἐπι-μελέομαι, ἐπι-μελήσομαι, ἐπι-μεμέλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, dep. pass.: *take care of, care for*, with gen.

ἡττάομαι (**ἥττων**), **ἡττήσομαι, ἥττημαι, ἡττήθην**: *be inferior, be conquered.* Used as pass. of **νῑκάω.**

μή-ποτε: *never*; used like **μή** *not.*

Ξενοφῶν, ῶντος, ὁ: *Xenophon.* The word is declined like **τῑμῶν** (§ 622) in the masc. sing.

οἷος, ᾱ, ον, rel. pron.: *of what sort, what sort of, (such) as.* **οἷός τε**: *able*; **οἷόν τ' ἐστίν**: *it is possible.* Lat. *quālis.*

ὅπως, conj.. *how*, introducing an obj. clause, § 535. Cp. Vocabularies XXII, XXXIX.

ποιητέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **ποιέω**, with **ἐστί** or **εἰσί** expressed or understood): *necessary to be done, must be done.*

τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο (declined like **οὗτος**, § 171), dem. pron.: *of such a sort, such*; often understood or expressed as antecedent of **οἷος. τοιοῦτος οἷος** = *such as.* The neut. is also **τοιοῦτον** as well as **τοιοῦτο.** Lat. *tālis.*

φωνή, ῆς, ἡ (cp. **φα-, φησί**): *voice.* Mega-phone.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

540. I. 1. *βασιλεὺς νῑκῶν τυγχάνει.* 2. *οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἐθαύμαζον.* 3. *οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες*[1] *ὅ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται.* 4. *ἡμᾶς, τοὺς Ξενοφῶντος φίλους, κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται.* 5. *οἱ δ' ἀπήγαγον τὸν ἄνδρα διὰ τῆς ἀγορᾶς μάλα μεγάλῃ τῇ φωνῇ δηλοῦντα οἷα*[2] *ἔπασχεν.* 6. *σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν.* 7. *ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθῡμίᾱ ἦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὁρῶσι*[3] *μὲν τὸ εὖρος τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὁρῶσι*[3] *δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύσοντας.*[4] 8. *ἐφοβούμην μὴ Κῦρος ἐξαπατῴη ἡμᾶς· καὶ εἶχεν*[5] *οὕτως.* 9. *εἰ οὖν τις ἄλλο βέλτῑον ὁρᾷ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω.* 10. *ἡμῖν γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα*[6] *ὡς μήποτε ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα.* 11. *κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων*[7] *ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων.*[8] 12. *εὖ ἐπάθομεν ὑπ' ἐκείνου.*

II. 13. *τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ βαρβάρων Κῦρος ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολεμεῖν*[9] *ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν.* 14. *Ξενοφῶν δ' ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὐχ οἷόν τ' εἴη διώκειν τοὺς πολεμίους.* 15. *τῶν γὰρ νῑκώντων*[10] *ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν*[11] *σῴζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν.* 16. *οἱ δ' ἥρπαζον τὸ στρατόπεδον ὡς ἤδη πάντα νῑκῶντες.* 17. *ἀλλὰ δεῖ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως καλῶς νῑκῶντες σῳζώμεθα.* 18. *ὅτῳ*[12] *οὖν ταῦτα*

---

[1] Cp. § 405. I. 5.

[2] The antecedent is **τοιαῦτα** understood: *such things as, what sort of things.*

[3] A participle. [4] § 212. [5] Impers. [6] § 477.

[7] *our affairs.* [8] §§ 212, 355. [9] § 333.

[10] *it is the right of,* etc., § 229. [11] § 380. [12] § 228.

δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, λεξάτω ὡς τάχιστα. 19. τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων[1] πάντα ποιητέα ὅπως μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα.

III. 1. They evidently honor us. 2. They have been treated kindly by us. 3. We planned never, while living, to fall[2] into the power of the enemy.

LV

THE FUTURE AND AORIST OF LIQUID THEMES. SOME OTHER VERBS THAT CONTRACT IN THE FUTURE, INCLUDING VERBS IN *-ίζω*. UNREAL SUPPOSITIONS

541. Verbs whose themes end in a liquid (§ 27), like *φαίνω show* and *μένω remain*, use for the future tense suffix *ε%* and not *σ%*. As contraction results, the future of these verbs is like the present indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle of verbs in *-έω*. Learn the inflection of the future active and middle of *φαίνω* (§ 644), theme *φαν-*:

φανῶ, φανοίην, φανεῖν, φανῶν; φανοῦμαι, φανοίμην, φανεῖσθαι, φανούμενος.

φανῶν is declined like *ποιῶν* (§ 622).

542. Verbs with liquid themes form the first aorist with the suffix **α** instead of *σα*. At the same time they lengthen the theme vowel: *α* becomes *η*[3]; *ε* becomes *ει*; *ι* becomes *ῑ*; *υ* becomes *ῡ*:

φαίνω (theme *φαν-*), first aorist active *ἔφηνα*;
μένω (theme *μεν-*), first aorist *ἔμεινα*.

This first aorist is inflected like *ἔλῡσα*.

---

[1] *Quae cum ita sint.* [2] *become in the power of.*
[3] But **α** becomes **ᾱ** in the first aorist after **ι** or **ρ**.

Learn the inflection in the first aorist active and middle of *φαίνω* (§ 645):

ἔφηνα, φήνω, φήναιμι, φῆνον, φῆναι, φήνᾱς, -ᾶσα, -αν (declined like *ἀκούσᾱς*, § 209); *ἐφηνάμην, φήνωμαι, φηναίμην, φῆναι, φήνασθαι, φηνάμενος.*

543. Verbs in *-ίζω* of more than two syllables form their futures in *-ιέω, -ιέεις*, etc., with resulting contraction: *-ιῶ, -ιεῖς*, etc. These future forms are contracted like the futures of liquid themes (§ 644) or the presents of verbs in *-έω* (§ 643):

νομιῶ, νομιοίην, νομιεῖν, νομιῶν; νομιοῦμαι, νομιοίμην, νομιεῖσθαι, νομιούμενος; futures of *νομίζω think.*

ἀγωνιούμεθα, future of *ἀγωνίζομαι contend.*

544. Some verbs drop *σ* of the future suffix between two vowels and then contract. Thus the future of *καλέω call* is *καλῶ* (*i.e.* *καλέω* for *καλέσω*), which is inflected like *ποιῶ* (*ποιέω*, § 643). This means that the future indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle of *καλέω* are like the present of this same verb in the corresponding moods. Similarly the future of *μάχομαι fight* is *μαχοῦμαι* (*i.e.* *μαχέομαι* for *μαχέσομαι*), *μαχοίμην, μαχεῖσθαι, μαχούμενος.*

a. The future of *ἐλαύνω drive, ride* is *ἐλῶ* (*i.e.* *ἐλάω* for *ἐλάσω*), which is inflected like *τῑμάω* (§ 643).

545. Unreal (or contrary to fact) suppositions. — *εἰ* is used with the imperfect indicative to express an unreal supposition in *present* time; with the aorist indicative to express an unreal supposition in *past* time; the verb of the conclusion (apodosis) may be either the imperfect indicative with *ἄν*, representing *present* time, or the aorist indicative with *ἄν*, representing *past* time.

Therefore these conditions may be distinguished, in form, from simple present and past suppositions by the single fact that *ἄν* accompanies the conclusion:

εἰ ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἦσαν, κακῶς ἂν ἔπασχον if they were in the power of the enemy, they would be suffering harm;

εἰ ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, κακῶς ἂν ἔπαθον if they had got into the power of the enemy, they would have suffered harm;

εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ if you had not come, we should now be proceeding against the king.

546. When a supposition contrary to fact occurs in indirect discourse, neither the verb of the protasis nor that of the apodosis may be changed to the optative, even after a secondary tense. But the verb of the main clause (apodosis) must be changed to the infinitive or participle if the introductory verb requires the infinitive or participle; *ἄν* is always retained:

ἐνόμισαν εἰ ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, κακῶς ἂν παθεῖν they supposed that if they had got into the power of the enemy, they would have suffered harm.

547. VOCABULARY LV

ἀγγέλλω (for **ἀγγελ** + *γω*, theme **ἀγγελ-**), **ἀγγελῶ**, **ἤγγειλα**, **ἤγγελκα**, **ἤγγελμαι**, **ἠγγέλθην**: *announce, report*, with **ὅτι** or partic. in indir. disc. Cp. **ἄγγελος**.

ἀγωνίζομαι (theme **ἀγωνιδ-**), **ἀγωνιοῦμαι**, **ἠγωνισάμην**, **ἠγώνισμαι**: *contend* as in games, *struggle*. Cp. **ἀγών**. Agonize.

ἀδικέω (cp. **ἄδικος**), **ἀδικήσω**, **ἠδίκησα**, **ἠδίκηκα**, **ἠδίκημαι**, **ἠδικήθην**: *do wrong to, injure, be in the wrong*.

ἀπ-αγγέλλω: *bring back a message, report*.

ἀπο-κρίνομαι (mid. of **ἀπο-κρίνω**, see **κρίνω**): *give one's decision, answer, reply*, with **ὅτι** clause.

ἀπο-κτείνω (for **κτεν** + *γω*, theme **κτεν-**), **-κτενῶ**, **-ἔκτεινα**, **-ἔκτονα**: *put to death, slay, kill*. The pass. is supplied by **ἀποθνῄσκω**.

γιγνώσκω (reduplicated pres. from theme **γνο-**, with pres. suffix **σκ**/ε), **γνώσομαι**, 2 aor. to be learned later, **ἔγνωκα**, **ἔγνωσμαι**,[1] **ἐγνώσθην**[1]: *learn, know*, with **ὅτι** or partic. in indir. disc. Cp. Lat. (*g*)*nōscō*, *ī-gnōtus*, Eng. **know**.

[1] With *sigma* irregularly inserted.

ἐπι-σῖτίζομαι (theme **σῖτιδ-**), **-σῖτιοῦμαι, -εσῖτισάμην**: *get provisions* for oneself. Cp. **σῖτος**.

καλέω, καλῶ (fut.), **ἐκάλεσα** (with the final short vowel of the theme retained before the tense suffix), **κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην**: *call, summon, invite*. Cp. **ἐκ-κλησῖᾶ**.

κρῑ́νω (for **κριν** + *yω*, theme **κριν-**), **κρινῶ, ἔκρῑνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην**: *separate, judge, decide*. Cp. Lat. *cernō*. Critic.

μένω (themes **μεν-, μενη-**), **μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα**: *remain, wait for*. Cp. Lat. *maneō*.

παρ-αγγέλλω: *give directions to, direct, command*, with dat. of pers. or acc. of pers. and inf.

συγ-καλέω (**σύν** + **καλέω**): *call together*.

φαίνω (for **φαν** + *yω*, theme **φαν-**), **φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα** (*have appeared*), **πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην** (*was shown*) and **ἐφάνην** (*appeared*): *bring to light, show*; MID. and PASS. usually *appear*. In mid. and pass. the verb may take a supplementary partic. like **δῆλός ἐστι** (§ 449). **Phenomenon.**

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

548. I. 1. *ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρᾱς ἑπτά.* 2. *καὶ ἕως*[1] *μένομεν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ τόπῳ, σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν.* 3. *Κῦ́ρος ἤρετο τὸν Κῦ́ρον· Οἴει σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦ́ρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν;* 4. *καὶ Κῦ́ρος λέγεται ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ*[2] *τὸν ἄρχοντα.* 5. *ὁ δὲ συλλαμβάνει Κῦ́ρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν.*[3] 6. *ταῦτα δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν.* 7. *παρήγγειλε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἑκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας.*[4] 8. *ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμᾱ, ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα, ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφρᾱ́τῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι.* 9. *χρὴ οὖν ὑμᾶς διαβαίνειν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κῦ́ρῳ.* 10. *τότε ἔφηναν οἷα*[5]

---

[1] *while*, with present indicative of a definite present act.

[2] § 141.

[3] §§ 331, 332.

[4] Cp. § 324. I. 9.

[5] The antecedent is **τοιαῦτα** understood.

περὶ ὑμῶν ἐγίγνωσκον. 11. εἰ δὲ ἡγεμὼν μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανεῖται,[1] ἐρωτήσομεν αὐτοὶ ἥτις ἡ πάροδός ἐστιν. 12. οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησεν ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσα. 13. ὥρᾱ[2] δὲ βουλεύεσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. 14. ἐκάλεσέ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν.

II. 15. ἔπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν[3] τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτᾱς. 16. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἔκρῑνε τὸν Μένωνος στρατιώτην ἀδικεῖν. 17. ἀγορᾶν οὐδεὶς πώποτε παρέξει ἡμῖν, οὐδὲ ὅθεν[4] ἐπισῑτιούμεθα. 18. καὶ ἡμῖν[5] γ' ἂν ἡδέως ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρᾱ ἡμᾶς μένειν παρασκευαζομένους. 19. Κλέαρχος, ἐπεὶ ἐφάνη τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην. 20. ἤγγειλεν οὖν ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς μενεῖ.

III. 1. He will call the soldiers together[6] if no guides shall appear.[7] 2. We should have gone back if the guide had not shown[8] us this road.

LVI

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS: *ἵστημι, ἐπριάμην, ἔβην, ἀπ-έδρᾱν*

549. By "*μι*-verbs" are meant those whose present indicative, first person, singular, ends in **-μι**. Thus *ἵστημι I set* or *place; τίθημι I put; δίδωμι I give;* and *δείκνῡμι I show.*

---

[1] Cp. § 242. [2] § 230. [3] Fut.
[4] A place *from which.* [5] *for us.* [6] Cp. II. 15.
[7] Cp. I. 11. [8] Use **φαίνω**.

The essential difference between μι-verbs and ω-verbs is that μι-verbs lack the thematic vowel ε/ο used by ω-verbs before the personal endings in the present and second aorist tense systems. The thematic vowel ω/η is retained in the subjunctive, however. In other tense systems[1] μι-verbs and ω-verbs are inflected alike.

550. Learn the inflection of *ἵστημι* in the present system active and middle (= passive), in the second aorist active (§ 646), and in the second perfect active (§ 647). No second aorist middle of *ἵστημι* exists; and in its stead the second aorist *ἐπριάμην* (which has no present) *I bought* should be learned (§ 646).

551. *ἵστημι* is a reduplicated present, built on the theme *στα-* thus: *σι-στη-μι*. The initial *sigma* is dropped, and is represented by the rough breathing. The vowel of the theme is long (η) in the active voice in the following places: in the singular of the present and imperfect indicative; in the second person singular of the present imperative; and throughout the second aorist indicative, imperative (except the third person plural), and infinitive. In all other active forms of these tenses (present and second aorist), and in *all* middle forms of these tenses the theme vowel is short (α).

552. In the subjunctive α contracts with the thematic vowel ω/η:

$$\alpha + \omega = \omega.$$
$$\alpha + \eta = \eta.$$
$$\alpha + \eta = \eta.$$

[1] Except a few second perfects and pluperfects of the μι-form, like ἕστατον *they* (two) *stand*, ἕστασαν *they stood*.

553. Some ω-verbs have second aorists that are inflected like those of μι-verbs:

ἔβην I went (from βαίνω); subjv. βῶ; opt. βαίην; imv. βῆθι; inf. βῆναι; partic. βάς, βᾶσα, βάν.

ἀπ-έδρᾱν I ran away *by stealth*, ἀπέδρᾱς, ἀπέδρᾱ, etc. (from ἀποδιδρᾰ́σκω); subjv. ἀποδρῶ, ἀποδρᾷς, ἀποδρᾷ, etc.; opt. ἀποδραίην; imv. wanting; inf. ἀποδρᾶναι; partic. ἀποδράς, ᾶσα, άν.

554. Learn the declension of ἱστᾰ́ς and στᾰ́ς, which are declined alike (§ 617). Cp. ἀκούσᾱς (§ 209). Learn the declension of ἑστώς (§ 624).

555. MEANINGS OF THE TENSES AND VOICES OF ἵστημι
set OR *place* OR *stand*

	TRANSITIVE			INTRANSITIVE
	ACT.	MID.	PASS.	
Pres.	ἵστημι *I set*	ἵσταμαι *I set for myself*	ἵσταμαι *I am set* or *placed*	ἵσταμαι *I take my place*
Fut.	στήσω *I shall set*	στήσομαι *I shall set for myself*	σταθήσομαι *I shall be set* or *placed*	στήσομαι *I shall take my place*
Aor.	ἔστησα *I set* or *placed*	ἐστησάμην *I set* or *placed for myself*	ἐστάθην *I was set* or *placed*	ἔστην *I stood*
Pf.				ἕστηκα *I stand*
Plup.				εἱστήκη *I stood*
Fut. Pf.				ἑστήξω *I shall stand*

a. The transitive and intransitive tenses of compounds of ἵστημι are similarly distinguished.

556. VOCABULARY LVI

ἀναγκάζω (theme **ἀναγκαδ-**, cp. **ἀνάγκη**), **ἀναγκάσω**, **ἠνάγκασα**, **ἠνάγκακα**, **ἠνάγκασμαι**, **ἠναγκάσθην**: *compel, force.*

ἄνευ, prep. with gen. only: *without.*

ἀν-ίστημι: *make stand up, start up*; (intr.) *stand up.* For intr. tenses see § 555.

ἀντί, prep. with gen. only: *instead of, for.* In comp.: *against.* Anti-dote, etc.

ἀπο-διδρᾰ́σκω (**δι-δρᾰ́-σκω**, **δρᾰ́σομαι**, **ἔδρᾱν**, **δέδρᾱκα**): *run away* by stealth; *run away from*, with acc.

ἅρμα, ατος, τό: *chariot* for use in battle. See p. 252, Fig. 22.

βασιλείᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**βασιλεύω**): *kingdom.* Do not confuse this word with **βασίλεια, τά**, *royal buildings, palace* (§ 217).

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην (or **ἠδυνήθην**), dep. pass.: *be able.* Cp. **δύναμις.** **Dynast,** dynamite.

ἐπί-σταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην, dep. pass.: *understand.*

ἐπριάμην (2 aor.): *I bought.* No pres. from this verb.

ἱππικός, ή, όν (**ἵππος**): *of horse, of cavalry.*

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα and **ἔστην, ἕστηκα** and **ἕστᾰκα, ἐστάθην**: *set, place, make stand, halt*; intr. tenses: *stand, stand still, stop.* See § 555. Cp. Lat. *stō*, Eng. stand.

καθ-ίστημι: *set* or *place down, station*; intr. tenses: *be placed, stationed,* or *established*; *station oneself, take one's place.* For intr. tenses cp. **ἵστημι**, § 555.

κεφαλή, ῆς, ἡ: *head.* Cp. Lat. *caput.*

Λῠ́διος, ᾱ, ον (**Λῡδίᾱ**): *Lydian.*

ὄνος, ου, ὁ: *ass.* Lat. *asinus.*

Φρυγίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Phrygia.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

557. I. 1. ἐνταῦθα ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 2. καὶ οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου[1] οὐκέτι ἵστανται. 3. καὶ ἀνίστασαν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 4. φύλακας δὲ καθίστασαν. 5. Κῦρος δὲ ψῑλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. 6. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. 7. ἐπειρῶντο δ' ἀποδρᾶναι· καὶ οὗτος ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο.[2]

[1] *Ariaeus and his men.* [2] § 318.

8. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οὐ δύναιτο[1] ἐκ τῆς χώρᾶς ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλέως. 9. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος. 10. τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν διαβᾶς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίᾶς. 11. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε. 12. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασεν, ἔστησε τὸ ἅρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης.[2] 13. καὶ πρίασθαι τὸν σῖτον οὐκ ἦν[3] εἰ μὴ[4] ἐν τῇ Λῡδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ. 14. καὶ οἱ ὄνοι, ἐπεί τις διώκοι,[5] ἐπὶ πολὺ[6] δραμόντες ἔστασαν. 2nd pluperfect

II. 15. καὶ ἔμεινε πολὺν χρόνον ἑστώς. 16. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ἀρταξέρξης κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν, μετεπέμψατο Κῦρον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφόν. 17. ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός ἐστιν, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι. 18. τὰς δὲ ὄρνῑθας ἄν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ,[7] ἔστι[8] λαμβάνειν. 19. ἔχει δὲ Κῦρος δύναμιν καὶ τεχνὴν καὶ ἱππικήν, ἣν πάντες ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα.

III. 1. The soldiers cannot cross[9] this river without boats. 2. Cyrus after halting[10] his chariot took his place in the battle.

---

[1] § 438. *a.* [2] § 192. [3] *it was not possible.*
[4] *except.* [5] § 417. [6] *for a long distance.*
[7] § 399. [8] § 102. [9] 2 aor.
[10] *having halted.*

LVII

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS (*Continued*): *τίθημι*, *ἵημι*. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE

558. Learn the inflection of *τίθημι* in the present system active and middle (= passive), and in the second aorist, active and middle (§ 646).

559. *τίθημι* is a reduplicated present, built on the theme *θε-* (cp. § 551) thus: *τί-θη-μι*. The vowel of the theme is long (**η**) in the singular of the present indicative active, and in the first person singular of the imperfect indicative active. The second and third persons singular of the imperfect indicative active are formed like the corresponding persons of contract verbs in *-έω* thus: *ἐτίθεις*, *ἐτίθει*. Similarly the second person singular of the present imperative active is *τίθει*.

560. The second aorist indicative active of *τίθημι* is wanting in the singular number; its place is supplied by first aorist forms with the irregular suffix *-κα*, *-κας*, *-κε*. So the inflection of the aorist indicative active is as follows:

ἔθηκα ἔθηκας ἔθηκε(ν) } 1 Aor.		ἔθεμεν ἔθετε ἔθεσαν } 2 Aor.
	ἔθετον ἐθέτην	

561. Learn the inflection of *ἵημι* (§ 649), which is nearly like *τίθημι*. This is also a reduplicated present, from the theme *ἑ-*. The theme when augmented becomes *εἱ-*, which is its form in the second aorist (but see the paradigm below, § 562) and perfect tenses.

562. The second aorist indicative active, like that of *τίθημι*, is wanting in the singular; and these forms are supplied by an irregular first aorist in *-κα*, etc., as follows:

ἧκα ἧκας ἧκε(ν) } 1 Aor.	εἶτον εἵτην	εἷμεν εἶτε εἷσαν } 2 Aor.

563. Learn the declension of *τιθείς* and *θείς*, which are declined alike (§ 620). Similarly are declined *ἱείς* and *εἷς*. Cp. *λυθείς* (§ 388).

564. Deliberative subjunctive. — The subjunctive of the first person may be used in a deliberative question. The negative is *μή*.

ποῖ φύγω; whither shall I flee?
τί μὴ μένω τὸ τέλος; why shall I not wait for the end?

565. Such a subjunctive, in an indirect question, is retained after a primary tense of the verb of *asking*; but the subjunctive may be changed to the same tense of the optative if the sequence is secondary:

ἤρετο τὸν παῖδα εἰ παίσειεν αὐτόν he asked the boy whether he should strike him.

The direct question was *παίσω* (aor. subjv.) *αὐτόν; shall I strike him?*

566. Accusative absolute. — The participles of impersonal verbs may be used in the accusative singular neuter in an absolute construction (cp. the genitive absolute, § 401). The use is generally concessive (*although*):

ἐξὸν τοῖς βαρβάροις φίλους εἶναι, τοὺς Ἕλληνας αἱρήσονται though it is possible (*lit.* it being possible, cp. *ἔξ-εστι*) for them to be friends to the barbarians, they will choose the Greeks.

567. VOCABULARY LVII

ἀνδράποδον, ου, τό (**ἀνήρ** and **πούς**): *slave* taken in war.

ἀφ-ίημι: *let go away, dismiss.*

βάλλω (for **βαλ** + *yω*, themes **βαλ-, βλη-**), **βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην**: *throw, hurl, pelt.* Often with acc. of pers. and dat. of means.

εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ: *peace.* Irene.

ἐπι-τίθημι: *put* or *place upon; put* or *inflict* punishment (**δίκην**) *on* somebody (**τινί**); MID. *set oneself upon, attack,* with dat.

ἵημι, ἥσω, ἧκα and **εἶτον, εἶκα, εἷμαι, εἵθην**: *send, hurl* (with something, in dat.); MID. *hurl oneself, hasten.*

λίθος, ου, ὁ: *stone.* **Litho-graphy** (**γράφω**).

ποῖ; interr. adv.: *whither? where?*

συν-τίθημι: *place* or *set together*; MID. place oneself in agreement with somebody, *agree* with somebody (dat.), *make a compact.* May be followed by inf. of indir. disc.

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα and **ἔθετον, τέθηκα, ἐτέθην**: *put, set.* **τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: *set down one's arms, rest one's arms on the ground;* therefore (1) *take a military position, take one's post;* (2) *halt.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

568. I. 1. τοὺς δ' ὁπλίτᾱς θέσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὰ ὅπλα. 2. οἱ δ' ὁπλῖται ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα. 3. καὶ ἵενται πολλοὶ εἴσω καὶ νῑκῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους. 4. ἐπεὶ δ' εἶδον ἀλλήλους, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἵεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 5. καὶ ἀφίεσαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 6. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε πάντα τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀφεῖναι. 7. ὁ δὲ συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίᾱν[1] παρέσεσθαι[2] ἔχων σῖτία καὶ ποτά. 8. Κῦρος ἔφη ἐθέλειν[3] ἐπιθεῖναι τὴν[4] δίκην Ἀβροκόμᾳ. 9. οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν, δεδιὼς[5] μὴ λαβών με δίκην μοι ἐπιθῇ. 10. καὶ Ἀριαῖος κελεύει ὑμᾶς φυλάττεσθαι

---

[1] *on the morrow.*

[2] In dir. disc. **παρέσομαι** (§ 110. *a* and *c*).

[3] § 110. *a* and *c*.

[4] Cp. § 281. I. 2, footnote 1.

[5] *fearing;* from **δέδια** = **δέδοικα**, and declined like **ἑστώς** (§ 624).

μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς[1] οἱ βάρβαροι. 11. καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο αὐτοῖς οὐδεὶς οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφῡραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθεν. 12. ποῖ φύγωμεν; 13. οὐχ ἕξουσιν ὅποι φύγωσιν. 14. ἐξὸν εἰρήνην ἔχειν Κλέαρχος αἱρεῖται πολεμεῖν.

II. 15. ἐξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν, Κλέαρχος αἱρεῖται τούτοις εἰς[2] πόλεμον χρῆσθαι. 16. οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθεῖντο αὐτοῖς. 17. δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἀξιοῦν Κῦρον ἀφῑέναι ἡμᾶς. 18. πέμπωμεν ἄνδρας τινὰς ἢ πάντας; 19. ἐβουλεύοντο δὲ εἰ πέμποιεν ἄνδρας τινὰς ἢ πάντας. 20. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων βάρβαροι ἔβαλλον λίθοις τοὺς ἐπιτιθεμένους.

III. 1. Although it is possible for the general to inflict punishment on the slaves, he wishes to let them go. 2. The soldiers used to hurl their spears[3] a long way.[4]

---

[1] § 155. [2] *for, i.e.* to spend this *on*.
[3] §§ 141; 336. 5. [4] **μακρᾶν** (§ 142) agreeing with **ὁδόν** understood.

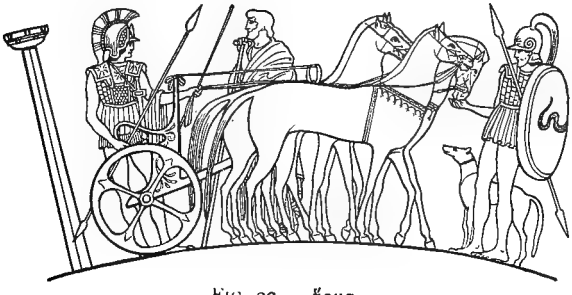

FIG. 22. — ἅρμα.

LVIII

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS (*Continued*): δίδωμι, ἐάλων OR ἤλων, ἔγνων

569. Learn the inflection of δίδωμι *give* in the present system active and middle (= passive) and in the second aorist, active and middle (§ 646).

570. δίδωμι is a reduplicated present, like ἵστημι and τίθημι, built on the theme δο- thus: δί-δω-μι. The vowel of the theme is long (ω) in the singular of the present indicative active. The singular of the imperfect indicative active is formed like the corresponding singular of a contract verb in -όω thus: ἐδίδουν, ἐδίδους, ἐδίδου. Similarly the second person singular of the present imperative active is δίδου.

571. The second aorist indicative active of δίδωμι is wanting in the singular number; its place is supplied by first aorist forms with the irregular suffix -κα, -κας, -κε (cp. ἔθηκα and ἧκα). So the inflection of the aorist indicative active is as follows:

ἔδωκα ἔδωκας ἔδωκε(ν)	1 Aor.	ἔδοτον ἐδότην	ἔδομεν ἔδοτε ἔδοσαν	2 Aor.

572. It is convenient to group together four irregular forms of the second aorist active imperative, in the second person singular: θές (τίθημι, § 646), ἕς (ἵημι, § 649), δός (δίδωμι, § 646), and σχές (ἔχω, 2 aor. ἔσχον). The last named resembles the other forms only in using -ς for -θι as the personal ending.

573. As mentioned before (§ 553), some ω-verbs have second aorists inflected like those of μι-verbs. Here are included the second aorists of *ἁλίσκομαι be captured*, and *γιγνώσκω know*. Following are the synopses:

	a.		*b.*
Indic.	ἑᾱλων or ἥλων		ἔγνων
Subjv.	ἁλῶ		γνῶ
Opt.	ἁλοίην		γνοίην
Imv.	wanting		γνῶθι
Inf.	ἁλῶναι		γνῶναι
Partic.	ἁλούς, ἁλοῦσα, ἁλόν		γνούς, γνοῦσα, γνόν
G.	ἁλόντος, ἁλούσης, ἁλόντος		γνόντος, γνούσης, γνόντος
	etc.		etc.

574. These two verbs (*ἁλίσκομαι* and *γιγνώσκω*), differing from *δίδωμι*, retain **ω** throughout the second aorist indicative, imperative (except the third person plural), and infinitive (cp., on the contrary, *ἔδοσαν*, *δότω*, etc.):

SECOND AORIST INDICATIVE OF γιγνώσκω

1. ἔγνων		ἔγνωμεν
2. ἔγνως	ἔγνωτον	ἔγνωτε
3. ἔγνω	ἐγνώτην	ἔγνωσαν

IMPERATIVE

2. γνῶθι	γνῶτον	γνῶτε
3. γνώτω	γνώτων	γνόντων

The subjunctive and optative are inflected like δῶ and *δοίην*.

575. Learn the declension of *διδούς* and *δούς*, which are declined alike (§ 621). Similarly are declined *ἁλούς* and *γνούς*.

576. VOCABULARY LVIII

ἁλ-ίσκομαι (themes **ἁλ-** and **ἁλο-**), **ἁλώσομαι, ἑάλων** or **ἥλων, ἑάλωκα** or **ἥλωκα**: *be taken, be captured.* Used as pass. of **αἱρέω**.

ἀπο-σῴζω: *save from* something; *bring safely back.*

βαρβαρικός, ή, όν (**βάρβαρος**): *foreign, barbarian, not Greek.* Barbaric.

δεξιός, ᾱ́, όν: *right, on the right hand* or *side.* **δεξιᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ** (supply **χείρ**): *the right hand,* as a *pledge.* Lat. *dexter.*

δια-βάλλω: *accuse falsely, slander.* Diabolic (**δια-βολικός**).

δια-δίδωμι: *give from hand to hand, distribute.*

δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα and **ἔδοτον, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην**: *give;* sometimes *offer* (in pres. and impf.). **δίκην διδόναι**: *give satisfaction, suffer punishment.* Cp. **δῶρον.** Lat. *dō, dōnum.*

ἐκ-λείπω: *leave out, abandon;* (intr.) *leave off, fail.* Eclipse.

λόγχη, ης, ἡ: *spear point, spear.*

παρα-δίδωμι: *give over, surrender; pass along* (a watchword: **σύνθημα**).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

577. I. 1. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ ἓξ μηνῶν[1] μισθόν. 2. καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι διὰ φιλίᾱν χρήματα πολλά. 3. φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστον δυναμένοις,[2] ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην. 4. συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα. 5. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος οὐκ ἔδωκε πιστά, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν. 6. ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἴη. 7. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἑάλω. 8. Κλέαρχος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ τῶν νῑκώντων[3] εἴη τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι. 9. ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου. 10. φοβοίμην

---

[1] § 278.

[2] *the most powerful.*

[3] *the part of,* etc.; cp. §§ 229, 232. I. 10, 540. II. 15.

δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ἕπεσθαι ᾧ[1] Κῦρος δοίη.[2] 11. ἐντεῦθεν διδόασιν οἱ μὲν Πέρσαι βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικήν. 12. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτῶμεν[3] Κῦρον.

II. 13. Συέννεσις ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς[4] τὴν στρατιάν. 14. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῃ ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν[5] ὅ τι βούλοιτο. 15. ταῦτα δὲ γνοὺς ἠτούμην βασιλέα δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι[6] ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 16. καὶ Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς. 17. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ οὐχ ἥλω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ. 18. καὶ μισθὸν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ σατράπης. 19. ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὥρᾱ[7] φύλακας καθιστάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι.

III. 1. Then the generals knew[8] that it was not safe to remain. 2. We gave pledges to the captains of the Greeks. 3. I should fear to embark[9] on the boats which Cyrus might give us.

---

[1] § 285.

[2] This relative clause has the construction of the protasis of a less vivid future condition (§ 267), the conclusion being expressed by **φοβοίμην ἄν**. In this sentence **ᾧ**, attracted from **ὅν** to the case of its antecedent **ἡγεμόνι**, is equivalent to **εἴ τινα**. The less vivid future type of the conditional relative protasis (introduced by **ὅς, ὅτε, ἐπεί**, etc.) is comparatively rare.

[3] § 244. [4] Cp. § 568. II. 15. [5] *permission to take.*

[6] *permission to bring* you *safely back.*

[7] § 230. [8] 2 aor. [9] **ἐμ-βαίνειν** with **εἰς** and acc.

FIG. 23. — λόγχη.

LIX

THE INFLECTION OF MI-VERBS (*Continued*): δείκνῡμι, ἔδῡν, κεῖμαι. WISHES

578. Learn the inflection of δείκνῡμι *show* in the present system active and middle (= passive), § 648.

579. The final vowel of the theme is long (ῡ) in the singular of the present and imperfect indicative active, and in the second person singular of the present imperative active.

580. This verb has a regular first aorist (ἔδειξα), but no second aorist. A second aorist of the μι-form, however, is seen in ἔδῡν from δύω *enter, set, sink* (used of the sun). Its second aorist synopsis is as follows:

Indic. ἔδῡν; subjv. δύω; opt. wanting; imv. δῦθι; inf. δῦναι; partic. δύς, δῦσα, δύν (gen. δύντος, δύσης, δύντος).

Learn the inflection of this second aorist (§ 648).

581. The subjunctive and optative of verbs in -ῡμι are formed exactly like the corresponding moods of ω-verbs, without contraction. And even in the other moods thematic forms (*i.e.* ω-forms) also occur. Thus δεικνύει is found along with δείκνῡσι; ἐδείκνυε with ἐδείκνῡ; and δεικνύων as well as δεικνύς.

582. Learn the declension of δεικνύς and δύς, which are declined alike (§ 619).

583. Learn the inflection of κεῖμαι *lie, be placed, be situated* (§ 654). This verb and its compounds are used as perfect passives of τίθημι *place* and its compounds.

584. Possible wishes. — Wishes that refer to future time are expressed by the present or aorist optative *without* ἄν. This optative is sometimes introduced by εἴθε or εἰ γάρ *if only, would that.* The negative is μή:

μὴ οἱ θεοὶ ταῦτα δοῖεν may the gods not grant this.
σῴζοισθε *or* εἴθε σῴζοισθε may you be saved.

585. Impossible wishes. — Wishes that cannot be realized refer to present or past time. They may be expressed by the imperfect indicative (of *present* time) or the aorist indicative (of *past* time); these tenses must be introduced by εἴθε or εἰ γάρ. The negative is μή:

εἴθε οἱ θεοὶ ταῦτα μὴ ἔδοσαν would that the gods had not granted this.

586. A wish that cannot be realized may also be expressed by ὤφελον, ες, ε (2 aor. of ὀφείλω *owe*), *I, you,* or *he ought* with the present or aorist infinitive:

ὤφελε Κῦρος ζῆν would that Cyrus were alive (*lit.* Cyrus ought to be living).

587. VOCABULARY LIX

ἀνα-παύω: *make cease*; MID. *rest.*

ἀπ-όλλῡμι (ὄλλῡμι for ὄλ-νῡ-μι, themes **ὀλ-**, **ὀλε-**; **ὀλῶ**, **ὤλεσα**, **ὀλώλεκα** [§ 447] and 2 pf. **ὄλωλα**, **ὠλόμην**): *destroy, lose*; MID. and 2 pf. act., *perish, be lost.*

αὐτοῦ (cp. **αὐτός**), adv.. *in the very place, here, there.*

δείκνῡμι (and **δεικνύω**, theme **δεικ-**), **δείξω**, **ἔδειξα**, **δέδειχα**, **δέδειγμαι**, **ἐδείχθην**: *show, point out.*

δέομαι, δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην, dep. pass.: *want, need*; *desire, ask, beg.* Often with gen. or with gen. of pers. and inf. Cp. **δεῖ**.

δῡ́ω (and **δῡ́νω**), **δῡ́σω**, **ἔδῡσα** (trans.), **ἔδῡν** (intr.), **δέδῡκα, δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην**: *enter, set* (used of the sun).

ἐπι-δείκνῡμι: *show, point out*; mid. in sense of act. and also *distinguish oneself.*

ἐπί-κειμαι: *lie upon, attack*, with dat.

ἥλιος, ου, ὁ: *sun.* **Helio-trope** (**τρέπω** *turn*).

κατά-κειμαι: *lie down.*

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι: *lie, lie outstretched* as the dead on the battlefield. This verb is used as the pass. of the pf. tenses of **τίθημι**, in the meaning *be placed, be set*. With **τὰ ὅπλα κεῖται** cp. the act. **θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**.

κοινός, ή, όν: *common, in common, general*.

Μῆδοι, ων, οἱ: the *Medes*.

μήν, postpositive adv.: *in truth, certainly*. **γε μήν**: *to be sure, at any rate*.

νεκρός, οῦ, ὁ: *dead body, corpse*. Cp. Lat. *necō*. Necro-logy (**λόγος** *account*).

ὄμ-νῡ-μι (and **ὀμ-νύω**, themes **ὀμ-**, **ὀμο-**), **ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα** (§ 447), **ὀμώμο(σ)μαι, ὠμό(σ)θην**: *swear, promise with an oath, take oath*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

588. I. 1. ὁ δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν λαβὼν Κύρῳ δείκνῡσιν. 2. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐδείκνυε πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ χρήματα. 3. τὰς δὲ κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. 4. ἦν οὖν τῆς ὥρᾱς[1] μῑκρὸν πρὸ δύντος ἡλίου. 5. Κῦρος δὲ τὸν θώρᾱκα ἐνέδῡ,[2] καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβεν. 6. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται ἡ βασιλέως γυνὴ φυγεῖν, ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. 7. ὤμνυτε δὲ ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους[3] καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομιεῖν.[4] 8. εἷς γε μὴν ἀρετὴν ἐπιδείκνυσθαι ἐβούλετο. 9. ἐκ δὲ τούτου[5] ἄλλοι ἀνίσταντο ἐπιδεικνύντες οἵᾱ εἴη[6] ἡ ἀπορίᾱ. 10. μὴ γενοίμεθα ζῶντες ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις. 11. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι εὐθὺς ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς. 12. Χειρίσοφος ἡγοῖτο. 13. πολλά μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο. 14. ἔκειντο δὲ πολλοὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.

II. 15. καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ

---

[1] *the time was*, lit. *it was of the hour*, part. gen. with the following words.

[2] *put on*, lit. *entered*, 2 aor. of **ἐν-δύω**.

[3] *the same men as friends*.

[4] § 519.

[5] *and thereupon*.

[6] § 345.

ἀπώλετο. 16. ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο. 17. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ. 18. κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν[1] ἀναπαύεσθαι. 19. ἕως δ' ἂν αὐτοῦ μένωμεν, πάντες δεόμεθα κοινῆς σωτηρίας· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἀπόλλυνται.

III. 1. We took oaths[2] not[3] to be enemies[4] to one another. 2. Many men lay prostrate on the plain after the battle. 3. They gladly show[5] their possessions to Cyrus.

LX

IRREGULAR MI-VERBS: εἶμι, φημί, οἶδα, AND εἰμί

(Completed and Reviewed)

589. Learn the inflection of εἶμι *I am going, I shall go* (§ 651); φημί *I say* (§ 652); and οἶδα *I know* (§ 655).

Review the inflection of εἰμί *I am* (§ 650).

590. VOCABULARY LX

ἀ-δύνατος, ον (δύναμαι): *impossible.*

ἄπ-ειμι (εἶμι): *go away; go back, return.*

δι-δά-σκω (theme **διδαχ-**), **διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδιδάχθην**: *teach.* Didactic.

εἶ-μι, impf. **ᾔα**: *go, shall go*; pres. serving as fut. of **ἔρχομαι**. Lat. *eō, īre.*

ἔξ-ειμι (εἶμι): *go out, go forth.*

ἔπ-ειμι (εἶμι): *go* or *come on, approach.*

θόρυβος, ου, ὁ: *noise.*

---

[1] § 566; this use of the acc. absolute is conditional, as is proved by **ὥσπερ** *just as if.*

[2] Use impf.

[3] § 519. *b.*

[4] Nom. (§ 110. *d*).

[5] Use **δείκνῡμι**.

κάμ-νω (theme **καμ-**), fut. **καμοῦμαι**, 2 aor. **ἔκαμον**, pf. **κέκμηκα**: *labor, be weary.*

κραυγή, ῆς, ἡ: *outcry.*

οἶδα (2 pf. with pres. meaning), **ᾔδη** (2 plup.) or **ᾔδειν**, **εἴσομαι** (fut.): *know.*

φέρω (themes **φερ-**, **οἰ-**, **ἐνεκ-**, **ἐνεγκ-**), **οἴσω, ἤνεγκα** or **ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην**: *bear, carry; carry away, receive* (as pay). Cp. Lat. *ferō.*

φη-μί (theme **φα-**), **φήσω, ἔφησα**: *say, declare.* **οὐ φημι** (cp. Lat. *negō*): *deny, say . . . not* (§ 156. 1. *a*). Cp. Lat. *fārī.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

591. I. 1. *οἶδα δεξιὰς δεδομένᾱς.*[1] 2. *αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι.* 3. *ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι.* 4. *ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι*[2] *κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους.* 5. *ἦν οὖν ἴητε σὺν ἡμῖν, δᾱρεικὸν ἕκαστος ὑμῶν οἴσει τοῦ*[3] *μηνός.*[4] 6. *σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν.* 7. *ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ.* 8. *καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἔφασαν οἴχεσθαι· ὅποι δέ, οὐκ ἔφασαν εἰδέναι.* 9. *τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι ἀδύνατον*[5] *διαβῆναι κωλῡόντων πολεμίων.* 10. *κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίᾱσιν.* 11. *ὅπως δὲ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω.* 12. *καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μένοιεν*[6] *ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.*

II. 13. *ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε*[7] *διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος.* 14. *ὅτῳ δὲ Μένων φαίη*[8] *φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ δῆλος ἐγίγνετο ἐπιβουλεύων.* 15. *τοὺς δ' ἀνθρώπους ἠρώτων εἴ τινα εἰδεῖεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν.*

---

[1] § 441. [2] § 442. [3] *each:* [4] § 155.
[5] §§ 223, 291. [6] §§ 363, 564, 565. [7] § 193. [8] § 417.

16. Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. 17. ἐγὼ τοίνυν, ὦ ἄνδρες, κάμνω ἤδη συσκευαζόμενος[1] καὶ τρέχων καὶ τὰ ὅπλα φέρων καὶ ἐν τάξει ἰὼν καὶ φυλακὰς[2] φυλάττων καὶ μαχόμενος. 18. ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι[3] οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξήεσαν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν.

III. 1. Clearchus deliberated whether they should send[4] some men[5] or should all go to the camp. 2. They said they did not know in what direction[6] the barbarians had gone.

---

[1] § 439. [2] § 181. [3] *at sunset* (cp. § 157).
[4] §§ 362, 564, 565. [5] Omit *men*. [6] ὅποι.

FIG. 24. — Sparta.

SELECTIONS FROM THE *ANABASIS*

[The following selections are from Xenophon's *Anabasis of Cyrus*. In places they are somewhat simplified, chiefly by the omission of unessential details.]

THE SUBJECT OF THE *ANABASIS*

Cyrus, a young and ambitious prince of Persia, plotted to wrest the throne from his elder brother Artaxerxes II, the reigning king (401 B.C.). So far as possible, he disguised his real purpose. But information of the plot was nevertheless laid before the Great King by his crafty satrap Tissaphernes.

Cyrus enlisted in his enterprise about thirteen thousand Greek soldiers, who were attracted by the desire to serve under so noble a leader and by the promise of large pay. The larger part of these assembled, under Cyrus's orders, at Sardis; and from this city they set forth in the spring of 401 B.C. Only after they had marched well into the interior were they informed of the real object of the expedition. Cyrus had also a host of Persians, said to have numbered a hundred thousand. They proved utterly unreliable. The leader of this "barbarian" force was the Persian Ariaeus.

The young prince was generous; he had persuasive manners and the enthusiasm of youth. He dazzled the common soldiers with his promises, and he commanded the loyalty of his officers by rich presents and favors. So he was able to win to his cause many really noble spirits among

both Persians and Greeks. Not a few of these, as the sequel showed, were ready to prove their devotion by sacrificing their lives. Of his Greek generals the most prominent was the Spartan Clearchus, a fearless and exceedingly stern disciplinarian. The other Greek generals were faithful and in their way good men, also; but exception must be made of the Thessalian Menon, who was faithless and unprincipled.

By the village of Cunaxa, near Babylon, Cyrus met the royal army, which was commanded by the king in person (late in the summer of 401 B.C.). Cyrus's force was outnumbered eight times over, if reliance may be placed on the figures that are mentioned. Yet the issue of the battle might have been favorable to Cyrus, owing to the valor and success of his Greek mercenaries, if only he had not risked his own life. He was slain. And the Greeks, far from wishing any pretext for staying longer in the Persian empire, had only the desire to get back to Greek lands again.

They accomplished their wearisome and dangerous retreat during the winter of 401–400 B.C., striking through the country northward over mountains and, for the most part, through wild and hostile tribes. But almost at the beginning of their retreat, before they had passed out of the reach of Persia, they lost the leadership of their generals, including the intrepid Clearchus. These were entrapped and put to death through the agency of Tissaphernes.

At this point Xenophon, the Athenian, the author of the history, put himself forward as a leader. He had previously accompanied the expedition merely as a gentleman in search of adventure. He was now elected a general and appointed to the difficult position of commander of the rear guard, while Cheirisophus was chosen

to command the van. And under this leadership the Greeks who have become known in history as "The Ten Thousand" came, with losses, to Trebizond, one of the Greek settlements on the Black Sea. After further adventures they arrived finally in Ionia again (Cheirisophus had meantime died).

Xenophon was the author of several interesting works besides the *Anabasis of Cyrus*. And in addition to his literary interests he was an ardent sportsman, fond of horses, dogs, and hunting. He has left us a description of his pleasant country-place in Elis, where later in life he settled to enjoy his good fortune, surrounded by his family. Here he engaged in the composition of his books and in the delights of country life.

I. *The Greek soldiers and the inducements to join Cyrus's army*

οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἦσαν οὐ σπάνει βίου ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφορᾶν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρᾱκότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας,

I. 1. **ἦσαν ἐκπεπλευκότες** (ἐκπλέω): *had sailed off* from their homes.

οὐ σπάνει βίου: *not on account of lack of means, not from lack of livelihood.* **σπάνει** is dative of cause (§ 403).

2. **ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφορᾶν**: *after this pay, i.e.* to earn money by service in Cyrus's army.

3. **ἀκούοντες**: expresses cause (§ 213).

οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ: see § 99; the words are appositives to **οἱ πλεῖστοι.**

ἄνδρας ἄγοντες: *bringing men along, i.e.* enlisting soldiers with the aid of the money that Cyrus furnished.

4. **προσανηλωκότες**: *having spent in addition* money of their own; see **προσανᾱλίσκω.**

5. **τούτων**: partitive genitive with **ἕτεροι** *others*,

οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἥξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. (vi. 4. 8.) ὁ δὲ Κῦρος στρατεύματι ἀληθινῷ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχᾶγοί, οἳ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς ὑπάρχειν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. (i. 9. 17.)

II. *Cyrus leads his army into the heart of the Persian empire before he meets serious resistance. The king's apparent unwillingness to fight throws the invaders off their guard*

ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κύρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ

---

6. **ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἥξοντες πάλιν**: *with the purpose of returning again* (§ 332) *after they had gained wealth for them.*

7. **τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ**: = τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ ἄλλους (§§ 67, 70), subject of **πράττειν**.

8. **πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν** (§ 110): *were making great fortunes.*

9. **ἀληθινῷ**: *trusty.*

ἐχρήσατο: *had the services of.*

11. **κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι** (§ 110): *it was more profitable.*

12. **τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος**: *monthly pay.*

II. 2. **εἴκοσι ποδῶν**: see § 278.

τὸ εὖρος: see § 279.

3. **ποιεῖ**: *had made.*

ἀντὶ ἐρύματος: *for a defense.*

4. **ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται**: *when he learned.* The present is frequently used by Xenophon when a past tense is required by good English style. **ποιεῖ** and **πυνθάνεται** are illustrations of the so-called "historical present."

προσελαύνοντα: see § 441.

παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεύς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σῑλᾱνὸν καλέσᾱς τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δᾱρεικοὺς τρισχῑλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ προθῡόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρῡσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλῡε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπί τε τοῦ ἅρματος

---

6. **ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**: see § 180.

7. **ὑποχωρούντων** · *retreating*, agrees with **ἵππων** and **ἀνθρώπων**.

8. **ἦσαν**: the subject is the neuter plural **ἴχνη**. This deviation from the rule (§ 71) occurs occasionally in the *Anabasis* and in other Greek.

9. **Ἀμπρακιώτην**: *Ambracian*, from the town Ambracia in Epirus.

11. **τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ** (§ 180): *on the eleventh day before, i.e.* (in our idiom) *ten days before*. The Greeks, like the Romans, counted in the days at both ends of the reckoning. With **ἀπ' ἐκείνης** supply *τῆς ἡμέρᾱς*.

12. **δέκα ἡμερῶν**: see § 155.

13. **Οὐκ ἄρα κτλ.**: the direct quotation is introduced by a capital letter (without quotation marks), § 2.

εἰ . . . οὐ μαχεῖται: this apparently irregular negative (§ 106. *b*) is used because Cyrus quotes the exact words of the soothsayer above (l. 12).

14. **ἐὰν ἀληθεύσῃς**: see § 241.

17. **ἐκώλῡε . . . διαβαίνειν**: see § 382. I. 1.

18. **ἔδοξε . . . ἀπ-εγνωκέναι** (from ἀπο-γιγνώσκω) **τοῦ μάχεσθαι**: *he seemed to have abandoned the idea of fighting.*

19. **ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον**: *more carelessly.*

καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων. (i. 7. 15–20.)

III. *The battle of Cunaxa, in which Cyrus encounters the Persian king and is slain*

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πατηγύας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόᾱ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος τὸν θώρᾱκα ἐνέδῡ καὶ ἀνα-

---

21. **καθήμενος**: *sitting*, participle of *κάθημαι*, which is inflected in § 653.

22. **τὸ δὲ πολύ**: supply *τοῦ στρατεύματος*.

αὐτῷ: *for him*, dative of disadvantage (§ 53. *d*).

23. The order of the Greek words rearranged for translation is: **πολλὰ τῶν ὅπλων ἤγετο** (*were carried*) **τοῖς στρατιώταις** (§ 53. *d*) **ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν καὶ ὑποζυγίων.**

III. 1. **ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν**: *about the time of full market*, the middle of the forenoon.

2. **σταθμός**: *stopping place* or *station* (cp. *ἵστημι*) is the meaning here.

κατα-λύειν: *to unyoke* the pack animals for the rest from the midday heat. **ἔμελλε** takes a present infinitive as well as the future (§ 156. 2).

3. **τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν**: partitive genitive. Cyrus had a devoted bodyguard.

4. **ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ**: *with his horse in a sweat*, properly a dative of means (§ 141).

5. **βαρβαρικῶς**: *in Persian.*

7. **ὡς . . . παρεσκευασμένος**: *apparently prepared.*

βὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρᾱτος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι ἕστησαν κατὰ μέσον τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ, ὡπλισμένοι θώρᾱξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψῑλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρᾱς καὶ οὔπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἡνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανίᾱ τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολύ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρᾱκες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται σὺν ποδήρεσι

---

12. **ἕκαστον**: *each*, in apposition to the subject of *καθίστασθαι*; *ordered them each to take his place.*

13. **τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρᾱτος** (§ 179): *the right wing.* For the declension of *κέρᾱτος* see § 602.

14. **πρός**: *beside.*

15. **ἐχόμενος**: *next.*

17. **ὅσον**: *about.*

20. **ψῑλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλήν**: *with his head unprotected* by a helmet. But Cyrus doubtless wore the tiāra, the usual Persian headdress, which was a sort of turban.

22. **δείλη**: *early afternoon.*

23. **ἐφάνη**: *appeared*, 2 aor. pass. of *φαίνω*.

χρόνῳ (§ 410) **συχνῷ ὕστερον**: *a considerable time later.*

24. **ἐπὶ πολύ**: *over a long distance.*

29. **γερροφόροι**: supply **ἦσαν**.

ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ

FIG. 25. — δρεπανηφόρον ἅρμα.

ἔθνη ἐπορεύοντο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῇσαν. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾱ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νῑκῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίηται. ἀλλ' ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβού-

31. ἄλλοι: *besides*, lit. *other*. Observe the omission of a conjunction before the second ἄλλοι; this is due to a desire for a vivid and concise style at this point.

κατὰ ἔθνη: *nation by nation*.

32. ἅρματα: supply ἦν.

διαλείποντα συχνόν: *distant a considerable space*.

33. τὰ . . . καλούμενα: *the so-called scythe-bearing* chariots.

34. ἐν ἴσῳ: *in step*.

37. κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων: *against the center of the enemy*.

38. εἴη: this causal clause introduced by ὅτι *because* is really a subordinate clause in indirect dis-

μενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προῄει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνε-
45 τάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἴς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσᾱς ὡς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγ-
50 γέλλοι. ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσᾱς εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλά. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἴη. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ Κῦρος ἐθαύ-

course, representing the thought of Cyrus; therefore the optative εἴη replaces the indicative (§ 530).

κᾆν . . . νῑκῶμεν: protasis of the more vivid future condition; the apodosis is emphatically expressed as already accomplished, πεποίηται. πάνθ' is for πάντα (§§ 29, 31). For ἡμῖν see § 458.

41. μὴ κυκλωθείη: see § 438. *a.*

42. ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι (§ 260) ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι (§ 535. *a*): *that he was taking care that all should be well*; lit. *that it was a care to him how it should be well.*

44. ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον: *remaining in the same place*; μένον is a pres. partic. neut. agreeing with στράτευμα.

συν-ετάττετο: *was forming in line.*

46. οὐ πάνυ πρός: *not very near to.*

49. πελάσᾱς ὡς συναντῆσαι: *approaching so as to meet him.*

50. ἐπιστήσᾱς: supply τὸν ἵππον.

51. τὰ ἱερά: *the* usual or ordinary *sacrifices*; τὰ σφάγια: *the propitiatory offerings*, an extraordinary service for the occasion. Supply εἴη (§§ 260, 291) in the predicate.

52. θορύβου: object of ἤκουσε, which sometimes takes the *thing heard* in the genitive.

53. εἴη: see § 345.

54. παρέρχεται: might have been changed to what form? § 260.

μασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσᾱς Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὑτοῦ χώρᾱν ἀπήλαυνε. καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο πάντες οἷον τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον· λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἕπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἅρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, διίσταντο·

---

56. **Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη**: *Zeus savior and victory*, the "watch-word."

57. **Ἀλλὰ δέχομαι**: *Well, I accept it.*

58. **εἰς τὴν αὑτοῦ χώρᾱν**: *to his own place.*

59. **στάδια**: see § 142.

δι-ειχέτην: impf. dual 3 pers. of **δι-έχω**: *were separated.*

61. **ἤρχοντο**: from ἄρχομαι *begin.*

ἀντίοι: *to meet*; lit. *face to face*; this adjective takes a dative.

62. **οἷον**: *what sort of shout, i.e. the cry which.*

Ἐνυαλίῳ: *Enyalius*, a name of Ares, god of war.

63. **ταῖς ἀσπίσι**: see § 141.

64. **τοῖς ἵπποις**: see § 53. *d.*

65. **πρὶν . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι**: see § 524.

ἐκκλίνουσιν: historical present. See note on p. 266, l. 4.

66. **κατὰ κράτος**: cp. ἀνὰ κράτος, § 443.

67. **θεῖν δρόμῳ** (§ 141): *to charge on the run.*

68. **τὰ μέν . . τὰ δέ**: § 99.

70. **κενὰ ἡνιόχων**: *empty of charioteers.*

ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν: *whenever they saw them in front* (§ 417).

ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἱπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο. Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νῑκῶντας τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειρᾱμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὑτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρᾱτος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσᾱς μὴ

71. **ἔστι δ' ὅστις**: *and a man,* or *and somebody*; lit. *there is who.*

72. **οὐδὲν . . . οὐδέ**: only one of these negatives can be translated into English (§ 428).

οὐδέ: *not even.*

73. **οὐδ' . . . οὐδεὶς οὐδέν**: one negative in English (§ 428).

74. **τοξευθῆναι**: see § 391.

75. **ὁρῶν**: *although he saw* (§ 213. *c*).

76. **ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος**: in the same construction as **ὁρῶν**.

77. **οὐδ' ὡς**: *not even so, not even under these circumstances.*

78. **διώκειν**: complementary infinitive.

συν-εσπειρᾱμένην: from *συσπειράομαι.* The six hundred horsemen were Cyrus's bodyguard.

79. **ἐπ-εμελεῖτο**: *watched to see.*

80. **ἔχων**: *although he occupied* (§ 213. *c*); the concessive force is clearly indicated by the following *ὅμως nevertheless.*

82. **κέρᾱτος**: for the construction see § 372.

ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου: *from the opposing line.*

αὐτῷ: see § 317.

83. **τοῖς τεταγμένοις**: in the same construction as **αὐτῷ**.

αὐτοῦ: to be taken with **ἔμπροσθεν**.

84. **ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν**: *apparently for encircling* the army of Cyrus, *i.e. for a flank march.*

ὄπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νῑκᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχῑλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κῦρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέᾱ καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στῖφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ ἵετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρᾱκος. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐμάχοντο καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου. Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. (i. 8. 1–27.)

---

85. **κατα-κόψῃ**: see § 438. *a.*

86. **ἀντίος**: *to meet* him. Cp. p. 272, l. 61.

88. **τοὺς ἑξακισχῑλίους**: the king's own body-guard.

89. **ὡς**: *when.*

91. **εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες**: *hastening to the pursuit.*

92. **σχεδόν**: *chiefly.*

93. **καλούμενοι**: *so-called.*

94. **ἠν-έσχετο**: *restrained himself* (ἀν-έχω), remarkable for the double augment.

95. **Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ**: direct quotation.

παίει: supply *αὐτόν, i.e.* the king.

97. **ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμόν**: the accusative here follows *ὑπό* because the verb *ἀκοντίζει* implies motion.

IV. *Discouragement of the soldiers after their generals had been treacherously removed by Tissaphernes.* (*Xenophon had not yet been elected general*)

ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμιαι ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπεῖχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μεῖον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμὼν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διεῖργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἱππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὔδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη· ταῦτ' ἐννοούμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως

IV. 1. **συν-ειλημμένοι ἦσαν**: see συλλαμβάνω.

3. **θύραις**: *doors*, a Persian expression, somewhat like our *court*. The meaning here is, however, *in the heart of the king's country*.

κύκλῳ: *in a circle, surrounding* them (§ 141).

5. **παρ-έξειν**: regular construction with **ἔμελλεν** (§ 156. 2) *was likely*.

τῆς Ἑλλάδος: genitive of separation (§ 201).

7. **τῆς οἴκαδε** (§ 70) **ὁδοῦ**: *the homeward way*.

8. **προυδεδώκεσαν**: pluperfect of προ-δίδωμι, contracted from προεδεδώκεσαν. πρό and περί never suffer elision.

οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι: the barbarian troops of Cyrus under the command of Ariaeus fled after the battle of Cunaxa and were no longer allied with the Greeks.

10. **σύμμαχον**: appositive to **ἱππέᾱ**.

νῑκῶντες: conditional participle (§ 213. *c*), *if they should conquer*.

11. **οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν**: see § 266.

ἡττηθέντων αὐτῶν: genitive absolute (§ 401) expressing a condition.

12. **ἀθύμως ἔχοντες**: *being discouraged*.

ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν σίτου ἐγεύσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὅπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανεν ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς οὔποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. (iii. 1. 2–3.)

V. *Under the command of Xenophon and Cheirisophus the survivors of the "Ten Thousand" march on, until, from a mountain in northern Armenia, they get a glimpse of the Euxine (Black) Sea*

ἐντεῦθεν ἦλθον πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ

---

13. **εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν**: *into the evening, at evening.*

σίτου: partitive genitive with ἐγεύσαντο.

15. **ταύτην τὴν νύκτα**: see § 142.

16. **ὑπὸ λύπης**: *from grief.*

17. **πόθου πατρίδων κτλ.**. *and from desire of fatherlands, etc.* **πατρίδων** is called an "objective" genitive, for it represents the object of the verbal idea contained in the noun πόθος *desire*.

18. **ὄψεσθαι**: infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 110. *c*); see ὁράω.

V. 4. **ὅπως . . . ἄγοι**: on the purpose clause see § 268; the historical present **πέμπει** is a secondary tense, because it really refers to past time.

5. **πέντε ἡμερῶν**: see § 155.

7. **τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ**: see § 180.

τῷ ὄρει: see § 119.

οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾠήθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολεμίους· ἐπειδὴ δ' ἡ βοὴ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀεὶ βοῶντας καὶ πολλῷ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἡ βοή, ἐδόκει δὴ μεῖζόν τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀναλαβὼν ἐβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοώντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν Θάλαττα θάλαττα. ἔνθα δὴ ἔθεον πάντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς δακρύοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. (iv. 7. 19–25.)

VI. *At the Euxine Sea the Greeks rest and celebrate their safe arrival with athletic games*

Καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ. ἐνταῦθα

---

10. **οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες**: supply ἀκούσαντες.

ἄλλους πολεμίους: *other enemies*, for they knew from experience that they had enemies in the rear.

12. **ἀεί**: *continually, in succession.*

13. **πολλῷ** (§ 410) **μείζων**: *much louder.*

14. **ἐδόκει δὴ μεῖζόν τι εἶναι**: *it seemed to be something of more than ordinary importance.*

15. **Λύκιον**: *Lycius* was the commander of the cavalry.

16. **ἀκούουσι . . . τῶν στρατιωτῶν**: the genitive of the person is common after the verb of hearing.

17. **Θάλαττα θάλαττα**: the very words that were shouted.

20. **περι-έβαλλον**: *embraced.* On περί see p. 275, l. 8, προυδεδώκεσαν.

VI. 1. **Τραπεζοῦντα**: modern Trebizond.

ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς ἀμφὶ τᾱ̀ς τριᾰ́κοντα. ἀγορᾶν δὲ παρεῖχον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ξένια ἔδοσαν βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ οἶνον. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίᾱν ἣν εὔξαντο παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ σωτήρια καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ εὔξαντο. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. εἵλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιᾱ́την δρόμου τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσίᾱ ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκὼς εἴη. ὁ δὲ δείξᾱς οὗπερ ἑστηκότες ἐτύγχανον Οὗτος ὁ λόφος, ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἄν τις βούληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ

---

3. **ἀμφὶ τᾱ̀ς τριᾰ́κοντα**: see § 427.

5. **ξένια**: *as guest gifts* (gifts in token of hospitality), appositive to *βοῦς*, etc.

6. **τὴν θυσίᾱν ἣν εὔξαντο**: *the sacrifice which they had vowed.* The Greeks had vowed (iii. 2. 9), at the proposal of Xenophon, to make sacrifices to Zeus the Savior as soon as they should arrive in a friendly land; they had also vowed to sacrifice to the other gods according to their ability.

7. **ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι**: *enough oxen to sacrifice* in payment (ἀπο-) of their vow.

8. **Διί**: dative of Ζεύς (§ 606. 2).

σωτήρια: *thank-offerings for safety*; **ἡγεμόσυνα**: *thank-offerings for good guidance*; with both words supply **ἱερά**: *victims, offerings* (lit. *sacred* things).

Ἡρακλεῖ: for declension see § 603.

11. **ἐπιμεληθῆναι**: expresses purpose after **εἵλοντο** *chose* (§ 334).

13. **τὰ δέρματα**: these were to serve as prizes for the victors in the contests. Such prizes are alluded to as early as Homer (*Iliad* XXII. 159).

15. **ἑστηκότες**: see § 215.

16. **τρέχειν**: limits **κάλλιστος**: *fairest for running* (§ 333).

17. **ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως**: *in a place so rough and thickly wooded.*

δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε, Μᾶλλόν τι ἀνιᾶσεται ὁ καταπεσών. ἠγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν στάδιον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλεῖστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρῆτες πλείους ἢ ἑξήκοντα ἔθεον, πάλην δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον ἠγωνίζοντο· καὶ καλὴ θέᾳ ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέβησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων τῶν ἑταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγίγνετο. (iv. 8. 22–27.)

---

18. **Μᾶλλόν τι κτλ.**: *all the more hurt will be the one that falls down.*

19. **ἠγωνίζοντο . . . στάδιον**: the latter word is cognate accusative (§ 181), *contended* [*in*] *the stadium*, a race of six hundred Greek feet.

20. **δόλιχον**: *long foot-race*, cognate accusative with ἔθεον. This consisted of covering the length of the stadium several times (6, 12, 20, or 24).

21. **πάλην κτλ.**: cognate accusatives with ἠγωνίζοντο *contended in wrestling and boxing and the pancratium.* The last named was a very severe, rough-and-tumble fight, consisting partly of wrestling and partly of boxing.

23. **κατέβησαν**. *entered* the competition.

θεωμένων τῶν ἑταίρων: genitive absolute; the *causal* force is distinctly marked by the word ἅτε, which may be rendered *inasmuch as* or *since.*

SUMMARY OF FORMS

For the use of -ν movable see § 32.

Ā-DECLENSION, OR FIRST DECLENSION

592. FEMININE

Sing. N.	ἀρχή, ἡ, *rule*	χώρᾱ, ἡ, *country*	γέφῡρα, ἡ, *bridge*	θάλαττα, ἡ, *sea*
G.	ἀρχῆς	χώρᾱς	γεφῡ́ρᾱς	θαλάττης
D.	ἀρχῇ	χώρᾳ	γεφῡ́ρᾳ	θαλάττῃ
A.	ἀρχήν	χώρᾱν	γέφῡραν	θάλατταν
V.	ἀρχή	χώρᾱ	γέφῡρα	θάλαττα
Dual N. A. V.	ἀρχᾱ́	χώρᾱ	γεφῡ́ρᾱ	θαλάττᾱ
G. D.	ἀρχαῖν	χώραιν	γεφῡ́ραιν	θαλάτταιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀρχαί	χῶραι	γέφῡραι	θάλατται
G.	ἀρχῶν	χωρῶν	γεφῡρῶν	θαλαττῶν
D.	ἀρχαῖς	χώραις	γεφῡ́ραις	θαλάτταις
A.	ἀρχᾱ́ς	χώρᾱς	γεφῡ́ρᾱς	θαλάττᾱς

593. MASCULINE

Sing. N.	στρατιώτης, ὁ, *soldier*	νεᾱνίᾱς, ὁ, *young man*
G.	στρατιώτου	νεᾱνίου
D.	στρατιώτῃ	νεᾱνίᾳ
A.	στρατιώτην	νεᾱνίᾱν
V.	στρατιῶτα	νεᾱνίᾱ
Dual N. A. V.	στρατιώτᾱ	νεᾱνίᾱ
G. D.	στρατιώταιν	νεᾱνίαιν
Plur. N. V.	στρατιῶται	νεᾱνίαι
G.	στρατιωτῶν	νεᾱνιῶν
D.	στρατιώταις	νεᾱνίαις
A.	στρατιώτᾱς	νεᾱνίᾱς

594. CONTRACT NOUNS

Sing. N.	(μνάᾱ)	μνᾶ, ἡ, *mina*	(γέᾱ)	γῆ, ἡ, *land*
G.	(μνάᾱς)	μνᾶς	(γέᾱς)	γῆς
D.	(μνάᾳ)	μνᾷ	(γέᾳ)	γῇ
A.	(μνάᾱν)	μνᾶν	(γέᾱν)	γῆν
V.	(μνάᾱ)	μνᾶ	(γέᾱ)	γῆ
Dual N. A. V.	(μνάᾱ)	μνᾶ		
G. D.	(μνάαιν)	μναῖν		
Plur. N. V.	(μνάαι)	μναῖ		
G.	(μναῶν)	μνῶν		
D.	(μνάαις)	μναῖς		
A.	(μνάᾱς)	μνᾶς		

O-DECLENSION, OR SECOND DECLENSION

595.

Sing. N.	ἄνθρωπος, ὁ, *man*	ὁδός, ἡ, *road*	πλοῖον, τό, *boat*
G.	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	πλοίου
D.	ἀνθρώπῳ	ὁδῷ	πλοίῳ
A.	ἄνθρωπον	ὁδόν	πλοῖον
V.	ἄνθρωπε	ὁδέ	πλοῖον
Dual N. A. V.	ἀνθρώπω	ὁδώ	πλοίω
G. D.	ἀνθρώποιν	ὁδοῖν	πλοίοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἄνθρωποι	ὁδοί	πλοῖα
G.	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδῶν	πλοίων
D.	ἀνθρώποις	ὁδοῖς	πλοίοις
A.	ἀνθρώπους	ὁδούς	πλοῖα

596. CONTRACT NOUN

	Singular		Dual		Plural	
N.	(νόος)	νοῦς, ὁ, *mind*	N. A. V.	(νόω) νώ	N. V.	(νόοι) νοῖ
G.	(νόου)	νοῦ	G. D.	(νόοιν) νοῖν	G.	(νόων) νῶν
D.	(νόῳ)	νῷ			D.	(νόοις) νοῖς
A.	(νόον)	νοῦν			A.	(νόους) νοῦς
V.	(νόε)	νοῦ				

CONSONANT DECLENSION, OR THIRD DECLENSION

597.

Sing. N. V.	κῆρυξ, ὁ, *herald*	φάλαγξ, ἡ, *phalanx*	διῶρυξ, ἡ, *ditch*	κλώψ, ὁ, *thief*
G.	κήρῡκος	φάλαγγος	διώρυχος	κλωπός
D.	κήρῡκι	φάλαγγι	διώρυχι	κλωπί
A.	κήρῡκα	φάλαγγα	διώρυχα	κλῶπα
Dual N. A. V.	κήρῡκε	φάλαγγε	διώρυχε	κλῶπε
G. D.	κηρῡ́κοιν	φαλάγγοιν	διωρύχοιν	κλωποῖν
Plur. N. V.	κήρῡκες	φάλαγγες	διώρυχες	κλῶπες
G.	κηρῡ́κων	φαλάγγων	διωρύχων	κλωπῶν
D.	κήρῡξι	φάλαγξι	διώρυξι	κλωψί
A.	κήρῡκας	φάλαγγας	διώρυχας	κλῶπας

598.

Sing. N. V.	ἀσπίς, ἡ, *shield*	πούς, ὁ, *foot*	νύξ, ἡ, *night*	ἄρχων, ὁ, *ruler*
G.	ἀσπίδος	ποδός	νυκτός	ἄρχοντος
D.	ἀσπίδι	ποδί	νυκτί	ἄρχοντι
A.	ἀσπίδα	πόδα	νύκτα	ἄρχοντα
Dual N. A. V.	ἀσπίδε	πόδε	νύκτε	ἄρχοντε
G. D.	ἀσπίδοιν	ποδοῖν	νυκτοῖν	ἀρχόντοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀσπίδες	πόδες	νύκτες	ἄρχοντες
G.	ἀσπίδων	ποδῶν	νυκτῶν	ἀρχόντων
D.	ἀσπίσι	ποσί	νυξί	ἄρχουσι
A.	ἀσπίδας	πόδας	νύκτας	ἄρχοντας

Sing. N. V.	χάρις, ἡ, *favor*	στράτευμα, τό, *army*
G.	χάριτος	στρατεύματος
D.	χάριτι	στρατεύματι
A.	χάριν	στράτευμα
Dual N. A. V.	χάριτε	στρατεύματε
G. D.	χαρίτοιν	στρατευμάτοιν
Plur. N. V.	χάριτες	στρατεύματα
G.	χαρίτων	στρατευμάτων
D.	χάρισι	στρατεύμασι
A.	χάριτας	στρατεύματα

599.

Sing. N. V.	ἀγών, ὁ, *contest*	ἡγεμών, ὁ, *guide*	μήν, ὁ, *month*	λιμήν, ὁ, *harbor*
G.	ἀγῶνος	ἡγεμόνος	μηνός	λιμένος
D.	ἀγῶνι	ἡγημάνι	μηνί	λιμένι
A.	ἀγῶνα	ἡγεμόνα	μῆνα	λιμένα
Dual N. A. V.	ἀγῶνε	ἡγεμόνε	μῆνε	λιμένε
G. D.	ἀγώνοιν	ἡγεμόνοιν	μηνοῖν	λιμένοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀγῶνες	ἡγεμόνες	μῆνες	λιμένες
G.	ἀγώνων	ἡγεμόνων	μηνῶν	λιμένων
D.	ἀγῶσι	ἡγεμόσι	μησί	λιμέσι
A.	ἀγῶνας	ἡγεμόνας	μῆνας	λιμένας

Sing. N.	γείτων, ὁ, *neighbor*	κρᾱτήρ, ὁ, *mixing-bowl*
G.	γείτονος	κρᾱτῆρος
D.	γείτονι	κρᾱτῆρι
A.	γείτονα	κρᾱτῆρα
V.	γεῖτον	κρᾱτήρ
Dual N. A. V.	γείτονε	κρᾱτῆρε
G. D.	γειτόνοιν	κρᾱτήροιν
Plur. N. V.	γείτονες	κρᾱτῆρες
G.	γειτόνων	κρᾱτήρων
D.	γείτοσι	κρᾱτῆρσι
A.	γείτονας	κρᾱτῆρας

600.

Sing. N.	πατήρ, ὁ, *father*	μήτηρ, ἡ, *mother*	θυγάτηρ, ἡ, *daughter*	ἀνήρ, ὁ, *man*
G.	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός	ἀνδρός
D.	πατρί	μητρί	θυγατρί	ἀνδρί
A.	πατέρα	μητέρα	θυγατέρα	ἄνδρα
V.	πάτερ	μῆτερ	θύγατερ	ἄνερ
Dual N. A. V.	πατέρε	μητέρε	θυγατέρε	ἄνδρε
G. D.	πατέροιν	μητέροιν	θυγατέροιν	ἀνδροῖν
Plur. N. V.	πατέρες	μητέρες	θυγατέρες	ἄνδρες
G.	πατέρων	μητέρων	θυγατέρων	ἀνδρῶν
D.	πατράσι	μητράσι	θυγατράσι	ἀνδράσι
A.	πατέρας	μητέρας	θυγατέρας	ἄνδρας

601.

Sing. N.	ὄρος,[1] τό, *mountain*		τριήρης,[1] ἡ, *trireme*	
G.	(ὄρε-ος)	ὄρους	(τριήρε-ος)	τριήρους
D.	(ὄρε-ϊ)	ὄρει	(τριήρε-ϊ)	τριήρει
A.		ὄρος	(τριήρε-α)	τριήρη
V.		ὄρος		τριῆρες
Dual N. A. V.	(ὄρε-ε)	ὄρει	(τριήρε-ε)	τριήρει
G. D.	(ὀρέ-οιν)	ὀροῖν	(τριηρέ-οιν)	τριήροιν
Plur. N. V.	(ὄρε-α)	ὄρη	(τριήρε-ες)	τριήρεις
G.	(ὀρέ-ων)	ὀρέων or ὀρῶν	(τριηρέ-ων)	τριήρων
D.		ὄρεσι		τριήρεσι
A.	(ὄρε-α)	ὄρη		τριήρεις

Sing. N.	Σωκράτης,[1] ὁ, *Socrates*	
G.	(Σωκράτε-ος)	Σωκράτους
D.	(Σωκράτε-ϊ)	Σωκράτει
A.	(Σωκράτε-α)	Σωκράτη
V.	Σώκρατες	

602. *κέρας, τό, horn, wing* of an army, has two stems *κερασ-* and *κερᾱτ-* and a double declension:

	Stem κερᾱτ-	Stem κερασ-	
Sing. N. A.		κέρας,[1] τό, *horn, wing*	
G.	κέρᾱτ-ος	(κέρα-ος)	κέρως
D.	κέρᾱτ-ι	(κέρα-ϊ)	κέρᾳ
Dual N. A.	κέρᾱτ-ε	(κέρα-ε)	κέρᾱ
G. D.	κερᾰ́τ-οιν	(κερά-οιν)	κερῷν
Plur. N. A.	κέρᾱτ-α	(κέρα-α)	κέρᾱ
G.	κερᾰ́τ-ων		
D.	κέρᾱσι		

603.

Sing. N.	(Ἡρακλέης)	Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ, *Heracles*
G.	(Ἡρακλέε-ος)	Ἡρακλέους
D.	(Ἡρακλέε-ϊ)	Ἡρακλεῖ
A.	(Ἡρακλέε-α)	Ἡρακλέᾱ
V.	(Ἡράκλεες)	Ἡράκλεις

[1] The forms in parenthesis show the stem after σ has been dropped from the end (*e.g.* ὄρε-ος is for ὄρεσ-ος) and before contraction has taken place.

604.

Sing. N.	πόλις, ἡ, *city*	πῆχυς, ὁ, *cubit*	ἄστυ, τό, *town*	ἰχθύς, ὁ, *fish*
G.	πόλεως	πήχεως	ἄστεως	ἰχθύος
D.	(πόλε-ϊ) πόλει	(πήχε-ϊ) πήχει	(ἄστε-ϊ) ἄστει	ἰχθύϊ
A.	πόλιν	πῆχυν	ἄστυ	ἰχθύν
V.	πόλι	πῆχυ	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ
Dual N. A. V.	(πόλε-ε) πόλει	(πήχε-ε) πήχει	(ἄστε-ε) ἄστει	ἰχθύε
G. D.	πολέοιν	πηχέοιν	ἀστέοιν	ἰχθύοιν
Plur. N. V.	(πόλε-ες) πόλεις	(πήχε-ες) πήχεις	(ἄστε-α) ἄστη	ἰχθύες
G.	πόλεων	πήχεων	ἄστεων	ἰχθύων
D.	πόλεσι	πήχεσι	ἄστεσι	ἰχθύσι
A.	πόλεις	πήχεις	(ἄστε-α) ἄστη	ἰχθῦς

605.

Sing. N.	βασιλεύς, ὁ, *king*		βοῦς, ὁ, ἡ, *ox, cow*	ναῦς, ἡ, *ship*
G.	βασιλέως		βοός	νεώς
D.	βασιλεῖ		βοΐ	νηΐ
A.	βασιλέᾱ		βοῦν	ναῦν
V.	βασιλεῦ		βοῦ	ναῦ
Dual N. A. V.	βασιλῆ		βόε	νῆε
G. D.	βασιλέοιν		βοοῖν	νεοῖν
Plur. N. V.	(βασιλέ-ες)	βασιλεῖς[1]	βόες	νῆες
G.	βασιλέων		βοῶν	νεῶν
D.	βασιλεῦσι		βουσί	ναυσί
A.	βασιλέᾱς		βοῦς	ναῦς

[1] Older -ῆς.

606. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	1	2	3
Sing. N.	γυνή, ἡ, *woman*	Ζεύς, ὁ, *Zeus*	χείρ, ἡ, *hand*
G.	γυναικός	Διός	χειρός
D.	γυναικί	Διί	χειρί
A.	γυναῖκα	Δία	χεῖρα
V.	γύναι	Ζεῦ	χείρ
Dual N. A. V.	γυναῖκε		χεῖρε
G. D.	γυναικοῖν		χεροῖν and χειροῖν
Plur. N. V.	γυναῖκες		χεῖρες
G.	γυναικῶν		χειρῶν
D.	γυναιξί		χερσί
A.	γυναῖκας		χεῖρας

	4	5	6	7
Sing. N. A. V.	πῦρ, τό, *fire*	ὕδωρ, τό, *water*	δόρυ, τό, *spear*	γόνυ, τό, *knee*
G.	πυρός	ὕδατος	δόρατος	γόνατος
D.	πυρί	ὕδατι	δόρατι	γόνατι
Dual N. A. V.			δόρατε	γόνατε
G. D.			δοράτοιν	γονάτοιν
Plur. N. A. V.	πυρά *watch fires*	ὕδατα	δόρατα	γόνατα
G.	πυρῶν	ὑδάτων	δοράτων	γονάτων
D.	πυροῖς	ὕδασι	δόρασι	γόνασι

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

607. THREE ENDINGS

	ἀγαθός *good*			πολέμιος *hostile*		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	πολέμιος	πολεμία	πολέμιον
G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ	πολεμίου	πολεμίας	πολεμίου
D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ	πολεμίῳ	πολεμίᾳ	πολεμίῳ
A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν	πολέμιον	πολεμίαν	πολέμιον
V.	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	πολέμιε	πολεμία	πολέμιον

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Dual N. A. V.	ἀγαθώ	ἀγαθᾱ́	ἀγαθώ	πολεμίω	πολεμίᾱ	πολεμίω
G. D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν	πολεμίοιν	πολεμίαιν	πολεμίοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά	πολέμιοι	πολέμιαι	πολέμια
G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	πολεμίων	πολεμίων	πολεμίων
D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς	πολεμίοις	πολεμίαις	πολεμίοις
A.	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθᾱ́ς	ἀγαθά	πολεμίους	πολεμίᾱς	πολέμια

608. TWO ENDINGS

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	ἄπορος *impassable*	ἄπορον
G.	ἀπόρου	
D.	ἀπόρῳ	
A.	ἄπορον	
V.	ἄπορε	ἄπορον
Dual N. A. V.	ἀπόρω	
G. D.	ἀπόροιν	
Plur. N. V.	ἄποροι	ἄπορα
G.	ἀπόρων	
D.	ἀπόροις	
A.	ἀπόρους	ἄπορα

CONTRACT ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

609. THREE ENDINGS

χρῡσοῦς *golden*

Singular

	Masc.		Fem.		Neut.	
N.	(χρύσεος)	χρῡσοῦς	(χρῡσέᾱ)	χρῡσῆ	(χρύσεον)	χρῡσοῦν
G.	(χρῡσέου)	χρῡσοῦ	(χρῡσέᾱς)	χρῡσῆς	(χρῡσέου)	χρῡσοῦ
D.	(χρῡσέῳ)	χρῡσῷ	(χρῡσέᾳ)	χρῡσῇ	(χρῡσέῳ)	χρῡσῷ
A.	(χρύσεον)	χρῡσοῦν	(χρῡσέᾱν)	χρῡσῆν	(χρύσεον)	χρῡσοῦν

Dual

N. A.	(χρῡσέω)	χρῡσώ	(χρῡσέᾱ)	χρῡσᾶ	(χρῡσέω)	χρῡσώ
G. D.	(χρῡσέοιν)	χρῡσοῖν	(χρῡσέαιν)	χρῡσαῖν	(χρῡσέοιν)	χρῡσοῖν

PLURAL

N. (χρῦ́σεοι)	χρῦσοῖ	(χρῦ́σεαι)	χρῡσαῖ	(χρῦ́σεα)	χρῡσᾶ
G. (χρῡσέων)	χρῡσῶν	(χρῡσέων)	χρῡσῶν	(χρῡσέων)	χρῡσῶν
D. (χρῡσέοις)	χρῡσοῖς	(χρῡσέαις)	χρῡσαῖς	(χρῡσέοις)	χρῡσοῖς
A. (χρῡσέους)	χρῡσοῦς	(χρῡσέᾱς)	χρῡσᾶς	(χρῦ́σεα)	χρῡσᾶ

ἀργυροῦς *silver*

SINGULAR

N. (ἀργύρεος)	ἀργυροῦς	(ἀργυρέᾱ)	ἀργυρᾶ	(ἀργύρεον)	ἀργυροῦν
G. (ἀργυρέου)	ἀργυροῦ	(ἀργυρέᾱς)	ἀργυρᾶς	(ἀργυρέου)	ἀργυροῦ
D. (ἀργυρέῳ)	ἀργυρῷ	(ἀργυρέᾳ)	ἀργυρᾷ	(ἀργυρέῳ)	ἀργυρῷ
A. (ἀργύρεον)	ἀργυροῦν	(ἀργυρέᾱν)	ἀργυρᾶν	(ἀργύρεον)	ἀργυροῦν

DUAL

N. A. (ἀργυρέω)	ἀργυρώ	(ἀργυρέᾱ)	ἀργυρᾶ	(ἀργυρέω)	ἀργυρώ
G. D. (ἀργυρέοιν)	ἀργυροῖν	(ἀργυρέαιν)	ἀργυραῖν	(ἀργυρέοιν)	ἀργυροῖν

PLURAL

N. (ἀργύρεοι)	ἀργυροῖ	(ἀργύρεαι)	ἀργυραῖ	(ἀργύρεα)	ἀργυρᾶ
G. (ἀργυρέων)	ἀργυρῶν	(ἀργυρέων)	ἀργυρῶν	(ἀργυρέων)	ἀργυρῶν
D. (ἀργυρέοις)	ἀργυροῖς	(ἀργυρέαις)	ἀργυραῖς	(ἀργυρέοις)	ἀργυροῖς
A. (ἀργυρέους)	ἀργυροῦς	(ἀργυρέᾱς)	ἀργυρᾶς	(ἀργύρεα)	ἀργυρᾶ

ἁπλοῦς *sincere*

SINGULAR

N. (ἁπλόος)	ἁπλοῦς	(ἁπλέᾱ)	ἁπλῆ	(ἁπλόον)	ἁπλοῦν
G. (ἁπλόου)	ἁπλοῦ	(ἁπλέᾱς)	ἁπλῆς	(ἁπλόου)	ἁπλοῦ
D. (ἁπλόῳ)	ἁπλῷ	(ἁπλέᾳ)	ἁπλῇ	(ἁπλόῳ)	ἁπλῷ
A. (ἁπλόον)	ἁπλοῦν	(ἁπλέᾱν)	ἁπλῆν	(ἁπλόον)	ἁπλοῦν

DUAL

N. A. (ἁπλόω)	ἁπλώ	(ἁπλέᾱ)	ἁπλᾶ	(ἁπλόω)	ἁπλώ
G. D. (ἁπλόοιν)	ἁπλοῖν	(ἁπλέαιν)	ἁπλαῖν	(ἁπλόοιν)	ἁπλοῖν

PLURAL

N. (ἁπλόοι)	ἁπλοῖ	(ἁπλέαι)	ἁπλαῖ	(ἁπλόα)	ἁπλᾶ
G. (ἁπλόων)	ἁπλῶν	(ἁπλέων)	ἁπλῶν	(ἁπλόων)	ἁπλῶν
D. (ἁπλόοις)	ἁπλοῖς	(ἁπλέαις)	ἁπλαῖς	(ἁπλόοις)	ἁπλοῖς
A. (ἁπλόους)	ἁπλοῦς	(ἁπλέᾱς)	ἁπλᾶς	(ἁπλόα)	ἁπλᾶ

610. TWO ENDINGS

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	**εὔνους** *well-disposed*	**εὔνουν**
G.	**εὔνου**	
D.	**εὔνῳ**	
A.	**εὔνουν**	
Plur. N.	**εὔνοι**	**εὔνοα**
G.	**εὔνων**	
D.	**εὔνοις**	
A.	**εὔνους**	**εὔνοα**

For uncontracted forms cp. *νοῦς*, § 596.

611. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND THIRD DECLENSIONS

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	**ἡδύς** *sweet*	**ἡδεῖα**	**ἡδύ**
G.	**ἡδέος**	**ἡδείᾱς**	**ἡδέος**
D.	(*ἡδέ-ϊ*) **ἡδεῖ**	**ἡδείᾳ**	(*ἡδέ-ϊ*) **ἡδεῖ**
A.	**ἡδύν**	**ἡδεῖαν**	**ἡδύ**
V.	**ἡδύ**	**ἡδεῖα**	**ἡδύ**
Dual N. A. V.	(*ἡδέ-ε*) **ἡδεῖ**	**ἡδείᾱ**	(*ἡδέ-ε*) **ἡδεῖ**
G. D.	**ἡδέοιν**	**ἡδείαιν**	**ἡδέοιν**
Plur. N. V.	(*ἡδέ-ες*) **ἡδεῖς**	**ἡδεῖαι**	**ἡδέα**
G.	**ἡδέων**	**ἡδειῶν**	**ἡδέων**
D.	**ἡδέσι**	**ἡδείαις**	**ἡδέσι**
A.	**ἡδεῖς**	**ἡδείᾱς**	**ἡδέα**

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

612. STEMS IN **-εσ**

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	**ἀσφαλής**[1] *safe*	**ἀσφαλές**
G.	(*ἀσφαλέ-ος*) **ἀσφαλοῦς**	
D.	(*ἀσφαλέ-ϊ*) **ἀσφαλεῖ**	
A.	(*ἀσφαλέ-α*) **ἀσφαλῆ**	**ἀσφαλές**
V.	**ἀσφαλές**	

[1] See footnote on p. 284.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Dual N. A. V.	(ἀσφαλέ-ε) **ἀσφαλεῖ**	
G. D.	(ἀσφαλέ-οιν) **ἀσφαλοῖν**	
Plur. N. V.	(ἀσφαλέ-ες) **ἀσφαλεῖς**	(ἀσφαλέ-α) **ἀσφαλῆ**
G	(ἀσφαλέ-ων) **ἀσφαλῶν**	
D	**ἀσφαλέσι**	
A.	**ἀσφαλεῖς**	(ἀσφαλέ-α) **ἀσφαλῆ**

613. STEMS IN -ν

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	**εὐδαίμων** *fortunate*	**εὔδαιμον**
G.	**εὐδαίμονος**	
D.	**εὐδαίμονι**	
A.	**εὐδαίμονα**	**εὔδαιμον**
V.	**εὔδαιμον**	
Dual N. A. V.	**εὐδαίμονε**	
G. D.	**εὐδαιμόνοιν**	
Plur. N. V.	**εὐδαίμονες**	**εὐδαίμονα**
G.	**εὐδαιμόνων**	
D.	**εὐδαίμοσι**	
A.	**εὐδαίμονας**	**εὐδαίμονα**

614. COMPARATIVES IN -ων

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	**ἡδίων** *sweeter*	**ἥδῑον**
G.	**ἡδίονος**	
D.	**ἡδίονι**	
A.	**ἡδίονα** or **ἡδίω**	**ἥδῑον**
V.	**ἥδῑον**	
Dual N. A. V.	**ἡδίονε**	
G. D.	**ἡδῑόνοιν**	
Plur. N. V.	**ἡδίονες** or **ἡδίους**	**ἡδίονα** or **ἡδίω**
G.	**ἡδῑόνων**	
D.	**ἡδίοσι**	
A.	**ἡδίονας** or **ἡδίους**	**ἡδίονα** or **ἡδίω**

615. STEMS IN -ντ

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	πᾶς *all*	πᾶσα	πᾶν
G.	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
Plur. N. V.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	πάντων	πᾱσῶν	πάντων
D.	πᾶσι	πάσαις	πᾶσι
A.	πάντας	πάσᾱς	πάντα

PARTICIPLES

616.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
1. Sing. N. V.	ὤν *being*	οὖσα	ὄν
G.	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
D.	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
A.	ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν
Dual N. A. V.	ὄντε	οὔσᾱ	ὄντε
G. D.	ὄντοιν	οὔσαιν	ὄντοιν
Plur. N. V.	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα
G.	ὄντων	οὐσῶν	ὄντων
D.	οὖσι	οὔσαις	οὖσι
A.	ὄντας	οὔσᾱς	ὄντα

a. Second aorist active participles are declined like ὤν, as λιπών, λιποῦσα, λιπόν, *having left*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
2. Sing. N. V.	λῡ́ων *loosing*	λῡ́ουσα	λῦον
G.	λῡ́οντος	λῡούσης	λῡ́οντος
D.	λῡ́οντι	λῡούσῃ	λῡ́οντι
A.	λῡ́οντα	λῡ́ουσαν	λῦον
Dual N. A. V.	λῡ́οντε	λῡούσᾱ	λῡ́οντε
G. D.	λῡόντοιν	λῡούσαιν	λῡόντοιν
Plur. N. V.	λῡ́οντες	λῡ́ουσαι	λῡ́οντα
G.	λῡόντων	λῡουσῶν	λῡόντων
D.	λῡ́ουσι	λῡούσαις	λῡ́ουσι
A.	λῡ́οντας	λῡούσᾱς	λῡ́οντα

a. Participles of more than two syllables, like *κωλῦων hindering*, are inflected

κωλῦων, κωλῦουσα, κωλῦον (observe the accent), etc.

617.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	ἱστᾱ́ς *setting*	ἱστᾶσα	ἱστάν
G.	ἱστάντος	ἱστᾱ́σης	ἱστάντος
D.	ἱστάντι	ἱστᾱ́σῃ	ἱστάντι
A.	ἱστάντα	ἱστᾶσαν	ἱστάν
Dual N. A. V.	ἱστάντε	ἱστᾱ́σᾱ	ἱστάντε
G. D.	ἱστάντοιν	ἱστᾱ́σαιν	ἱστάντοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἱστάντες	ἱστᾶσαι	ἱστάντα
G.	ἱστάντων	ἱστᾱσῶν	ἱστάντων
D.	ἱστᾶσι	ἱστᾱ́σαις	ἱστᾶσι
A.	ἱστάντας	ἱστᾱ́σᾱς	ἱστάντα

618.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	λῡ́σᾱς *having loosed*	λῡσᾶσα	λῦσαν
G.	λῡ́σαντος	λῡσᾱ́σης	λῡ́σαντος
D.	λῡ́σαντι	λῡσᾱ́σῃ	λῡ́σαντι
A.	λῡ́σαντα	λῡ́σᾱσαν	λῦσαν
Dual N. A. V.	λῡ́σαντε	λῡσᾱ́σᾱ	λῡ́σαντε
G. D.	λῡσάντοιν	λῡσᾱ́σαιν	λῡσάντοιν
Plur. N. V.	λῡ́σαντες	λῡ́σᾱσαι	λῡ́σαντα
G.	λῡσάντων	λῡσᾱσῶν	λῡσάντων
D.	λῡ́σᾱσι	λῡσᾱ́σαις	λῡ́σᾱσι
A.	λῡ́σαντας	λῡσᾱ́σᾱς	λῡ́σαντα

a. Participles of more than two syllables, like *ἀκούσᾱς having heard*, are inflected

ἀκούσᾱς, ἀκούσᾱσα, ἀκοῦσαν (observe the accent), etc.

619.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	δεικνῦς *showing*	δεικνῦσα	δεικνύν
G.	δεικνύντος	δεικνῡ́σης	δεικνύντος
D.	δεικνύντι	δεικνῡ́σῃ	δεικνύντι
A.	δεικνύντα	δεικνῦσαν	δεικνύν

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Dual N. A. V.	δεικνύντε	δεικνῦσᾱ	δεικνύντε
G. D.	δεικνύντοιν	δεικνύσαιν	δεικνύντοιν
Plur. N. V.	δεικνύντες	δεικνῦσαι	δεικνύντα
G.	δεικνύντων	δεικνῡσῶν	δεικνύντων
D.	δεικνῦσι	δεικνύσαις	δεικνῦσι
A.	δεικνύντας	δεικνύσᾱς	δεικνύντα

620.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N. V.	τιθείς *placing*	τιθεῖσα	τιθέν
G.	τιθέντος	τιθείσης	τιθέντος
D.	τιθέντι	τιθείσῃ	τιθέντι
A.	τιθέντα	τιθεῖσαν	τιθέν
Dual N. A. V.	τιθέντε	τιθείσᾱ	τιθέντε
G. D.	τιθέντοιν	τιθείσαιν	τιθέντοιν
Plur. N. V.	τιθέντες	τιθεῖσαι	τιθέντα
G.	τιθέντων	τιθεισῶν	τιθέντων
D.	τιθεῖσι	τιθείσαις	τιθεῖσι
A.	τιθέντας	τιθείσᾱς	τιθέντα

a. Similarly are declined aorist passive participles:

λυθείς *having been loosed*, λυθεῖσα, λυθέν, etc.

621.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N. V.	διδούς *giving*	διδοῦσα	διδόν
G.	διδόντος	διδούσης	διδόντος
D.	διδόντι	διδούσῃ	διδόντι
A.	διδόντα	διδοῦσαν	διδόν
Dual N. A. V.	διδόντε	διδούσᾱ	διδόντε
G. D.	διδόντοιν	διδούσαιν	διδόντοιν
Plur. N. V.	διδόντες	διδοῦσαι	διδόντα
G.	διδόντων	διδουσῶν	διδόντων
D.	διδοῦσι	διδούσαις	διδοῦσι
A.	διδόντας	διδούσᾱς	διδόντα

622.

	Masc.		Fem.	
Sing. N. V.	(τῑμάων)	τῑμῶν *honoring*	(τῑμάουσα)	τῑμῶσα
G.	(τῑμάοντος)	τῑμῶντος	(τῑμαούσης)	τῑμώσης
D.	(τῑμάοντι)	τῑμῶντι	(τῑμαούσῃ)	τῑμώσῃ
A.	(τῑμάοντα)	τῑμῶντα	(τῑμάουσαν)	τῑμῶσαν

		Neut.	
N. V.	(τῑμάον)	τῑμῶν	
G.	(τῑμάοντος)	τῑμῶντος	
D.	(τῑμάοντι)	τῑμῶντι	
A.	(τῑμάον)	τῑμῶν	

	Masc.		Fem.	
Dual N. A. V.	(τῑμάοντε)	τῑμῶντε	(τῑμαούσᾱ)	τῑμώσᾱ
G. D.	(τῑμαόντοιν)	τῑμώντοιν	(τῑμαούσαιν)	τῑμώσαιν

	Neut.	
N. A. V.	(τῑμάοντε)	τῑμῶντε
G. D.	(τῑμαόντοιν)	τῑμώντοιν

	Masc.		Fem.	
Plur. N. V.	(τῑμάοντες)	τῑμῶντες	(τῑμάουσαι)	τῑμῶσαι
G.	(τῑμαόντων)	τῑμώντων	(τῑμαουσῶν)	τῑμωσῶν
D.	(τῑμάουσι)	τῑμῶσι	(τῑμαούσαις)	τῑμώσαις
A.	(τῑμάοντας)	τῑμῶντας	(τῑμαούσᾱς)	τῑμώσᾱς

	Neut.	
N. V.	(τῑμάοντα)	τῑμῶντα
G.	(τῑμαόντων)	τῑμώντων
D.	(τῑμάουσι)	τῑμῶσι
A.	(τῑμάοντα)	τῑμῶντα

	Masc.		Fem.	
Sing. N. V.	(ποιέων)	ποιῶν *making*	(ποιέουσα)	ποιοῦσα
G.	(ποιέοντος)	ποιοῦντος	(ποιεούσης)	ποιούσης
D.	(ποιέοντι)	ποιοῦντι	(ποιεούσῃ)	ποιούσῃ
A.	(ποιέοντα)	ποιοῦντα	(ποιέουσαν)	ποιοῦσαν

	Neut.	
N. V.	(ποιέον)	ποιοῦν
G.	(ποιέοντος)	ποιοῦντος
D.	(ποιέοντι)	ποιοῦντι
A.	(ποιέον)	ποιοῦν

	Masc.		Fem.	
Dual N. A. V.	(ποιέοντε)	ποιοῦντε	(ποιεούσᾱ)	ποιούσᾱ
G. D.	(ποιεόντοιν)	ποιούντοιν	(ποιεούσαιν)	ποιούσαιν

	NEUT.
N. A. V.	(ποιέοντε) ποιοῦντε
G. D.	(ποιεόντοιν) ποιούντοιν

	MASC.		FEM.	
Plur. N. V.	(ποιέοντες)	ποιοῦντες	(ποιέουσαι)	ποιοῦσαι
G.	(ποιεόντων)	ποιούντων	(ποιεουσῶν)	ποιουσῶν
D.	(ποιέουσι)	ποιοῦσι	(ποιεούσαις)	ποιούσαις
A.	(ποιέοντας)	ποιοῦντας	(ποιεούσᾶς)	ποιούσᾶς

	NEUT.
N. V.	(ποιέοντα) ποιοῦντα
G.	(ποιεόντων) ποιούντων
D.	(ποιέουσι) ποιοῦσι
A.	(ποιέοντα) ποιοῦντα

a. δηλόων *showing*, which contracts to

δηλῶν, δηλοῦσα, δηλοῦν,

is declined like ποιῶν, ποιοῦσα, ποιοῦν.

PERFECT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

623. λελυκώς *having loosed* (λελυκοτ-)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	λελυκώς	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
G.	λελυκότος	λελυκυίᾶς	λελυκότος
D.	λελυκότι	λελυκυίᾳ	λελυκότι
A.	λελυκότα	λελυκυῖαν	λελυκός
Dual N. A. V.	λελυκότε	λελυκυίᾱ	λελυκότε
G. D.	λελυκότοιν	λελυκυίαιν	λελυκότοιν
Plur. N. V.	λελυκότες	λελυκυῖαι	λελυκότα
G.	λελυκότων	λελυκυιῶν	λελυκότων
D.	λελυκόσι	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι
A.	λελυκότας	λελυκυίᾶς	λελυκότα

624. ἑστώς *standing* (ἑστωτ-)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N. V.	ἑστώς	ἑστῶσα	ἑστός
G.	ἑστῶτος	ἑστώσης	ἑστῶτος
D.	ἑστῶτι	ἑστώσῃ	ἑστῶτι
A.	ἑστῶτα	ἑστῶσαν	ἑστός

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Dual N. A. V.	ἑστῶτε	ἑστώσᾱ	ἑστῶτε
G. D.	ἑστώτοιν	ἑστώσαιν	ἑστώτοιν
Plur. N. V.	ἑστῶτες	ἑστῶσαι	ἑστῶτα
G.	ἑστώτων	ἑστωσῶν	ἑστώτων
D.	ἑστῶσι	ἑστώσαις	ἑστῶσι
A.	ἑστῶτας	ἑστώσᾱς	ἑστῶτα

a. ἑστώς is contracted from ἑσταώς; the neuter ἑστός is irregular.

625. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	μέγας *great*			πολύς *much*		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
G.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
D.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
A.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
Plur. N.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
G.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
D.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
A.	μεγάλους	μεγάλᾱς	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλᾱ́ς	πολλά

626. NUMERALS

	εἷς *one*			δύο *two*	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM., NEUT.	
N.	εἷς	μία	ἕν	N. A.	δύο
G.	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός	G. D.	δυοῖν
D.	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί		
A.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν		

	τρεῖς *three*		τέτταρες *four*	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
N.	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
G.	τριῶν		τεττάρων	
D.	τρισί		τέτταρσι	
A.	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

627.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	οὐδείς *nobody*	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν *nothing*
G.	οὐδενός	οὐδεμιᾶς	οὐδενός
D.	οὐδενί	οὐδεμιᾷ	οὐδενί
A.	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν

Masc. Plur. N. οὐδένες, G. οὐδένων, D. οὐδέσι, A. οὐδένας

PRONOUNS

628. PERSONAL

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person *Indirect Reflexive*
Sing. N.	ἐγώ *I*	σύ *thou*	
G.	ἐμοῦ, μου	σοῦ, σου	[οὗ], [οὑ]
D.	ἐμοί, μοι	σοί, σοι	οἷ, οἱ, *to himself*
A.	ἐμέ, με	σέ, σε	[ἕ], [ἑ]
Dual N. A.	νώ	σφώ	
G. D.	νῷν	σφῷν	
Plur. N.	ἡμεῖς *we*	ὑμεῖς *you*	σφεῖς
G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	σφῶν
D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι
A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	σφᾶς

629. αὐτός *self, same, him* (in oblique cases), etc.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Dual N. A.	αὐτώ	αὐτᾱ́	αὐτώ
G. D.	αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
Plur. N.	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	αὐτούς	αὐτᾱ́ς	αὐτά

ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο, *another, other*, is declined like αὐτός.

630. REFLEXIVE

ἐμαυτοῦ *of myself*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
G.	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	
D.	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς
A.	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς

σεαυτοῦ *of yourself*

	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
G.	σεαυτοῦ or σαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς or σαυτῆς	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	
D.	σεαυτῷ or σαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ or σαυτῇ	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
A.	σεαυτόν or σαυτόν	σεαυτήν or σαυτήν	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς

ἑαυτοῦ *of himself*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
G.	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
D.	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς
A.	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά

or, contracted,

G.	αὑτοῦ	αὑτῆς	αὑτοῦ	αὑτῶν	αὑτῶν	αὑτῶν
D.	αὑτῷ	αὑτῇ	αὑτῷ	αὑτοῖς	αὑταῖς	αὑτοῖς
A.	αὑτόν	αὑτήν	αὑτό	αὑτούς	αὑτάς	αὑτά

Plural also: **σφῶν αὐτῶν**
σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, αἷς
σφᾶς αὐτούς, ἅς

631. RECIPROCAL

ἀλλήλοιν *of one another*

	DUAL			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
G.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
A.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλᾱ	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλᾱς	ἄλληλα

632. DEFINITE ARTICLE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὁ *the*	ἡ	τό
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
A.	τόν	τήν	τό
Dual N. A.	τώ	τώ	τώ
G. D.	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν
Plur. N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τούς	τᾱ́ς	τά

633. DEMONSTRATIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ὅδε *this*	ἥδε	τόδε	οὗτος *this*	αὕτη	τοῦτο
G.	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
D.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
A.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
Dual N. A.	τώδε	τώδε	τώδε	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω
G. D.	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτοιν
Plur. N.	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
G.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
D.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A.	τούσδε	τᾱ́σδε	τάδε	τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Sing. N.	ἐκεῖνος *that*	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
G.	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
D.	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
A.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
Dual N. A.	ἐκείνω	ἐκείνω	ἐκείνω
G. D.	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείνοιν
Plur. N.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
G.	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
D.	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
A.	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνᾱς	ἐκεῖνα

634. INTERROGATIVE

635. INDEFINITE

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	τίς *who?*	τί *what?*	τις *anybody*	τι *anything*
G.	τίνος, τοῦ		τινός, του	
D.	τίνι, τῷ		τινί, τῳ	
A.	τίνα	τί	τινά	τι
Dual N. A.	τίνε		τινέ	
G. D.	τίνοιν		τινοῖν	
Plur. N.	τίνες	τίνα	τινές	τινά
G.	τίνων		τινῶν	
D.	τίσι		τισί	
A.	τίνας	τίνα	τινάς	τινά

636. RELATIVE

	Singular			Dual			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	ὥ	ὥ	ὥ	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
G.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	οἷν	οἷν	οἷν	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
D.	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ				οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
A.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ				οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

637. INDEFINITE RELATIVE

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι or ὅ,τι
G.	οὑτινος, ὅτου	ἧστινος	οὑτινος, ὅτου
D.	ᾧτινι, ὅτῳ	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι, ὅτῳ
A.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι or ὅ,τι
Dual N. A.	ὥτινε	ὥτινε	ὥτινε
G. D.	οἱντινοιν	οἱντινοιν	οἱντινοιν
Plur. N.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
G.	ὧντινων, ὅτων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων, ὅτων
D.	οἷστισι, ὅτοις	αἷστισι	οἷστισι, ὅτοις
A.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα

638.

	Direct or indirect interrogatives:	Indirect interrogatives or indefinite relatives:	The definite relative meaning
PRONOUNS	τίς *who?*	ὅστις	*who* is ὅς
	ποῖος *of what sort? what sort of?*	ὁποῖος	*of what sort* is οἷος
	πόσος *how great? how much? how many?*	ὁπόσος	*as great as, as much as, as many as* is ὅσος
ADVERBS	πότε *when?*	ὁπότε	*when* is ὅτε
	ποῦ *where?*	ὅπου	*where* is οὗ or ἔνθα
	πῶς *how?*	ὅπως	*how, as,* is ὡς or ὥσπερ

VERBS

639. PERSONAL ENDINGS

INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND OPTATIVE

	ACTIVE		MIDDLE	
	Primary Tenses	*Secondary Tenses*	*Primary Tenses*	*Secondary Tenses*
Sing. 1.	-μι	-ν	-μαι	-μην
2.	-ς	-ς	-σαι	-σο
3.	-σι	——	-ται	-το
Dual 2.	-τον	-τον	-σθον	-σθον
3.	-τον	-την	-σθον	-σθην
Plur. 1.	-μεν	-μεν	-μεθα	-μεθα
2.	-τε	-τε	-σθε	-σθε
3.	-νσι	-ν, -σαν	-νται	-ντο

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE			MIDDLE		
	Sing.	*Dual*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Dual*	*Plur.*
2.	-θι	-τον	-τε	-σο	-σθον	-σθε
3.	-τω	-των	-ντων	-σθω	-σθων	-σθων

INFINITIVE ENDINGS

ACTIVE	MIDDLE
-ειν (contracted with thematic vowel to -ειν) and -ναι	-σθαι

640. VOWEL STEMS: UNCONTRACTED.

1. Active

			Pres.	Impf.	Fut.
Indic.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́ω	ἔλῡον	λῡ́σω
		2.	λῡ́εις	ἔλῡες	λῡ́σεις
		3.	λῡ́ει	ἔλῡε	λῡ́σει
	Dual	2.	λῡ́ετον	ἐλῡ́ετον	λῡ́σετον
		3.	λῡ́ετον	ἐλῡέτην	λῡ́σετον
	Plur.	1.	λῡ́ομεν	ἐλῡ́ομεν	λῡ́σομεν
		2.	λῡ́ετε	ἐλῡ́ετε	λῡ́σετε
		3.	λῡ́ουσι	ἔλῡον	λῡ́σουσι
Subjv.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́ω		
		2.	λῡ́ῃς		
		3.	λῡ́ῃ		
	Dual	2.	λῡ́ητον		
		3.	λῡ́ητον		
	Plur.	1.	λῡ́ωμεν		
		2.	λῡ́ητε		
		3.	λῡ́ωσι		
Opt.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́οιμι		λῡ́σοιμι
		2.	λῡ́οις		λῡ́σοις
		3.	λῡ́οι		λῡ́σοι
	Dual	2.	λῡ́οιτον		λῡ́σοιτον
		3.	λῡοίτην		λῡσοίτην
	Plur.	1.	λῡ́οιμεν		λῡ́σοιμεν
		2.	λῡ́οιτε		λῡ́σοιτε
		3.	λῡ́οιεν		λῡ́σοιεν
Imv.	Sing.	2.	λῦε		
		3.	λῡέτω		
	Dual	2.	λῡ́ετον		
		3.	λῡέτων		
	Plur.	2.	λῡ́ετε		
		3.	λῡόντων		
Inf.			λῡ́ειν		λῡ́σειν
Partic.			λῡ́ων, λῡ́ουσα, λῦον (§ 616. 2)		λῡ́σων, λῡ́σουσα, λῦσον (cp. § 616. 2)

INFLECTION OF λῡ́-ω / *loose*

VOICE

			1 AOR.	1 PF.	1 PLUP.
Indic.	Sing.	1.	ἔλῡσα	λέλυκα	ἐλελύκη
		2.	ἔλῡσας	λέλυκας	ἐλελύκης
		3.	ἔλῡσε	λέλυκε	ἐλελύκει(ν)
	Dual	2.	ἐλῡ́σατον	λελύκατον	ἐλελύκετον
		3.	ἐλῡσάτην	λελύκατον	ἐλελυκέτην
	Plur.	1.	ἐλῡ́σαμεν	λελύκαμεν	ἐλελύκεμεν
		2.	ἐλῡ́σατε	λελύκατε	ἐλελύκετε
		3.	ἔλῡσαν	λελύκᾱσι	ἐλελύκεσαν
Subjv.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́σω	[λελύκω (§ 436)	
		2.	λῡ́σῃς	λελύκῃς	
		3.	λῡ́σῃ	λελύκῃ	
	Dual	2.	λῡ́σητον	λελύκητον	
		3.	λῡ́σητον	λελύκητον	
	Plur.	1.	λῡ́σωμεν	λελύκωμεν	
		2.	λῡ́σητε	λελύκητε	
		3.	λῡ́σωσι	λελύκωσι]	
Opt.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́σαιμι	[λελύκοιμι (§ 436)	
		2.	λῡ́σαις, λῡ́σειας (§ 254)	λελύκοις	
		3.	λῡ́σαι, λῡ́σειε	λελύκοι	
	Dual	2.	λῡ́σαιτον	λελύκοιτον	
		3.	λῡσαίτην	λελυκοίτην	
	Plur.	1.	λῡ́σαιμεν	λελύκοιμεν	
		2.	λῡ́σαιτε	λελύκοιτε	
		3.	λῡ́σαιεν, λῡ́σειαν (§ 254)	λελύκοιεν]	
Imv.	Sing.	2.	λῦσον	(§ 437)	
		3.	λῡσάτω		
	Dual	2.	λῡ́σατον		
		3.	λῡσάτων		
	Plur.	2.	λῡ́σατε		
		3.	λῡσάντων		
Inf.			λῦσαι	λελυκέναι	
Partic.			λῡσᾱς, λῡ́σᾱσα, λῦσαν (§ 618)	λελυκώς, λελυκυῖα, λελυκός (§ 623)	

2. MIDDLE

			PRES.	IMPF.	FUT.
Indic.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́ομαι	ἐλῡόμην	λῡ́σομαι
		2.	λῡ́ῃ, λῡ́ει	ἐλῡ́ου	λῡ́σῃ, λῡ́σει
		3.	λῡ́εται	ἐλῡ́ετο	λῡ́σεται
	Dual	2.	λῡ́εσθον	ἐλῡ́εσθον	λῡ́σεσθον
		3.	λῡ́εσθον	ἐλῡέσθην	λῡ́σεσθον
	Plur.	1.	λῡόμεθα	ἐλῡόμεθα	λῡσόμεθα
		2.	λῡ́εσθε	ἐλῡ́εσθε	λῡ́σεσθε
		3.	λῡ́ονται	ἐλῡ́οντο	λῡ́σονται
Subjv.	Sing.	1.	λῡ́ωμαι		
		2.	λῡ́ῃ		
		3.	λῡ́ηται		
	Dual	2.	λῡ́ησθον		
		3.	λῡ́ησθον		
	Plur.	1.	λῡώμεθα		
		2.	λῡ́ησθε		
		3.	λῡ́ωνται		
Opt.	Sing.	1.	λῡοίμην		λῡσοίμην
		2.	λῡ́οιο		λῡ́σοιο
		3.	λῡ́οιτο		λῡ́σοιτο
	Dual	2.	λῡ́οισθον		λῡ́σοισθον
		3.	λῡοίσθην		λῡσοίσθην
	Plur.	1.	λῡοίμεθα		λῡσοίμεθα
		2.	λῡ́οισθε		λῡ́σοισθε
		3.	λῡ́οιντο		λῡ́σοιντο
Imv.	Sing.	2.	λῡ́ου		
		3.	λῡέσθω		
	Dual	2.	λῡ́εσθον		
		3.	λῡέσθων		
	Plur.	2.	λῡ́εσθε		
		3.	λῡέσθων		
Inf.			λῡ́εσθαι		λῡ́σεσθαι
Partic.			λῡόμενος, λῡομένη, λῡόμενον		λῡσόμενος, -η, -ον

VOICE

			1 AOR.	PF.	PLUP.
Indic.	Sing.	1.	ἐλῡσάμην	λέλυμαι	ἐλελύμην
		2.	ἐλῦσω	λέλυσαι	ἐλέλυσο
		3.	ἐλῦσατο	λέλυται	ἐλέλυτο
	Dual	2.	ἐλῦσασθον	λέλυσθον	ἐλέλυσθον
		3.	ἐλῡσάσθην	λέλυσθον	ἐλελύσθην
	Plur.	1.	ἐλῡσάμεθα	λελύμεθα	ἐλελύμεθα
		2.	ἐλῦσασθε	λέλυσθε	ἐλέλυσθε
		3.	ἐλῦσαντο	λέλυνται	ἐλέλυντο
Subjv.	Sing.	1.	λῡσωμαι	λελυμένος ὦ	
		2.	λῡσῃ	λελυμένος ᾖς	
		3.	λῡσηται	λελυμένος ᾖ	
	Dual	2.	λῡσησθον	λελυμένω ἦτον	
		3.	λῡσησθον	λελυμένω ἦτον	
	Plur.	1.	λῡσώμεθα	λελυμένοι ὦμεν	
		2.	λῡσησθε	λελυμένοι ἦτε	
		3.	λῡσωνται	λελυμένοι ὦσι	
Opt.	Sing.	1.	λῡσαίμην	λελυμένος εἴην	
		2.	λῡσαιο	λελυμένος εἴης	
		3.	λῡσαιτο	λελυμένος εἴη	
	Dual	2.	λῡσαισθον	λελυμένω εἴητον or εἶτον	
		3.	λῡσαίσθην	λελυμένω εἰήτην or εἴτην	
	Plur.	1.	λῡσαίμεθα	λελυμένοι εἴημεν or εἶμεν	
		2.	λῡσαισθε	λελυμένοι εἴητε or εἶτε	
		3.	λῡσαιντο	λελυμένοι εἴησαν or εἶεν	
Imv.	Sing.	2.	λῦσαι	λέλυσο	
		3.	λῡσάσθω	λελύσθω	
	Dual	2.	λῦσασθον	λέλυσθον	
		3.	λῡσάσθων	λελύσθων	
	Plur.	2.	λῦσασθε	λέλυσθε	
		3.	λῡσάσθων	λελύσθων	
Inf.			λῦσασθαι	λελύσθαι	
Partic.			λῡσάμενος, -η, -ον	λελυμένος, -η, -ον	

3. Passive Voice

			Fut. Pf.	1 Aor.	1 Fut.
Indic.	Sing.	1.	λελῡ́σομαι	ἐλύθην	λυθήσομαι
		2.	λελῡ́σῃ, λελῡ́σει	ἐλύθης	λυθήσῃ, λυθήσει
		3.	λελῡ́σεται	ἐλύθη	λυθήσεται
	Dual	2.	λελῡ́σεσθον	ἐλύθητον	λυθήσεσθον
		3.	λελῡ́σεσθον	ἐλυθήτην	λυθήσεσθον
	Plur.	1.	λελῡσόμεθα	ἐλύθημεν	λυθησόμεθα
		2.	λελῡ́σεσθε	ἐλύθητε	λυθήσεσθε
		3.	λελῡ́σονται	ἐλύθησαν	λυθήσονται
Subjv.	Sing.	1.		λυθῶ	
		2.		λυθῇς	
		3.		λυθῇ	
	Dual	2.		λυθῆτον	
		3.		λυθῆτον	
	Plur.	1.		λυθῶμεν	
		2.		λυθῆτε	
		3.		λυθῶσι	
Opt.	Sing.	1.	λελῡσοίμην	λυθείην	λυθησοίμην
		2.	λελῡ́σοιο	λυθείης	λυθήσοιο
		3.	λελῡ́σοιτο	λυθείη	λυθήσοιτο
	Dual	2.	λελῡ́σοισθον	λυθεῖτον or λυθείητον	λυθήσοισθον
		3.	λελῡσοίσθην	λυθείτην or λυθειήτην	λυθησοίσθην
	Plur.	1.	λελῡσοίμεθα	λυθεῖμεν or λυθείημεν	λυθησοίμεθα
		2.	λελῡ́σοισθε	λυθεῖτε or λυθείητε	λυθήσοισθε
		3.	λελῡ́σοιντο	λυθεῖεν or λυθείησαν	λυθήσοιντο
Imv.	Sing.	2.		λύθητι	
		3.		λυθήτω	
	Dual	2.		λύθητον	
		3.		λυθήτων	
	Plur.	2.		λύθητε	
		3.		λυθέντων	
Inf.			λελῡ́σεσθαι	λυθῆναι	λυθήσεσθαι
Partic.			λελῡσόμενος, -η, -ον	λυθείς, λυθεῖσα, λυθέν (§ 620. *a*)	λυθησόμενος, -η, -ον

641. As examples of the second aorist and second perfect systems (§§ 83, 445, 485), the second aorist (active and middle) and the second perfect and pluperfect of λείπω *leave* are here given.

			2 AOR. ACT.	2 AOR. MID.	2 PF.	2 PLUP.
Indic.	Sing.	1.	ἔλιπον	ἐλιπόμην	λέλοιπα	ἐλελοίπη
		2.	ἔλιπες	ἔλιπου	λέλοιπας	ἐλελοίπης
		3.	ἔλιπε	ἐλίπετο	λέλοιπε	ἐλελοίπει(ν)
	Dual	2.	ἐλίπετον	ἐλίπεσθον	λελοίπατον	ἐλελοίπετον
		3.	ἐλιπέτην	ἐλιπέσθην	λελοίπατον	ἐλελοιπέτην
	Plur.	1.	ἐλίπομεν	ἐλιπόμεθα	λελοίπαμεν	ἐλελοίπεμεν
		2.	ἐλίπετε	ἐλίπεσθε	λελοίπατε	ἐλελοίπετε
		3.	ἔλιπον	ἐλίποντο	λελοίπᾶσι	ἐλελοίπεσαν
Subjv.	Sing.	1.	λίπω	λίπωμαι	[λελοίπω (§ 446)	
		2.	λίπῃς	λίπῃ	λελοίπῃς	
		3.	λίπῃ	λίπηται	λελοίπῃ	
	Dual	2.	λίπητον	λίπησθον	λελοίπητον	
		3.	λίπητον	λίπησθον	λελοίπητον	
	Plur.	1.	λίπωμεν	λιπώμεθα	λελοίπωμεν	
		2.	λίπητε	λίπησθε	λελοίπητε	
		3.	λίπωσι	λίπωνται	λελοίπωσι]	
Opt.	Sing.	1.	λίποιμι	λιποίμην	[λελοίποιμι (§ 446)	
		2.	λίποις	λίποιο	λελοίποις	
		3.	λίποι	λίποιτο	λελοίποι	
	Dual	2.	λίποιτον	λίποισθον	λελοίποιτον	
		3.	λιποίτην	λιποίσθην	λελοιποίτην	
	Plur.	1.	λίποιμεν	λιποίμεθα	λελοίποιμεν	
		2.	λίποιτε	λίποισθε	λελοίποιτε	
		3.	λίποιεν	λίποιντο	λελοίποιεν]	
Imv.	Sing.	2.	λίπε	λιποῦ		
		3.	λιπέτω	λιπέσθω		
	Dual	2.	λίπετον	λίπεσθον		
		3.	λιπέτων	λιπέσθων		
	Plur.	2.	λίπετε	λίπεσθε		
		3.	λιπόντων	λιπέσθων		

	2 Aor. Act.	2 Aor. Mid.	2 Pf.
Inf.	λιπεῖν	λιπέσθαι	λελοιπέναι
Partic.	λιπών, λιποῦσα, λιπόν (§ 616. 1. *a*)	λιπόμενος, -η, -ον	λελοιπώς, -υῖα, -ός (cp. § 623)

642. As an example of the second passive system, the second aorist passive and the second future passive of *βλάπτω hurt* are here given.

		2 Aor. Pass.	2 Fut. Pass.
Indic.	Sing. 1.	ἐβλάβην	βλαβήσομαι
	2.	ἐβλάβης	βλαβήσῃ or -σει
	3.	ἐβλάβη	βλαβήσεται
	Dual 2.	ἐβλάβητον	βλαβήσεσθον
	3.	ἐβλαβήτην	βλαβήσεσθον
	Plur. 1.	ἐβλάβημεν	βλαβησόμεθα
	2.	ἐβλάβητε	βλαβήσεσθε
	3.	ἐβλάβησαν	βλαβήσονται
Subjv.	Sing. 1.	βλαβῶ	
	2.	βλαβῇς	
	3.	βλαβῇ	
	Dual 2.	βλαβῆτον	
	3.	βλαβῆτον	
	Plur. 1.	βλαβῶμεν	
	2.	βλαβῆτε	
	3.	βλαβῶσι	
Opt.	Sing. 1.	βλαβείην	βλαβησοίμην
	2.	βλαβείης	βλαβήσοιο
	3.	βλαβείη	βλαβήσοιτο
	Dual 2.	βλαβεῖτον or βλαβείητον	βλαβήσοισθον
	3.	βλαβείτην or βλαβειήτην	βλαβησοίσθην
	Plur. 1.	βλαβεῖμην or βλαβείημεν	βλαβησοίμεθα
	2.	βλαβεῖτε or βλαβείητε	βλαβήσοισθε
	3.	βλαβεῖεν or βλαβείησαν	βλαβήσοιντο

			2 Aor. Pass.	2 Fut. Pass.
Imv.	Sing.	2.	βλάβηθι	
		3.	βλαβήτω	
	Dual	2.	βλάβητον	
		3.	βλαβήτων	
	Plur.	2.	βλάβητε	
		3.	βλαβέντων	
Inf.			βλαβῆναι	βλαβήσεσθαι
Partic.			βλαβείς, βλαβεῖσα, βλαβέν (§ 620. *a*)	βλαβησόμενος, -η, -ον

CONTRACT VERBS

643. Verbs in *-άω, -έω, -όω* are contracted only in the present and imperfect. For the principles of contraction, see §§ 504, 505, 507, 516, 528. *τῑμάω* (*τῑμα-*) *honor*, *ποιέω* (*ποιε-*) *make*, and *δηλόω* (*δηλο-*) *manifest* are inflected as follows in the present and imperfect of the active, middle, and passive.

Active

Present Indicative

Singular

1. (τῑμάω)	τῑμῶ	(ποιέω)	ποιῶ	(δηλόω)	δηλῶ
2. (τῑμάεις)	τῑμᾷς	(ποιέεις)	ποιεῖς	(δηλόεις)	δηλοῖς
3. (τῑμάει)	τῑμᾷ	(ποιέει)	ποιεῖ	(δηλόει)	δηλοῖ

Dual

2. (τῑμάετον)	τῑμᾶτον	(ποιέετον)	ποιεῖτον	(δηλόετον)	δηλοῦτον
3. (τῑμάετον)	τῑμᾶτον	(ποιέετον)	ποιεῖτον	(δηλόετον)	δηλοῦτον

Plural

1. (τῑμάομεν)	τῑμῶμεν	(ποιέομεν)	ποιοῦμεν	(δηλόομεν)	δηλοῦμεν
2. (τῑμάετε)	τῑμᾶτε	(ποιέετε)	ποιεῖτε	(δηλόετε)	δηλοῦτε
3. (τῑμάουσι)	τῑμῶσι	(ποιέουσι)	ποιοῦσι	(δηλόουσι)	δηλοῦσι

Imperfect

Singular

1. (ἐτῑμαον)	ἐτῑμων	(ἐποίεον)	ἐποίουν	(ἐδήλοον)	ἐδήλουν
2. (ἐτῑμαες)	ἐτῑμᾱς	(ἐποίεες)	ἐποίεις	(ἐδήλοες)	ἐδήλους
3. (ἐτῑμαε)	ἐτῑμᾱ	(ἐποίεε)	ἐποίει	(ἐδήλοε)	ἐδήλου

DUAL

2. (ἐτῑμάετον)	ἐτῑμᾶτον	(ἐποιέετον)	ἐποιεῖτον	(ἐδηλόετον)	ἐδηλοῦτον
3. (ἐτῑμαέτην)	ἐτῑμᾶτην	(ἐποιεέτην)	ἐποιείτην	(ἐδηλοέτην)	ἐδηλούτην

PLURAL

1. (ἐτῑμάομεν)	ἐτῑμῶμεν	(ἐποιέομεν)	ἐποιοῦμεν	(ἐδηλόομεν)	ἐδηλοῦμεν
2. (ἐτῑμάετε)	ἐτῑμᾶτε	(ἐποιέετε)	ἐποιεῖτε	(ἐδηλόετε)	ἐδηλοῦτε
3. (ἐτίμαον)	ἐτίμων	(ἐποίεον)	ἐποίουν	(ἐδήλοον)	ἐδήλουν

Present Subjunctive

SINGULAR

1. (τῑμάω)	τῑμῶ	(ποιέω)	ποιῶ	(δηλόω)	δηλῶ
2. (τῑμάῃς)	τῑμᾷς	(ποιέῃς)	ποιῇς	(δηλόῃς)	δηλοῖς
3. (τῑμάῃ)	τῑμᾷ	(ποιέῃ)	ποιῇ	(δηλόῃ)	δηλοῖ

DUAL

2. (τῑμάητον)	τῑμᾶτον	(ποιέητον)	ποιῆτον	(δηλόητον)	δηλῶτον
3. (τῑμάητον)	τῑμᾶτον	(ποιέητον)	ποιῆτον	(δηλόητον)	δηλῶτον

PLURAL

1. (τῑμάωμεν)	τῑμῶμεν	(ποιέωμεν)	ποιῶμεν	(δηλόωμεν)	δηλῶμεν
2. (τῑμάητε)	τῑμᾶτε	(ποιέητε)	ποιῆτε	(δηλόητε)	δηλῶτε
3. (τῑμάωσι)	τῑμῶσι	(ποιέωσι)	ποιῶσι	(δηλόωσι)	δηλῶσι

Present Optative

SINGULAR

1. (τῑμαοίην)	τῑμῴην	(ποιεοίην)	ποιοίην	(δηλοοίην)	δηλοίην
2. (τῑμαοίης)	τῑμῴης	(ποιεοίης)	ποιοίης	(δηλοοίης)	δηλοίης
3. (τῑμαοίη)	τῑμῴη	(ποιεοίη)	ποιοίη	(δηλοοίη)	δηλοίη

DUAL

2. (τῑμαοίητον)	[τῑμῴητον	(ποιεοίητον)	[ποιοίητον	(δηλοοίητον)	[δηλοίητον
3. (τῑμαοιήτην)	τῑμῳήτην]	(ποιεοιήτην)	ποιοιήτην]	(δηλοοιήτην)	δηλοιήτην]

PLURAL

1. (τῑμαοίημεν)	[τῑμῴημεν	(ποιεοίημεν)	[ποιοίημεν	(δηλοοίημεν)	[δηλοίημεν
2. (τῑμαοίητε)	τῑμῴητε	(ποιεοίητε)	ποιοίητε	(δηλοοίητε)	δηλοίητε
3. (τῑμαοίησαν)	τῑμῴησαν]	(ποιεοίησαν)	ποιοίησαν]	(δηλοοίησαν)	δηλοίησαν]
	or[1]		or[1]		or[1]

[1] The forms with the mood sign ιη are commonly found in the singular; the forms with the mood sign ι (without η), in the dual and plural.

SINGULAR

1.	(τῑμάοιμι)	[τῑμῷμι	(ποιέοιμι)	[ποιοῖμι	(δηλόοιμι)	[δηλοῖμι
2.	(τῑμάοις)	τῑμῷς	(ποιέοις)	ποιοῖς	(δηλόοις)	δηλοῖς
3.	(τῑμάοι)	τῑμῷ]	(ποιέοι)	ποιοῖ]	(δηλόοι)	δηλοῖ]

DUAL

2.	(τῑμάοιτον)	τῑμῷτον	(ποιέοιτον)	ποιοῖτον	(δηλόοιτον)	δηλοῖτον
3.	(τῑμαοίτην)	τῑμῴτην	(ποιεοίτην)	ποιοίτην	(δηλοοίτην)	δηλοίτην

PLURAL

1.	(τῑμάοιμεν)	τῑμῶμεν	(ποιέοιμεν)	ποιοῖμεν	(δηλόοιμεν)	δηλοῖμεν
2.	(τῑμάοιτε)	τῑμῶτε	(ποιέοιτε)	ποιοῖτε	(δηλόοιτε)	δηλοῖτε
3.	(τῑμάοιεν)	τῑμῷεν	(ποιέοιεν)	ποιοῖεν	(δηλόοιεν)	δηλοῖεν

Present Imperative

SINGULAR

2.	(τῖμαε)	τίμᾱ	(ποίεε)	ποίει	(δήλοε)	δήλου
3.	(τῑμαέτω)	τῑμᾶτω	(ποιεέτω)	ποιείτω	(δηλοέτω)	δηλούτω

DUAL

2.	(τῑμάετον)	τῑμᾶτον	(ποιέετον)	ποιεῖτον	(δηλόετον)	δηλοῦτον
3.	(τῑμαέτων)	τῑμᾶτων	(ποιεέτων)	ποιείτων	(δηλοέτων)	δηλούτων

PLURAL

2.	(τῑμάετε)	τῑμᾶτε	(ποιέετε)	ποιεῖτε	(δηλόετε)	δηλοῦτε
3.	(τῑμαόντων)	τῑμώντων	(ποιεόντων)	ποιούντων	(δηλοόντων)	δηλούντων

Present Infinitive

(τῑμάειν)	τῑμᾶν [1]	(ποιέειν)	ποιεῖν [1]	(δηλόειν)	δηλοῦν [1]

Present Participle (see § 622 and *a*)

(τῑμάων)	τῑμῶν	(ποιέων)	ποιῶν	(δηλόων)	δηλῶν

MIDDLE AND PASSIVE

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

1.	(τῑμάομαι)	τῑμῶμαι	(ποιέομαι)	ποιοῦμαι	(δηλόομαι)	δηλοῦμαι
2.	(τῑμάῃ or τῑμάει)	τῑμᾷ	(ποιέῃ or ποιέει)	ποιῇ or ποιεῖ	(δηλόῃ or δηλόει)	δηλοῖ
3.	(τῑμάεται)	τῑμᾶται	(ποιέεται)	ποιεῖται	(δηλόεται)	δηλοῦται

[1] As the infinitive ending **-ειν** is a contraction of the thematic vowel **ε** and **εν** (cp. § 639), **τῑμᾶν** really represents **τῑμα-ε-εν**; **ποιεῖν**, **ποιε-ε-εν**; and **δηλοῦν**, **δηλο-ε-εν**.

DUAL

2.	(τῑμάεσθον)	τῑμᾶσθον	(ποιέεσθον)	ποιεῖσθον	(δηλόεσθον)	δηλοῦσθον
3.	(τῑμάεσθον)	τῑμᾶσθον	(ποιέεσθον)	ποιεῖσθον	(δηλόεσθον)	δηλοῦσθον

PLURAL

1.	(τῑμαόμεθα)	τῑμώμεθα	(ποιεόμεθα)	ποιούμεθα	(δηλοόμεθα)	δηλούμεθα
2.	(τῑμάεσθε)	τῑμᾶσθε	(ποιέεσθε)	ποιεῖσθε	(δηλόεσθε)	δηλοῦσθε
3.	(τῑμάονται)	τῑμῶνται	(ποιέονται)	ποιοῦνται	(δηλόονται)	δηλοῦνται

Imperfect

SINGULAR

1.	(ἐτῑμαόμην)	ἐτῑμώμην	(ἐποιεόμην)	ἐποιούμην	(ἐδηλοόμην)	ἐδηλούμην
2.	(ἐτῑμάου)	ἐτῑμῶ	(ἐποιέου)	ἐποιοῦ	(ἐδηλόου)	ἐδηλοῦ
3.	(ἐτῑμάετο)	ἐτῑμᾶτο	(ἐποιέετο)	ἐποιεῖτο	(ἐδηλόετο)	ἐδηλοῦτο

DUAL

2.	(ἐτῑμάεσθον)	ἐτῑμᾶσθον	(ἐποιέεσθον)	ἐποιεῖσθον	(ἐδηλόεσθον)	ἐδηλοῦσθον
3.	(ἐτῑμαέσθην)	ἐτῑμᾶσθην	(ἐποιεέσθην)	ἐποιείσθην	(ἐδηλοέσθην)	ἐδηλούσθην

PLURAL

1.	(ἐτῑμαόμεθα)	ἐτῑμώμεθα	(ἐποιεόμεθα)	ἐποιούμεθα	(ἐδηλοόμεθα)	ἐδηλούμεθα
2.	(ἐτῑμάεσθε)	ἐτῑμᾶσθε	(ἐποιέεσθε)	ἐποιεῖσθε	(ἐδηλόεσθε)	ἐδηλοῦσθε
3.	(ἐτῑμάοντο)	ἐτῑμῶντο	(ἐποιέοντο)	ἐποιοῦντο	(ἐδηλόοντο)	ἐδηλοῦντο

Present Subjunctive

SINGULAR

1.	(τῑμάωμαι)	τῑμῶμαι	(ποιέωμαι)	ποιῶμαι	(δηλόωμαι)	δηλῶμαι
2.	(τῑμάῃ)	τῑμᾷ	(ποιέῃ)	ποιῇ	(δηλόῃ)	δηλοῖ
3.	(τῑμάηται)	τῑμᾶται	(ποιέηται)	ποιῆται	(δηλόηται)	δηλῶται

DUAL

2.	(τῑμάησθον)	τῑμᾶσθον	(ποιέησθον)	ποιῆσθον	(δηλόησθον)	δηλῶσθον
3.	(τῑμάησθον)	τῑμᾶσθον	(ποιέησθον)	ποιῆσθον	(δηλόησθον)	δηλῶσθον

PLURAL

1.	(τῑμαώμεθα)	τῑμώμεθα	(ποιεώμεθα)	ποιώμεθα	(δηλοώμεθα)	δηλώμεθα
2.	(τῑμάησθε)	τῑμᾶσθε	(ποιέησθε)	ποιῆσθε	(δηλόησθε)	δηλῶσθε
3.	(τῑμάωνται)	τῑμῶνται	(ποιέωνται)	ποιῶνται	(δηλόωνται)	δηλῶνται

Present Optative

SINGULAR

1.	(τῑμαοίμην)	τῑμῴμην	(ποιεοίμην)	ποιοίμην	(δηλοοίμην)	δηλοίμην
2.	(τῑμάοιο)	τῑμῷο	(ποιέοιο)	ποιοῖο	(δηλόοιο)	δηλοῖο
3.	(τῑμάοιτο)	τῑμῷτο	(ποιέοιτο)	ποιοῖτο	(δηλόοιτο)	δηλοῖτο

DUAL

2.	(τῑμάοισθον)	τῑμῶσθον	(ποιέοισθον)	ποιοῖσθον	(δηλόοισθον)	δηλοῖσθον
3.	(τῑμαοίσθην)	τῑμῴσθην	(ποιεοίσθην)	ποιοίσθην	(δηλοοίσθην)	δηλοίσθην

PLURAL

1.	(τῑμαοίμεθα)	τῑμῴμεθα	(ποιεοίμεθα)	ποιοίμεθα	(δηλοοίμεθα)	δηλοίμεθα
2.	(τῑμάοισθε)	τῑμῶσθε	(ποιέοισθε)	ποιοῖσθε	(δηλόοισθε)	δηλοῖσθε
3.	(τῑμάοιντο)	τῑμῶντο	(ποιέοιντο)	ποιοῖντο	(δηλόοιντο)	δηλοῖντο

Present Imperative

SINGULAR

2.	(τῑμάου)	τῑμῶ	(ποιέου)	ποιοῦ	(δηλόου)	δηλοῦ
3.	(τῑμαέσθω)	τῑμᾶσθω	(ποιεέσθω)	ποιείσθω	(δηλοέσθω)	δηλούσθω

DUAL

2.	(τῑμάεσθον)	τῑμᾶσθον	(ποιέεσθον)	ποιεῖσθον	(δηλόεσθον)	δηλοῦσθον
3.	(τῑμαέσθων)	τῑμᾶσθων	(ποιεέσθων)	ποιείσθων	(δηλοέσθων)	δηλούσθων

PLURAL

2.	(τῑμάεσθε)	τῑμᾶσθε	(ποιέεσθε)	ποιεῖσθε	(δηλόεσθε)	δηλοῦσθε
3.	(τῑμαέσθων)	τῑμᾶσθων	(ποιεέσθων)	ποιείσθων	(δηλοέσθων)	δηλούσθων

Present Infinitive

	(τῑμάεσθαι)	τῑμᾶσθαι	(ποιέεσθαι)	ποιεῖσθαι	(δηλόεσθαι)	δηλοῦσθαι

Present Participle

	(τῑμαόμενος)	τῑμώμενος	(ποιεόμενος)	ποιούμενος	(δηλοόμενος)	δηλούμενος

644. Liquid Verbs: future active and middle of *φαίνω show*.

Indicative

		FUTURE ACTIVE		FUTURE MIDDLE	
Sing.	1. (φανέω)	φανῶ		(φανέομαι)	φανοῦμαι
	2. (φανέεις)	φανεῖς		(φανέῃ or -έει)	φανῇ or -εῖ
	3. (φανέει)	φανεῖ		(φανέεται)	φανεῖται
Dual	2. (φανέετον)	φανεῖτον		(φανέεσθον)	φανεῖσθον
	3. (φανέετον)	φανεῖτον		(φανέεσθον)	φανεῖσθον
Plur.	1. (φανέομεν)	φανοῦμεν		(φανεόμεθα)	φανούμεθα
	2. (φανέετε)	φανεῖτε		(φανέεσθε)	φανεῖσθε
	3. (φανέουσι)	φανοῦσι		(φανέονται)	φανοῦνται

Optative

Sing. 1.	(φανεοίην)	φανοίην	(φανεοίμην)	φανοίμην
2.	(φανεοίης)	φανοίης	(φανέοιο)	φανοῖο
3.	(φανεοίη)	φανοίη	(φανέοιτο)	φανοῖτο
Dual 2.	(φανέοιτον)	φανοῖτον	(φανέοισθον)	φανοῖσθον
3.	(φανεοίτην)	φανοίτην	(φανεοίσθην)	φανοίσθην
Plur. 1.	(φανέοιμεν)	φανοῖμεν	(φανεοίμεθα)	φανοίμεθα
2.	(φανέοιτε)	φανοῖτε	(φανέοισθε)	φανοῖσθε
3.	(φανέοιεν)	φανοῖεν	(φανέοιντο)	φανοῖντο

or

Sing. 1.	(φανέοιμι)	[φανοῖμι
2.	(φανέοις)	φανοῖς
3.	(φανέοι)	φανοῖ]

Infinitive

(φανέειν)	φανεῖν	(φανέεσθαι)	φανεῖσθαι

Participle

(φανέων, φανέουσα, φανέον)	φανῶν, φανοῦσα, φανοῦν (cp. § 622)	(φανεόμενος, -η, -ον)	φανούμενος, -η, -ον

645. Liquid Verbs: first aorist active and middle of *φαίνω show.*

Indicative

	1 Aorist Active	1 Aorist Middle
Sing. 1.	ἔφηνα	ἐφηνάμην
2.	ἔφηνας	ἐφήνω
3.	ἔφηνε	ἐφήνατο
Dual 2.	ἐφήνατον	ἐφήνασθον
3.	ἐφηνάτην	ἐφηνάσθην
Plur. 1.	ἐφήναμεν	ἐφηνάμεθα
2.	ἐφήνατε	ἐφήνασθε
3.	ἔφηναν	ἐφήναντο

Subjunctive

Sing. 1.	φήνω	φήνωμαι
2.	φήνῃς	φήνῃ
3.	φήνῃ	φήνηται

	1 Aorist Active	1 Aorist Middle
Dual 2.	φήνητον	φήνησθον
3.	φήνητον	φήνησθον
Plur. 1.	φήνωμεν	φηνώμεθα
2.	φήνητε	φήνησθε
3.	φήνωσι	φήνωνται
	Optative	
Sing. 1.	φήναιμι	φηναίμην
2.	*φήναις* or φήνειας (cp. § 254)	φήναιο
3.	*φήναι* or φήνειε	φήναιτο
Dual 2.	φήναιτον	φήναισθον
3.	φηναίτην	φηναίσθην
Plur. 1.	φήναιμεν	φηναίμεθα
2.	φήναιτε	φήναισθε
3.	*φήναιεν* or φήνειαν (cp. § 254)	φήναιντο
	Imperative	
Sing. 2.	φῆνον	φῆναι
3.	φηνάτω	φηνάσθω
Dual 2.	φήνατον	φήνασθον
3.	φηνάτων	φηνάσθων
Plur. 2.	φήνατε	φήνασθε
3.	φηνάντων	φηνάσθων
	Infinitive	
	φῆναι	φήνασθαι
	Participle	
	φήνᾱς, -ᾶσα, φῆναν (cp. § 618)	φηνάμενος, -η, -ον

CONJUGATION OF MI-VERBS

646. Root class. — Inflection of *τίθημι place*, *ἵστημι set*, *δίδωμι give*, in the present, imperfect, and second aorist tenses; and of *ἐπριάμην I bought*.

Active

Present Indicative

Sing. 1.	τί-θη-μι	ἵ-στη-μι	δί-δω-μι
2.	τί-θη-ς	ἵ-στη-ς	δί-δω-ς
3.	τί-θη-σι	ἵ-στη-σι	δί-δω-σι

Dual	2.	τί-θε-τον	ἵ-στα-τον	δί-δο-τον
	3.	τί-θε-τον	ἵ-στα-τον	δί-δο-τον
Plur.	1.	τί-θε-μεν	ἵ-στα-μεν	δί-δο-μεν
	2.	τί-θε-τε	ἵ-στα-τε	δί-δο-τε
	3.	τι-θέ-ᾱσι	ἱ-στᾶσι	δι-δό-ᾱσι

Imperfect

Sing.	1.	ἐ-τί-θη-ν	ἵ-στη-ν	ἐ-δί-δουν (§ 570)
	2.	ἐ-τί-θεις (§ 559)	ἵ-στη-ς	ἐ-δί-δους
	3.	ἐ-τί-θει	ἵ-στη	ἐ-δί-δου
Dual	2.	ἐ-τί-θε-τον	ἵ-στα-τον	ἐ-δί-δο-τον
	3.	ἐ-τι-θέ-την	ἱ-στά-την	ἐ-δι-δό-την
Plur.	1.	ἐ-τί-θε-μεν	ἵ-στα-μεν	ἐ-δί-δο-μεν
	2.	ἐ-τί-θε-τε	ἵ-στα-τε	ἐ-δί-δο-τε
	3.	ἐ-τί-θε-σαν	ἵ-στα-σαν	ἐ-δί-δο-σαν

Present Subjunctive

Sing.	1.	τι-θῶ	ἱ-στῶ	δι-δῶ
	2.	τι-θῇ-ς	ἱ-στῇ-ς	δι-δῷ-ς
	3.	τι-θῇ	ἱ-στῇ	δι-δῷ
Dual	2.	τι-θῆ-τον	ἱ-στῆ-τον	δι-δῶ-τον
	3.	τι-θῆ-τον	ἱ-στῆ-τον	δι-δῶ-τον
Plur.	1.	τι-θῶ-μεν	ἱ-στῶ-μεν	δι-δῶ-μεν
	2.	τι-θῆ-τε	ἱ-στῆ-τε	δι-δῶ-τε
	3.	τι-θῶ-σι	ἱ-στῶ-σι	δι-δῶ-σι

Present Optative

Sing.	1.	τι-θείη-ν	ἱ-σταίη-ν	δι-δοίη-ν
	2.	τι-θείη-ς	ἱ-σταίη-ς	δι-δοίη-ς
	3.	τι-θείη	ἱ-σταίη	δι-δοίη
Dual	2.	τι-θεῖ-τον	ἱ-σταῖ-τον	δι-δοῖ-τον
	3.	τι-θεί-την	ἱ-σταί-την	δι-δοί-την
Plur.	1.	τι-θεῖ-μεν	ἱ-σταῖ-μεν	δι-δοῖ-μεν
	2.	τι-θεῖ-τε	ἱ-σταῖ-τε	δι-δοῖ-τε
	3.	τι-θεῖε-ν	ἱ-σταῖε-ν	δι-δοῖε-ν
		or[1]	or[1]	or[1]

[1] In the dual and plural the forms without η are commonly found.

Dual 2.	[τι-θείη-τον]	[ἱ-σταίη-τον]	[δι-δοίη-τον]
3.	[τι-θειή-την]	[ἱ-σταιή-την]	[δι-δοιή-την]
Plur. 1.	[τι-θείη-μεν]	[ἱ-σταίη-μεν]	[δι-δοίη-μεν]
2.	[τι-θείη-τε]	[ἱ-σταίη-τε]	[δι-δοίη-τε]
3.	[τι-θείη-σαν]	[ἱ-σταίη-σαν]	[δι-δοίη-σαν]

Present Imperative

Sing. 2.	τί-θει (§ 559)	ἵ-στη (§ 551)	δί-δου (§ 570)
3.	τι-θέ-τω	ἱ-στά-τω	δι-δό-τω
Dual 2.	τί-θε-τον	ἵ-στα-τον	δί-δο-τον
3.	τι-θέ-των	ἱ-στά-των	δι-δό-των
Plur. 2.	τί-θε-τε	ἵ-στα-τε	δί-δο-τε
3.	τι-θέ-ντων	ἱ-στά-ντων	δι-δό-ντων

Present Infinitive

τι-θέ-ναι	ἱ-στά-ναι	δι-δό-ναι

Present Participle

τι-θείς, -εῖσα, -έν (§ 620)	ἱ-στάς, -ᾶσα, -άν (§ 617)	δι-δούς, -οῦσα, -όν (§ 621)

MIDDLE AND PASSIVE

Present Indicative

Sing. 1.	τί-θε-μαι	ἵ-στα-μαι	δί-δο-μαι
2.	τί-θε-σαι	ἵ-στα-σαι	δί-δο-σαι
3.	τί-θε-ται	ἵ-στα-ται	δί-δο-ται
Dual 2.	τί-θε-σθον	ἵ-στα-σθον	δί-δο-σθον
3.	τί-θε-σθον	ἵ-στα-σθον	δί-δο-σθον
Plur. 1.	τι-θέ-μεθα	ἱ-στά-μεθα	δι-δό-μεθα
2.	τί-θε-σθε	ἵ-στα-σθε	δί-δο-σθε
3.	τί-θε-νται	ἵ-στα-νται	δί-δο-νται

Imperfect

Sing. 1.	ἐ-τι-θέ-μην	ἱ-στά-μην	ἐ-δι-δό-μην
2.	ἐ-τί-θε-σο	ἵ-στα-σο	ἐ-δί-δο-σο
3.	ἐ-τί-θε-το	ἵ-στα-το	ἐ-δί-δο-το
Dual 2.	ἐ-τί-θε-σθον	ἵ-στα-σθον	ἐ-δί-δο-σθον
3.	ἐ-τι-θέ-σθην	ἱ-στά-σθην	ἐ-δι-δό-σθην

Plur.	1.	ἐ-τι-θέ-μεθα	ἵ-στά-μεθα	ἐ-δι-δό-μεθα
	2.	ἐ-τί-θε-σθε	ἵ-στα-σθε	ἐ-δί-δο-σθε
	3.	ἐ-τί-θε-ντο	ἵ-στα-ντο	ἐ-δί-δο-ντο

Present Subjunctive

Sing.	1.	τι-θῶ-μαι	ἱ-στῶ-μαι	δι-δῶ-μαι
	2.	τι-θῇ	ἱ-στῇ	δι-δῷ
	3.	τι-θῆ-ται	ἱ-στῆ-ται	δι-δῶ-ται
Dual	2.	τι-θῆ-σθον	ἱ-στῆ-σθον	δι-δῶ-σθον
	3.	τι-θῆ-σθον	ἱ-στῆ-σθον	δι-δῶ-σθον
Plur.	1.	τι-θώ-μεθα	ἱ-στώ-μεθα	δι-δώ-μεθα
	2.	τι-θῆ-σθε	ἱ-στῆ-σθε	δι-δῶ-σθε
	3.	τι-θῶ-νται	ἱ-στῶ-νται	δι-δῶ-νται

Present Optative

Sing.	1.	τι-θεί-μην	ἱ-σταί-μην	δι-δοί-μην
	2.	τι-θεῖ-ο	ἱ-σταῖ-ο	δι-δοῖ-ο
	3.	τι-θεῖ-το	ἱ-σταῖ-το	δι-δοῖ-το
Dual	2.	τι-θεῖ-σθον	ἱ-σταῖ-σθον	δι-δοῖ-σθον
	3.	τι-θεί-σθην	ἱ-σταί-σθην	δι-δοί-σθην
Plur.	1.	τι-θεί-μεθα	ἱ-σταί-μεθα	δι-δοί-μεθα
	2.	τι-θεῖ-σθε	ἱ-σταῖ-σθε	δι-δοῖ-σθε
	3.	τι-θεῖ-ντο	ἱ-σταῖ-ντο	δι-δοῖ-ντο

or [1]

Sing.	1.	τι-θοί-μην
	2.	τι-θοῖ-ο
	3.	τι-θοῖ-το
Dual	2.	τι-θοῖ-σθον
	3.	τι-θοί-σθην
Plur.	1.	τι-θοί-μεθα
	2.	τι-θοῖ-σθε
	3.	τι-θοῖ-ντο

Present Imperative

Sing.	2.	τί-θε-σο	ἵ-στα-σο	δί-δο-σο
	3.	τι-θέ-σθω	ἱ-στά-σθω	δι-δό-σθω

[1] Cp. ποιοίμην (§ 643).

Dual 2.	τί-θε-σθον	ἵ-στα-σθον	δί-δο-σθον
3.	τι-θέ-σθων	ἱ-στά-σθων	δι-δό-σθων
Plur. 2.	τί-θε-σθε	ἵ-στα-σθε	δί-δο-σθε
3.	τι-θέ-σθων	ἱ-στά-σθων	δι-δό-σθων

Present Infinitive

τί-θε-σθαι	ἵ-στα-σθαι	δί-δο-σθαι

Present Participle

τι-θέ-μενος	ἱ-στά-μενος	δι-δό-μενος

Second Aorist

Indicative

	Active	Middle	Active	Middle	Active	Middle
Sing. 1.	(ἔθηκα)	ἐ-θέμην	ἔ-στη-ν[1]	ἐπριάμην[2]	(ἔδωκα)	ἐ-δό-μην
2.	(ἔθηκας)	ἔ-θου	ἔ-στη-ς	ἐπρίω	(ἔδωκας)	ἔ-δου
3.	(ἔθηκε)	ἔ-θε-το	ἔ-στη	ἐπρίατο	(ἔδωκε)	ἔ-δο-το
Dual 2.	ἔ-θε-τον	ἔ-θε-σθον	ἔ-στη-τον	ἐ-πρία-σθον	ἔ-δο-τον	ἔ-δο-σθον
3.	ἐ-θέ-την	ἐ-θέ-σθην	ἐ-στή-την	ἐ-πριά-σθην	ἐ-δό-την	ἐ-δό-σθην
Plur. 1.	ἔ-θε-μεν	ἐ-θέ-μεθα	ἔ-στη-μεν	ἐ-πριά-μεθα	ἔ-δο-μεν	ἐ-δό-μεθα
2.	ἔ-θε-τε	ἔ-θε-σθε	ἔ-στη-τε	ἐ-πρία-σθε	ἔ-δο-τε	ἔ-δο-σθε
3.	ἔ-θε-σαν	ἔ-θε-ντο	ἔ-στη-σαν	ἐ-πρία-ντο	ἔ-δο-σαν	ἔ-δο-ντο

Subjunctive

Sing. 1.	θῶ	θῶ-μαι	στῶ	πρίω-μαι	δῶ	δῶ-μαι
2.	θῇ-ς	θῇ	στῇ-ς	πρίῃ	δῷ-ς	δῷ
3.	θῇ	θῆ-ται	στῇ	πρίη-ται	δῷ	δῶ-ται
Dual 2.	θῆ-τον	θῆ-σθον	στῆ-τον	πρίη-σθον	δῶ-τον	δῶ-σθον
3.	θῆ-τον	θῆ-σθον	στῆ-τον	πρίη-σθον	δῶ-τον	δῶ-σθον
Plur. 1.	θῶ-μεν	θώ-μεθα	στῶ-μεν	πριώ-μεθα	δῶ-μεν	δώ-μεθα
2.	θῆ-τε	θῆ-σθε	στῆ-τε	πρίη-σθε	δῶ-τε	δῶ-σθε
3.	θῶ-σι	θῶ-νται	στῶ-σι	πρίω-νται	δῶ-σι	δῶ-νται

Optative

Sing. 1.	θείη-ν	θεί-μην	σταίη-ν	πριαί-μην	δοίη-ν	δοί-μην
2.	θείη-ς	θεῖ-ο	σταίη-ς	πρίαι-ο	δοίη-ς	δοῖ-ο
3.	θείη	θεῖ-το[3]	σταίη	πρίαι-το	δοίη	δοῖ-το

[1] *stood.* [2] *bought,* § 550. [3] Or θοῖτο.

Dual	2.	θεῖ-τον	θεῖ-σθον	σταῖ-τον	πρίαι-σθον	δοῖ-τον	δοῖ-σθον
	3.	θεί-την	θεί-σθην	σταί-την	πριαί-σθην	δοί-την	δοί-σθην
Plur.	1.	θεῖ-μεν	θεί-μεθα	σταῖ-μεν	πριαί-μεθα	δοῖ-μεν	δοί-μεθα
	2.	θεῖ-τε	θεῖ-σθε	σταῖ-τε	πρίαι-σθε	δοῖ-τε	δοῖ-σθε
	3.	θεῖε-ν	θεῖ-ντο	σταῖε-ν	πρίαι-ντο	δοῖε-ν	δοῖ-ντο
		or	or	or		or	
Dual	2.	[θείη-τον]		[σταίη-τον]		[δοίη-τον]	
	3.	[θειή-την]		[σταιή-την]		[δοιή-την]	
Plur.	1.	[θείη-μεν]	θοίμεθα	[σταίη-μεν]		[δοίη-μεν]	
	2.	[θείη-τε]	θοῖσθε	[σταίη-τε]		[δοίη-τε]	
	3.	[θείη-σαν]	θοῖντο	[σταίη-σαν]		[δοίη-σαν]	

Imperative

Sing.	2.	θέ-ς	θοῦ	στῆ-θι	πρίω	δό-ς	δοῦ
	3.	θέ-τω	θέ-σθω	στή-τω	πριά-σθω	δό-τω	δό-σθω
Dual	2.	θέ-τον	θέ-σθον	στῆ-τον	πρία-σθον	δό-τον	δό-σθον
	3.	θέ-των	θέ-σθων	στή-των	πριά-σθων	δό-των	δό-σθων
Plur.	2.	θέ-τε	θέ-σθε	στῆ-τε	πρία-σθε	δό-τε	δό-σθε
	3.	θέ-ντων	θέ-σθων	στά-ντων	πριά-σθων	δό-ντων	δό-σθων

Infinitive

θεῖ-ναι	θέ-σθαι	στῆ-ναι	πρία-σθαι	δοῦ-ναι	δό-σθαι

Participle

θείς, θεῖσα, θέν[1]	θέ-μενος, -η, -ον	στάς, στᾶσα, στάν[2]	πριά-μενος, -η, -ον	δούς, δοῦσα, δόν[3]	δό-μενος, -η, -ον

SECOND PERFECT OF MI-VERBS

647. A few verbs of the *μι*-class have a second perfect and pluperfect. Only the dual and plural occur; for the singular, the first perfect and pluperfect are used. The second perfect and pluperfect of *ἵστημι* are inflected as follows:

---

[1] Cp. § 620. [2] Cp. § 617. [3] Cp. § 621.

SECOND PERFECT

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT. (poetic)	IMV. (poetic)
Sing. 1.	(ἕστηκα) *stand*	ἑστῶ	ἑσταίη-ν	
2.	(ἕστηκας)	ἑστῇ-ς	ἑσταίη-ς	ἕστα-θι
3.	(ἕστηκε)	ἑστῇ	ἑσταίη	ἑστά-τω
Dual 2.	ἕστα-τον	ἑστῆ-τον	ἑσταίη-τον or -αῖτον	ἕστα-τον
3.	ἕστα-τον	ἑστῆ-τον	ἑσταιή-την or -αίτην	ἑστά-των
Plur. 1.	ἕστα-μεν	ἑστῶ-μεν	ἑσταίη-μεν or -αῖμεν	
2.	ἕστα-τε	ἑστῆ-τε	ἑσταίη-τε or -αῖτε	ἕστα-τε
3.	ἑστᾶσι	ἑστῶ-σι	ἑσταίη-σαν or -αῖεν	ἑστά-ντων

Infinitive ἑστά-ναι *Participle* ἑστώ-ς, ἑστῶσα, ἑστός (§ 624)

SECOND PLUPERFECT

Sing. 1.	(εἱστήκη) *stood*	Dual 2.	ἕστα-τον	Plur. 1.	ἕστα-μεν
2.	(εἱστήκης)	3.	ἑστά-την	2.	ἕστα-τε
3.	(εἱστήκει)			3.	ἕστα-σαν

648. -νῡμι class. — Inflection of the present system of *δείκνῡμι show* and of second aorist *ἔδῡν entered.*

Indicative

	ACTIVE		MIDDLE AND PASSIVE		ACTIVE
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Present*	*Imperfect*	*2 Aorist*
Sing. 1.	δεικ-νῡ-μι	ἐ-δεικ-νῡ-ν	δεικ-νυ-μαι	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-μην	ἔ-δῡ-ν
2.	δεικ-νῡ-ς	ἐ-δεικ-νῡ-ς	δεικ-νυ-σαι	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-σο	ἔ-δῡ-ς
3.	δεικ-νῡ σι	ἐ-δεικ-νῡ	δεικ-νυ-ται	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-το	ἔ-δῡ
Dual 2.	δεικ-νυ-τον	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-τον	δεικ-νυ-σθον	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-σθον	ἔ-δῡ-τον
3.	δεικ-νυ-τον	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-την	δεικ-νυ-σθον	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-σθην	ἐ-δῦ-την
Plur. 1.	δεικ-νυ-μεν	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-μεν	δεικ-νύ-μεθα	ἐ-δεικ-νύ-μεθα	ἔ-δῡ-μεν
2.	δεικ-νυ-τε	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-τε	δεικ-νυ-σθε	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-σθε	ἔ-δῡ-τε
3.	δεικ-νύ-āσι	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-σαν	δεικ-νυ-νται	ἐ-δεικ-νυ-ντο	ἔ-δῡ-σαν

Subjunctive

Sing. 1.	δεικνύω	δεικνύωμαι	δύω
2.	δεικνύῃς	δεικνύῃ	δύῃς
3.	δεικνύῃ	δεικνύηται	δύῃ
Dual 2.	δεικνύητον	δεικνύησθον	δύητον
3.	δεικνύητον	δεικνύησθον	δύητον

Plur. 1.	δεικνύωμεν	δεικνυώμεθα	δύωμεν
2.	δεικνύητε	δεικνύησθε	δύητε
3.	δεικνύωσι	δεικνύωνται	δύωσι

Optative

Sing. 1.	δεικνύοιμι	δεικνυοίμην	
2.	δεικνύοις	δεικνύοιο	
3.	δεικνύοι	δεικνύοιτο	
Dual 2.	δεικνύοιτον	δεικνύοισθον	
3.	δεικνυοίτην	δεικνυοίσθην	
Plur. 1.	δεικνύοιμεν	δεικνυοίμεθα	
2.	δεικνύοιτε	δεικνύοισθε	
3.	δεικνύοιεν	δεικνύοιντο	

Imperative

Sing. 2.	δείκ-νῡ (§ 579)	δείκ-νυ-σο	δείκ-νυ-θι
3.	δεικ-νύ-τω	δεικ-νύ-σθω	δεικ-νύ-τω
Dual 2.	δείκ-νυ-τον	δείκ-νυ-σθον	δείκ-νυ-τον
3.	δεικ-νύ-των	δεικ-νύ-σθων	δεικ-νύ-των
Plur. 2.	δείκ-νυ-τε	δείκ-νυ-σθε	δείκ-νυ-τε
3.	δεικ-νύ-ντων	δεικ-νύ-σθων	δεικ-νύ-ντων

Infinitive

δεικ-νύ-ναι	δείκ-νυ-σθαι	δείκ-νυ-ναι

Participle

δεικ-νύς, -ῦσα, -ύν (§ 619)	δεικ-νύ-μενος, -η, -ον	δείκ-νυς, δείκ-νῦσα, δείκ-νυν (cp. § 619)

649. ἵημι (ἑ-, ἡ-) *send* is inflected nearly like τίθημι (§ 646). The inflection of the present and second aorist systems is as follows:

	Active			Middle (Passive)		Middle
	Indicative			*Indicative*		
	Pres.	Impf.	2 Aor.	Pres.	Impf.	2 Aor.
Sing. 1.	ἵημι	ἵην	(ἧκα)	ἵεμαι	ἱέμην	— εἵμην
2.	ἵης, ἱεῖς	ἵεις	(ἧκας)	ἵεσαι	ἵεσο	— εἶσο
3.	ἵησι	ἵει	(ἧκε)	ἵεται	ἵετο	— εἶτο

Dual	2.	ἵετον	ἵετον	— εἶτον	ἵεσθον	ἵεσθον	— εἶσθον
	3.	ἵετον	ἰέτην	— εἴτην	ἵεσθον	ἰέσθην	— εἴσθην
Plur.	1.	ἵεμεν	ἵεμεν	— εἶμεν	ἵεμεθα	ἰέμεθα	— εἴμεθα
	2.	ἵετε	ἵετε	— εἶτε	ἵεσθε	ἵεσθε	— εἶσθε
	3.	ἱᾶσι	ἵεσαν	— εἶσαν	ἵενται	ἵεντο	— εἶντο

Subjunctive

Sing.	1.	ἱῶ	— ὦ	ἱῶμαι	— ὦμαι
	2.	ἱῇς	— ᾖς	ἱῇ	— ᾖ
	3.	ἱῇ	— ᾖ	ἵηται	— ἧται
Dual	2.	ἵητον	— ἦτον	ἵησθον	— ἧσθον
	3.	ἵητον	— ἦτον	ἵησθον	— ἧσθον
Plur.	1.	ἱῶμεν	— ὦμεν	ἱώμεθα	— ὥμεθα
	2.	ἵητε	— ἦτε	ἵησθε	— ἧσθε
	3.	ἱῶσι	— ὦσι	ἱῶνται	— ὦνται

Optative

Sing.	1.	ἱείην	— εἴην	ἱείμην	— εἵμην
	2.	ἱείης	— εἴης	ἱεῖο	— εἷο
	3.	ἱείη	— εἴη	ἱεῖτο	— εἶτο (— οἶτο)
Dual	2.	ἱεῖτον or ἱείητον	— εἶτον or εἴητον	ἱεῖσθον	— εἶσθον
	3.	ἱείτην or ἱειήτην	— εἴτην or εἰήτην	ἱείσθην	— εἴσθην
Plur.	1.	ἱεῖμεν or ἱείημεν	— εἶμεν or εἴημεν	ἱείμεθα	— εἴμεθα (— οἴμεθα)
	2.	ἱεῖτε or ἱείητε	— εἶτε or εἴητε	ἱεῖσθε	— εἶσθε (— οἶσθε)
	3.	ἱεῖεν or ἱείησαν	— εἶεν or εἴησαν	ἱεῖντο	— εἶντο (— οἶντο)

Imperative

Sing.	2.	ἵει	— ἒς	ἵεσο	— οὗ
	3.	ἱέτω	— ἕτω	ἱέσθω	— ἕσθω
Dual	2.	ἵετον	— ἕτον	ἵεσθον	— ἔσθον
	3.	ἱέτων	— ἕτων	ἱέσθων	— ἔσθων
Plur.	2.	ἵετε	— ἕτε	ἵεσθε	— ἔσθε
	3.	ἱέντων	— ἕντων	ἱέσθων	— ἔσθων

Infinitive

τέναι	— εἶναι	ἕεσθαι	— ἔσθαι

Participle

τείς, τεῖσα, τέν (cp. § 620)	— εἷς, — εἶσα, — ἕν (cp. § 620)	τέμενος	— ἕμενος

Future: — ἥσω in prose only in composition; — ἥσομαι.
First Aorist: ἧκα in prose usually in composition, — ἡκάμην; both only in the indicative.
Perfect Active: — εἷκα only in composition.
Perfect Middle (Passive): — εἷμαι, — εἵμην (pluperfect); — εἶσθα, — εἶσθαι, — εἰμένος only in composition.
Aorist Passive: — εἵθην, — ἑθῶ, — ἑθῆναι, — ἑθείς; only in composition.
Future Passive: — ἑθήσομαι only in composition.
Verbal Adjectives: — ἑτός, — ἑτέος; only in composition.

650. εἰμί (ἐσ-; cp. Lat. *es-se*) *I am* is inflected as follows:

		PRESENT			IMPERFECT
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing. 1.	εἰμί	ὦ	εἴην		ἦ or ἦν
2.	εἶ	ᾖς	εἴης	ἴσθι	ἦσθα
3.	ἐστί	ᾖ	εἴη	ἔστω	ἦν
Dual 2.	ἐστόν	ἦτον	εἴητον or εἶτον	ἔστον	ἦστον
3.	ἐστόν	ἦτον	εἰήτην or εἴτην	ἔστων	ἤστην
Plur. 1.	ἐσμέν	ὦμεν	εἴημεν or εἶμεν		ἦμεν
2.	ἐστέ	ἦτε	εἴητε or εἶτε	ἔστε	ἦτε or ἦστε (rare)
3.	εἰσί	ὦσι	εἴησαν or εἶεν	ἔστων	ἦσαν

Inf.: εἶναι. Partic.. ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν, gen. ὄντος, οὔσης, ὄντος, etc.

FUTURE (with middle forms)

ἔσομαι, ἔσῃ (or ἔσει), ἔσται, ἔσεσθον, ἔσεσθον, ἐσόμεθα, ἔσεσθε, ἔσονται, opt. ἐσοίμην, inf. ἔσεσθαι, partic. ἐσόμενος, -η, -ον

a. In the imperative 3 pl. ὄντων and ἔστωσαν also occur.

b. All the forms of the present indicative except εἶ are enclitic.

c. In composition ὤν retains its accent, as παρών, παροῦσα, παρόντος, etc.; and so ἔσται, as παρέσται.

651. **εἶμι** (*ἰ-*, *εἰ-*; cp. Lat. *ī-re*) *go* has only the present system:

			PRESENT		IMPERFECT
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing. 1.	εἶμι	ἴω	ἴοιμι or ἰοίην		ᾔα or ᾖειν
2.	εἶ	ἴῃς	ἴοις	ἴθι	ᾔεισθα or ᾔεις
3.	εἶσι	ἴῃ	ἴοι	ἴτω	ᾔειν or ᾔει
Dual 2.	ἴτον	ἴητον	ἴοιτον	ἴτον	ᾖτον
3.	ἴτον	ἴητον	ἰοίτην	ἴτων	ᾖτην
Plur. 1.	ἴμεν	ἴωμεν	ἴοιμεν		ᾖμεν
2.	ἴτε	ἴητε	ἴοιτε	ἴτε	ᾖτε
3.	ἴᾶσι	ἴωσι	ἴοιεν	ἰόντων	ᾖσαν or ᾖεσαν

Inf.: **ἰέναι**. Partic.: **ἰών, ἰοῦσα, ἰόν**, gen. **ἰόντος, ἰούσης, ἰόντος**, etc.
Verbal Adjectives: **ἰτός, ἰτέος, ἰητέος**.

a. The imperative 3 pl. *ἴτωσαν* occurs rarely.

b. The participle *ἰών* is accented like a second aorist. The accent of the simple form of participle and infinitive is kept in composition, as *ἀπιών*, *ἀπιοῦσα*, *ἀπιέναι*. Otherwise the compounds have recessive accent so far as the rules allow: *ἄπειμι*, *ἄπεισι*, but *ἀπῆα*, *ἀπῆμεν*.

652. *φημί* (*φα-*, *φη-*, cp. Lat. *fā-rī*) *say, say yes*, or *assent* is inflected in the present as follows:

			PRESENT		IMPERFECT
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Sing. 1.	φημί	φῶ	φαίην		ἔφην
2.	φῄς	φῇς	φαίης	φαθί or φάθι	ἔφησθα or ἔφης
3.	φησί	φῇ	φαίη	φάτω	ἔφη
Dual 2.	φατόν	φῆτον	not found	φάτον	ἔφατον
3.	φατόν	φῆτον	not found	φάτων	ἐφάτην
Plur. 1.	φαμέν	φῶμεν	φαῖμεν or φαίημεν		ἔφαμεν
2.	φατέ	φῆτε	φαίητε	φάτε	ἔφατε
3.	φᾶσί	φῶσι	φαῖεν or φαίησαν	φάντων	ἔφασαν

Inf.: **φάναι.** Partic.. poet. **φᾶς, φᾶσα, φάν** (Attic prose **φάσκων**).
Verbal Adjectives: **φατός** (poet.), **φατέος.**
Future: **φήσω, φήσειν, φήσων.**
First Aorist: **ἔφησα, φήσω, φήσαιμι, ——, φῆσαι, φήσᾱς.**
Pf. Pass. Imv.: **πεφάσθω** *let it be said.*

a. All the forms of the present indicative except **φῄς** are enclitic.

653. In place of **ἧμαι** *sit* we find usually *κάθ-ημαι* in Attic prose and comedy. *κάθημαι* sometimes is perfect in meaning (*I have sat, I have been seated*). The *σ* of the verb stem does not appear except before *-το*.

		Present			Imperfect
	Indic.	Subjv.	Opt.	Imv.	Indic.
Sing. 1.	**κάθημαι**	**καθῶμαι**	**καθοίμην**		**ἐκαθήμην** or **καθήμην**
2.	**κάθησαι**	**καθῇ**	**καθοῖο**	**κάθησο**	**ἐκάθησο**	**καθῆσο**
3.	**κάθηται**	**καθῆται**	**καθοῖτο**	**καθήσθω**	**ἐκάθητο**	**καθῆστο**[1]
Dual 2.	**κάθησθον**	**καθῆσθον**	**καθοῖσθον**	**κάθησθον**	**ἐκάθησθον**	**καθῆσθον**
3.	**κάθησθον**	**καθῆσθον**	**καθοίσθην**	**καθήσθων**	**ἐκαθήσθην**	**καθήσθην**
Plur. 1.	**καθήμεθα**	**καθώμεθα**	**καθοίμεθα**		**ἐκαθήμεθα**	**καθήμεθα**
2.	**κάθησθε**	**καθῆσθε**	**καθοῖσθε**	**κάθησθε**	**ἐκάθησθε**	**καθῆσθε**
3.	**κάθηνται**	**καθῶνται**	**καθοῖντο**	**καθήσθων**	**ἐκάθηντο**	**καθῆντο**

Inf.: **καθῆσθαι.** Partic.: **καθήμενος.**

a. In the imperfect **ἐκαθήμην** is used about as often as *καθήμην*.

654. **κεῖμαι** (*κει-*) *lie, am laid*, regularly used in the present and imperfect instead of the perfect and pluperfect passive of *τίθημι place*.

	Present				Imperfect
	Indic.	Subjv.	Opt.	Imv.	Indic.
Sing. 1.	**κεῖμαι**				**ἐκείμην**
2.	**κεῖσαι**			**κεῖσο**	**ἔκεισο**
3.	**κεῖται**	**κέηται**	**κέοιτο**	**κείσθω**	**ἔκειτο**

[1] Or **καθῆτο.**

	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.	IMV.	INDIC.
Dual 2.	κεῖσθον			κεῖσθον	ἔκεισθον
3.	κεῖσθον			κείσθων	ἐκείσθην
Plur. 1.	κείμεθα				ἐκείμεθα
2.	κεῖσθε	(δια)κέησθε		κεῖσθε	ἔκεισθε
3.	κεῖνται	(κατα)κέωνται	(προσ)κέοιντο	κείσθων	ἔκειντο

Inf.: κεῖσθαι. Partic.: κείμενος.
Future: κείσομαι, κείσῃ or κείσει, κείσεται, etc.

a. In the subjunctive and optative *κει-* becomes *κε* before a vowel.

b. Compounds have recessive accent only in present indicative and imperative: *κατάκειμαι*, *κατάκεισο*, but *κατακεῖσθαι*.

655. *οἶδα* (*ἰδ*, *εἰδ-ε*, *οἰδ-*; cp. Lat. *videō*) *know* is a perfect with the meaning of a present, and formed without reduplication. The second perfect and second pluperfect are inflected as follows:

	2 PERFECT					2 PLUPERFECT	
	INDIC.	SUBJV.	OPT.		IMV.	INDIC.	
Sing. 1.	οἶδα	εἰδῶ	εἰδείην			ᾔδη	or ᾔδειν
2.	οἶσθα	εἰδῇς	εἰδείης		ἴσθι	ᾔδησθα	ᾔδεις
3.	οἶδε	εἰδῇ	εἰδείη		ἴστω	ᾔδει(ν)	
Dual 2.	ἴστον	εἰδῆτον	εἰδεῖτον		ἴστον	ἴστον	
3.	ἴστον	εἰδῆτον	εἰδείτην		ἴστων	ἴστην	
Plur. 1.	ἴσμεν	εἰδῶμεν	εἰδεῖμεν or εἰδείημεν			ἴσμεν	ἴδεμεν
2.	ἴστε	εἰδῆτε	εἰδεῖτε	εἰδείητε	ἴστε	ἴστε	ἴδετε
3.	ἴσᾱσι	εἰδῶσι	εἰδεῖεν	εἰδείησαν	ἴστων	ἴσαν	ἴδεσαν

Inf.: εἰδέναι. Partic.: εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός.
Verbal Adjective: ἰστέος. Future: εἴσομαι.
Compound: σύνοιδα *am conscious of*.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

USES OF THE CASES

656. Nominative:

1. Subject (§ 53. *a*).
2. Predicate nominative (§ 53. *k*).

657. Vocative:

Person addressed (cp. § 64, *O brave captain*).

658. Accusative:

1. DIRECT OBJECT (§ 53. *b*).
2. COGNATE (§§ 181, 356).
3. Adverbial (§ 284).
4. Specification (§ 279).
5. Extent of time or space (§ 142).
6. Limit of motion, always with a preposition (cp. § 53. *e*).
7. Two accusatives after verbs of *making* and *appointing; asking* and *depriving* (§§ 510, 511).
8. Subject of infinitive (§ 53. *g*).
9. Absolute (§ 566).

659. Genitive:

True genitive.

1. "OF" RELATIONS, including
2. Subjective and Objective (§ 53. *f*).
3. Possession (§§ 53. *f*, 72).
4. Measure (§ 278).
5. Material (cp. § 502. II. 16).
6. Value (§ 402).
7. PARTITIVE (§ 179).
8. Time *within which* (§ 155).
9. After adverbs of place (§ 372).

10. SEPARATION (§ 201).
11. Comparison (§ 355).

---

12. Absolute (§ 401).
13. With *ὑπό* to express agent (§ 390).
14. In the predicate (§ 229).

660. Dative:

True dative.
1. "TO" OR "FOR" RELATIONS, including
2. Indirect object, etc. (§ 53. *c*).
3. Interest (advantage or disadvantage) (§ 53. *d*).
4. Possession (§ 119).
5. Agent with perfect passive (§ 458) and verbals in *-τέος* (§ 478).

6. LOCATIVE: Time *when* (§ 180).
   Place *where* (after *prepositions*, *ἐν*, etc.).
7. INSTRUMENTAL, including
8. Means and Manner, etc. (§ 141).
9. Degree of difference (§ 410).
10. Respect (§ 322).
11. Cause (§ 403).
12. Association (§ 317).

---

13. Dative with adjectives (§ 111).
14. After verbs compounded with certain prepositions (§ 136).

USES OF THE MOODS

For constructions that take the negative *μή* instead of *οὐ* see *μή* in the general VOCABULARY.

661. Indicative, — in addition to independent statements and ordinary relative clauses, note especially:

1. ἐπεί and ἐπειδή *when* with imperfect or *after* with aorist indicative (§ 167); ὅτε *when* commonly with the imperfect, of past time.
2. ἐπεί and ὅτι causal *since* with various tenses of indicative (§ 310).
3. ἕως, ἕστε, and μέχρι, *while, so long as, until,* with present or past indicative (§§ 522. 1, 548. I. 2).
4. πρίν *until,* after a negative clause, with aorist indicative (§ 523. 1).
5. εἰ *if* with various tenses of indicative in *real* conditions (§ 106).
6. εἰ *if* with imperfect or aorist indicative in contrary to fact (*unreal*) conditions — much less frequent (§ 545).
7. εἰ *if* with future indicative in *warning future* conditions (§ 242).
8. ὥστε *so that* with various tenses of indicative to express result (§ 147).

   [Cp. ὥστε with infinitive (§ 147).]
9. ὅπως with future indicative after verbs signifying *to strive for, to care for,* or *to effect* (§ 535).

662. Subjunctive:

1. Introduced by ἐάν (ἄν, ἤν) in protasis of more vivid future (§ 241) or present general condition (§§ 398, 399).
2. Introduced by relative (ὅς, ὅστις) or temporal word (ἐπεί, ὅτε, ἕως, etc.) in protasis (§§ 248, 400, 522. 2, 523. 2).

NOTE. — ἄν always accompanies the subjunctive in protasis. ὅτε + ἄν = ὅταν; ὁπότε + ἄν = ὁπόταν; ἐπεί + ἄν = ἐπήν or ἐπάν; ἐπειδή + ἄν = ἐπειδάν.

3. Introduced by *ἵνα*, *ὅπως*, or *ὡς*, *in order that*, after primary tenses and sometimes after secondary tenses (§§ 243, 535. *a*).
4. Introduced by *μή lest* or *μὴ οὐ lest not* after verbs of *fearing* in primary tenses and sometimes in secondary tenses (§ 438).
5. Hortatory, in first person (§ 244).
6. Deliberative, in first person (§ 564).
7. Prohibitory, in second person of aorist tense with *μή* (§ 309. 2).

663. Optative:

1. In future wishes (§ 584).

   [Wishes that cannot be realized (in present or past time) are expressed by the imperfect or aorist indicative introduced by *εἴθε* or *εἰ γάρ* (§ 585); they may also be expressed by using *ὤφελον I ought, etc.*, with the infinitive (§ 586).]
2. In indirect discourse after a secondary tense of the verb of *saying*, representing an indicative or subjunctive of the *same tense* in the direct discourse (§ 260).

   [But the indicative or the mood of the direct quotation may be retained (§ 260).]
3. In indirect questions (§§ 345, 565).

   [But the indicative or the mood of the direct question may be retained (§ 345).]
4. With *ἄν* in the potential use (§ 266). *ἄν* can never stand first in its clause.
5. Introduced by *εἰ if* in protasis of the less vivid future condition (§ 267) or past general condition (*iterative* optative), § 416.
6. Introduced by a relative (*ὅς*, *ὅστις*) or temporal

word (ὅτε, etc.) in protasis of a condition, particularly of the past general (*iterative* optative), § 417.

7. Introduced by ἵνα, ὅπως, or ὡς, *in order that*, after secondary tenses (§§ 268, 535. *a*).
8. Introduced by μή *lest* or μὴ οὐ *lest not* after verbs of *fearing* in secondary tenses (§ 438. *a*).

664. Imperative:

1. In commands.
2. In prohibitions: μή and the *present* imperative (§ 309. 1).

   [The *aorist* subjunctive with μή is also used (§ 309. 2).]

665. Infinitive:

1. In indirect discourse after ἔφη *he said*, ἐνόμισε *he thought*, and similar verbs, when the infinitive represents an indicative or optative of the *same tense* in the direct discourse (§§ 110, 156. 1); if ἄν was used with the optative (or indicative) of direct discourse, it is retained with the infinitive of indirect discourse (§§ 277, 546).
2. After verbs of *promising*, *hoping*, and *swearing:* the future infinitive; negative, if required, μή (§ 519).
3. With δοκεῖ *he seems* and λέγεται *he is said* in the "personal" use (§§ 391, 512).
4. As subject of verbs meaning *is*, *is possible*, etc.; with δεῖ *it is necessary*, δοκεῖ *it seems best*, etc. (§§ 223, 512. *a*).
5. With ἀνάγκη *it is necessary*, ὥρᾱ *it is time*, etc. (§ 230).

6. With verbs like δύναμαι *be able*, κελεύω *command*, βούλομαι *wish*, ἐθέλω *wish* (§ 98).
7. With the article τό, τοῦ, τῷ as a neuter substantive in various constructions; especially common is διὰ τό with the infinitive: *on account of the fact that*, etc. (§ 500).
8. With ὥστε *so as* indicating a result (§ 147).
   [Cp. ὥστε with the indicative (§ 147).]
9. With adjectives of *ability* and *fitness*, like ἱκανός *able* (§ 333).
10. With πρίν *before* after an affirmative clause (§ 524).
    [After a negative clause πρίν usually means *until* and has the construction of other temporal words (§ 523).]
11. Rarely expressing purpose (after verbs signifying *to give* or *to appoint*).
    The negative with the infinitive is μή except in indirect discourse, when οὐ is regularly used.

USES OF THE PARTICIPLE

666. 1. As an attributive adjective (§ 211).
2. With or without the article to represent a relative clause: οἱ βουλόμενοι *those that desire* (§ 212).
3. To represent a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause (§ 213).
4. Common is ἔχων or λαβών *with* agreeing with the subject (§ 213. *b*).
5. To indicate purpose: the *future* participle with or without ὡς is used (§§ 331, 332).
6. In the genitive absolute construction (§ 401).
7. In the accusative absolute construction (§ 566).

8. With verbs of *perception* whether of the mind or of the senses (§ 440): ὁρῶ *see*, ἀκούω *hear*, etc., ὁρῶ αὐτὸν ἰόντα *I see him coming*.

9. In the construction of indirect discourse (§§ 441, 449, 520).

[For such a participle a clause with ὅτι may be used (§ 442).]

10. With τυγχάνω *happen*, λανθάνω *escape notice*, and οἴχομαι *be gone* (cp. §§ 215, 318, 443).

11. With verbs of *beginning*, *ceasing*, etc. (§ 439).

The negative with the participle is οὐ; but the conditional participle takes μή.

667. PURPOSE IS COMMONLY EXPRESSED

1. By ἵνα, ὅπως, or ὡς, *in order that*, with the subjunctive. After a secondary tense the optative is commonly used (§§ 243, 268). Negative: μή.

2. By the future participle (§§ 331, 332).

668. FORMS OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Simple or Real (§ 106)

PROTASIS	APODOSIS
Present. εἰ with pres. indic.:	any form of verb:
εἰ ταῦτα λέγει,	ἀληθῆ λέγει
if he says this,	he speaks the truth.
Past. εἰ with past tense of indic.:	any form of verb:
εἰ ταῦτα ἔλεξεν,	ἀληθῆ ἔλεξεν
if he said this,	he spoke the truth.

Contrary to Fact or Unreal (§ 545)

Present. εἰ with impf. indic.:	impf. indic. with ἄν:
εἰ ταῦτα ἔλεγεν,	οὐκ ἂν ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν
if he were (now) saying this,	he would not be speaking the truth.

Past. εἰ with aor. indic.:	aor. indic. with ἄν:
εἰ ταῦτα ἔλεξεν,	οὐκ ἂν ἀληθῆ ἔλεξεν
if he had said this (then),	he would not have spoken the truth.

General (§§ 399, 416)

Present. ἐάν with subjv.:	pres. indic.:
ἐάν τι λέγῃ (or λέξῃ),	ἀληθῆ λέγει
if [ever] he says anything,	he speaks the truth.
Past. εἰ with opt.:	impf. indic.:
εἴ τι λέγοι (or λέξειεν),	ἀληθῆ ἔλεγεν
if he [ever] said anything,	he spoke the truth.

More Vivid Future (§ 241)

ἐάν with subjv.:	fut. indic. or equiv.:
ἐὰν ταῦτα λέγῃς (or λέξῃς),	ἀληθῆ λέξεις
if you say (*or* shall say) this,	you will speak the truth.

Less Vivid Future (§ 267)

εἰ with opt.:	opt. with ἄν:
εἰ ταῦτα λέγοις (or λέξειας),	ἀληθῆ ἂν λέγοις (or λέξειας)
if you should say this,	you would speak the truth.

Warning Future (§ 242)

εἰ with fut. indic.:	fut. indic. or equiv.:
εἰ ταῦτα λέξεις,	κακὸς φανεῖ
if you say this,	you will appear base.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

USES OF COMMON VERBS THAT TAKE THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

669. 1. A FINITE MOOD with ὅτι or ὡς follows λέγω (active) *say*, εἶπον *said*, ἀποκρίνομαι *reply*, and

often those verbs with which the participle in indirect discourse is also regular. Such verbs are mentioned below in 3.

2. An INFINITIVE follows φημί *say*, λέγεται (passive) *is said*, νομίζω *think*, οἶομαι *think*, ὑπισχνέομαι *promise*, ἀκούω *hear*, and other verbs meaning *to think* or *to agree*.

3. A PARTICIPLE follows ὁράω *see*, αἰσθάνομαι *perceive*, ἀκούω *hear*, οἶδα *know*, δῆλός εἰμι *be evident*, ἀγγέλλω *announce*, and other verbs of similar meaning. But see 1 above.

a. Observe that ἀκούω *hear* belongs in all three of the preceding classes.

b. When εἶπε means *he bade, he commanded, he proposed*, an infinitive *not* in indirect discourse follows, as after κελεύω *command*. The other verbs of *saying* may be similarly used.

c. With the infinitive ἐπίσταμαι means *know how* (instead of *know that*), μανθάνω *learn how* (instead of *learn that*).

USES OF THE ADVERB ἄν

670. 1. In protases, always with subjunctive: ἐάν (εἰ + ἄν), ὅς ἄν, ἐπειδάν (ἐπειδή + ἄν), etc.

2. In apodoses, (*a*) with the optative in less vivid future conditions, (*b*) with the imperfect or aorist indicative in contrary to fact conditions.

3. With the optative in the potential use (§ 266).

4. With the infinitive of indirect discourse when the infinitive with ἄν represents an optative with ἄν, § 277 (or past tense of the indicative with ἄν, § 546), of the direct discourse.

A FEW IMPORTANT LISTS

671. SOME VERBS WHOSE MEANING DISTINCTLY CHANGES IN THE MIDDLE VOICE

ACTIVE	MIDDLE
αἱρέω take	*choose*
ἐπιτίθημι put upon	*attack* (with dat.)
ἔχω have, hold	*come next*
	cling to (with gen.)
λύω release	*ransom*
παύω stop (another)	*cease* (intr.)
πείθω persuade (with acc.)	*obey* (with dat.)
συμβουλεύω advise (with dat.)	*consult* (with dat.)
φαίνω show	*appear*
φοβέω frighten	*fear*
φυλάττω guard	*guard against*

672. SOME VERBS WHOSE PASSIVE IS EXPRESSED BY A DIFFERENT VERB

αἱρέω take	*ἁλίσκομαι be taken*
[but *αἱρέομαι* (mid.) *choose*	*αἱρέομαι* (pass.) *be chosen*]
ἀποκτείνω kill	*ἀποθνήσκω be killed*
νῑκάω conquer	*ἡττάομαι be conquered*
τέθηκα have put or *placed*	*κεῖμαι have been placed*
εὖ (or *καλῶς*) *τινα ποιέω do somebody a kindness*	*εὖ ὑπό τινος πάσχω be done a kindness by somebody*

673. SOME VERBS WHOSE AORISTS ARE PASSIVE IN FORM, BUT NOT IN MEANING (DEPONENTS PASSIVE)

	Aorist Passive
βούλομαι wish	*ἐβουλήθην I wished*
δέομαι ask, beg	*ἐδεήθην I begged*
δύναμαι be able	*ἐδυνήθην I was able*
ἐπιμελέομαι take care	*ἐπεμελήθην I took care*
οἴομαι think	*ᾠήθην I thought*
πορεύομαι proceed	*ἐπορεύθην I proceeded*
φοβέομαι fear	*ἐφοβήθην I feared*

674. SOME VERBS WHOSE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE APPEARS IRREGULAR IN AUGMENT

Present	Imperfect
ἐάω permit	*εἴων* (*i.e.* *εἴαον*)
ἕπομαι follow	*εἱπόμην*
ἔχω have	*εἶχον*
ὁράω see	*ἑώρων* (*i.e.* *ἑώραον*)

675. Distinguish among

αἰτέω ask a favor *of* somebody, *ask somebody for* something (with two accusatives).

ἀξιόω ask as a right, *demand* (with infinitive).

δέομαι want or *ask* a person (in the genitive) to do something (infinitive).

ἐρωτάω
2 aor. *ἠρόμην* { *ask* a question, *inquire;* may be followed by accusative of person and indirect question.

ABBREVIATIONS

A. or acc.	= accusative.
abl.	= ablative.
abs.	= absolute.
act.	= active.
adj.	= adjective.
adv.	= adverb.
aor.	= aorist.
art.	= article.
comp.	= comparative.
conj.	= conjunction.
const.	= construction.
cp.	= compare.
D. or dat.	= dative.
def.	= definite.
dem.	= demonstrative.
dep.	= deponent.
dim.	= diminutive.
dir.	= direct.
disc.	= discourse.
e.g.	= *for example.*
Eng.	= English.
equiv.	= equivalent.
etc.	= *and so forth.*
fem.	= feminine.
Fig.	= Figure.
fut.	= future.
G. or gen.	= genitive.
i.e.	= *that is.*
impers.	= impersonal.
impf.	= imperfect.
imv.	= imperative.
indecl.	= indeclinable.
indef.	= indefinite.
indic.	= indicative.
indir.	= indirect.
inf.	= infinitive.
interj.	= interjection.
interr.	= interrogative.
intr.	= intransitive.
irreg.	= irregular.
κτλ.	= καὶ τὰ λοιπά = *etc.*
Lat.	= Latin.
lit.	= literal, literally.
masc.	= masculine.
mid.	= middle.
N. or nom.	= nominative.
neg.	= negative.
neut.	= neuter.
obj.	= object.
opt.	= optative.
p., pp.	= page, pages.
part. gen.	= partitive genitive.
partic.	= participle.
pass.	= passive.
pers.	= person.
pf.	= perfect.
pl. or plur.	= plural.
plup.	= pluperfect.
poss. gen.	= possessive genitive.
pred.	= predicate.
prep.	= preposition.
pres.	= present.
priv.	= privative.
pron.	= pronoun.
rel.	= relative.
sing.	= singular.
subj.	= subject.
subjv.	= subjunctive.
subst.	= substantive.
sup.	= superlative.
trans.	= transitive.
V. or voc.	= vocative.
vocab.	= vocabulary.
§	= section.

ENGLISH–GREEK VOCABULARY

For numerals not included in the following list see § 421.

A

abandon: ἀπολείπω, ἐκλείπω, καταλείπω.
able: δυνατός, ή, όν; ἱκανός, ή, όν; οἷός τε, οἵᾱ τε, οἷόν τε.
able, be: δύναμαι.
about: ἀμφί with acc. (round about, near); περί with gen. (concerning); περί with dat. (near); περί with acc. (around, in relation to).
about (with numerals): ὡς.
about, be: μέλλω.
above: ὑπέρ with gen.
Abrocomas: Ἀβροκόμᾱς, ᾱ, ὁ.
accept: δέχομαι.
accompany: συμπορεύομαι.
accomplish: πρᾶττω, διαπρᾶττομαι.
according to: κατά with acc.
accordingly: δή, οὖν.
accuse falsely: διαβάλλω.
Achaean: Ἀχαιός, οῦ, ὁ.
across: πέρᾱν.
addition to, in: πρός with dat.
admirable: θαυμαστός, ή, όν.
admire: θαυμάζω.
advise: συμβουλεύω.
afoot: πεζός, ή, όν.
afraid, be: φοβέομαι.
after (*conj.*): ἐπεί, ἐπειδή.
after (*prep.*): μετά with acc.
again: πάλιν, ἔτι.
against: ἀντί in composition; ἐπί with acc.; κατά with acc.; πρός with acc.
agree: συντίθεμαι.
agreement: σύνθημα, ατος, τό.
all: ὅλος, η, ον (entire); πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν.
all together: ἅπᾶς, ᾶσα, ᾶν; σύμπᾶς, ᾶσα, αν.
allow: ἐάω.
ally: σύμμαχος, ου, ὁ.
alone: μόνος, η, ον.
along: κατά with acc.
already: ἤδη.
also: καί.
altogether: πάνυ.
always: ἀεί.
ambassador: πρεσβευτής, οῦ, ὁ; pl. πρέσβεις, εων, οἱ.
ancient: ἀρχαῖος, ᾱ, ον.
and: καί.
and in fact: γάρ; καὶ γάρ.
and not: οὐδέ, μηδέ.
announce: ἀγγέλλω.
annoyance: ὄχλος, ου, ὁ.
another: ἄλλος, η, ο.
another place, in: ἄλλῃ.
another, one: ἀλλήλοιν.
answer: ἀποκρίνομαι.
any, anybody, anything: τις, τι.
anywhere: πῃ, που.
apart, apart from: χωρίς.
apart, be: διέχω.
appear: φαίνομαι.
approach (*noun*): ἔφοδος, ου, ἡ.
approach (*verb*): ἔπειμι.
Ariaeus: Ἀριαῖος, ου, ὁ.

arise (take place): **γίγνομαι.**
Aristippus: **Ἀρίστιππος, ου, ὁ.**
arms (of war): **ὅπλα, ων, τά.**
army: **στράτευμα, ατος, τό; στρατιᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ.**
around (see 'about'): **περί** with dat.; **περί** with acc.
arrange: **τάττω.**
arrangement: **τάξις, εως, ἡ.**
arrest: **συλλαμβάνω.**
arrive: **ἀφικνέομαι.**
arrow: **τόξευμα, ατος, τό.**
Artapates: **Ἀρταπάτης, ου, ὁ.**
Artaxerxes: **Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, ὁ.**
as, as if: **ὡς, ὥσπερ.**
as (of comparison): **ὡς, ὥσπερ.**
as (with sup.): **ὅτι, ὡς.**
as many as, as much as: **ὅσος, η, ον; ὁπόσος, η, ον.**
as often as: **ὁπότε.**
as (= such as): **οἷος, ᾱ, ον.**
ask about: **πυνθάνομαι.**
ask (a favor): **αἰτέω, δέομαι.**
ask (a question): **ἐρωτάω, 2 aor. ἠρόμην.**
ask (as a right): **ἀξιόω.**
ask for: **αἰτέω.**
ass: **ὄνος, ου, ὁ.**
assemble: **ἀθροίζω** (trans.), **συνέρχομαι.**
assembly: **ἐκκλησία, ᾱς, ἡ.**
at: **ἐπί** with dat.
at any rate: **μήν, οὖν.**
Athenian: **Ἀθηναῖος, ᾱ, ον.**
attack: **ἐπιτίθεμαι, ἐπίκειμαι.**
attempt: **πειράομαι.**
attend: **πάρειμι.**
avoid: **φεύγω.**
away, be: **ἀπέχω.**
away from: **ἀπό.**

B

Babylon: **Βαβυλών, ῶνος, ἡ.**
back: **πάλιν.**
bad: **κακός, ή, όν.**
badly: **κακῶς.**
barbarian (*adj.*): **βαρβαρικός, ή, όν.**
barbarian (*noun*): **βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ.**
bare: **ψῑλός, ή, όν.**
battle: **μάχη, ης, ἡ.**
be: **γίγνομαι, εἰμί.**
beast, wild: **θηρίον, ου, τό.**
beast (of burden): **ὑποζύγιον, ου, τό.**
bear: **φέρω.**
beautiful: **καλός, ή, όν.**
beautifully: **καλῶς.**
because of: **διά** with acc.; **ὑπό** with gen.
become: **γίγνομαι.**
before (*adv.*): **πρόσθεν, πρόσθεν . . . πρίν, τὸ πρόσθεν, ἔμπροσθεν.**
before (*conj.*): **πρίν.**
before (*prep.*): **πρό.**
beg: **αἰτέω, δέομαι.**
begin: **ἄρχω, ἄρχομαι.**
beginning: **ἀρχή, ῆς, ἡ.**
behold: **θεάομαι, ὁράω.**
behooves, it: **χρή.**
believe: **ἡγέομαι.**
beneath: **ὑπό** with dat.
beside: **παρά** or **πρός** with dat.
besides: **ἔτι.**
best (*adj.*): **ἄριστος, η, ον; βέλτιστος, η, ον; κράτιστος, η, ον.**
best (*adv.*): **ἄριστα,** etc.
better (*adj.*): **ἀμείνων, ον; βελτίων, ον; κρείττων, ον.**
better (*adv.*): **ἄμεινον,** etc.; **μᾶλλον.**
between: **μεταξύ** with gen.; **ἐν μέσῳ.**
bewilder: **ἐκπλήττω.**
beyond: **ὑπέρ** with acc.
bid: **κελεύω.**
big: **μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα.**
bird: **ὄρνῑς, ῑθος, ὁ** and **ἡ.**
birth: **γένος, ους, τό.**
Boeotian: **Βοιώτιος, ᾱ, ον.**
born, be: **γίγνομαι.**
both . . . and: **τε . . . καί; καί . . . καί.**

bother: ὄχλος, ου, ὁ.
bow: τόξον, ου, τό.
bowman: τοξότης, ου, ὁ.
boy: παῖς, παιδός, ὁ.
brave: ἀγαθός, ή, όν.
bravery: ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ.
breadth: εὖρος, ους, τό.
break: λῦω.
break through: διακόπτω.
breastplate: θώρᾱξ, ᾱκος, ὁ.
bridge: γέφῡρα, ᾱς, ἡ.
brilliancy: λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ.
bring about: διαπρᾶττομαι.
bring into harbor: κατάγω.
brother: ἀδελφός, οῦ, ὁ.
burn: καίω or κᾰ́ω.
business: πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό.
but: ἀλλά, δέ (postpositive).
buy: ἀγοράζω (*bought* also ἐπριάμην).
by: διά with acc. (by means of); κατά with acc. (as in 'by land'); ὑπό with gen. (of the agent); παρά with dat. (by the side of).
by far: πολύ.
by no means: ἥκιστα.

C

call: καλέω.
call together: συγκαλέω.
camp (*noun*): στρατόπεδον, ου, τό.
camp (*verb*): σκηνόω; see 'encamp.'
canal: διῶρυξ, υχος, ἡ.
captain: λοχᾱγός, οῦ, ὁ.
capture: αἱρέω, (pass.) ἁλίσκομαι.
Carduchi: Καρδοῦχοι, ων, οἱ.
care for, take care of: ἐπιμελέομαι.
carriage: ἅμαξα, ης, ἡ.
carry: φέρω.
catch (by hunting): θηρεύω.
cattle: πρόβατον, ου, τό.
cavalry: ἱππεῖς, οἱ.
cavalry, consisting of: ἱππικός, ή, όν.
cease (intr.): παύομαι.
cease (= make cease): παύω, ἀναπαύω.
Celaenae: Κελαιναί, ῶν, αἱ.
certain, a: τις, τι.
certainly: γε, μήν.
Chalus: Χάλος, ου, ὁ.
chance (*verb*): τυγχάνω.
chance upon: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.
character: τρόπος, ου, ὁ.
chariot: ἅρμα, ατος, τό.
chastise: κολάζω.
cheat: ἐξαπατάω.
Cheirisophus: Χειρίσοφος, ου, ὁ.
child: παῖς, παιδός, ὁ and ἡ; τέκνον, ου, τό.
choose: αἱρέομαι.
Cilicia: Κιλικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.
Cilician woman: Κίλισσα, ης, ἡ.
circumstances: πρᾰ́γματα, ων, τά.
citadel: ἀκρόπολις, εως, ἡ.
city: πόλις, εως, ἡ.
claim (as one's right): ἀξιόω.
clear: δῆλος, η, ον; φανερός, ᾱ́, όν.
Clearchus: Κλέαρχος, ου, ὁ.
closely set (= closely planted): πυκνός, ή, όν.
collect: ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω, συνάγω.
column (military): τάξις, εως, ἡ.
come: ἔρχομαι, ἀφικνέομαι; have come: ἥκω.
come! ἄγε (*interj.*).
come down (= reach down): καθήκω.
come forth: ἐξέρχομαι.
come in: εἰσέρχομαι.
come on: ἔπειμι.
come to: παραγίγνομαι, προσέρχομαι, προσήκω.
come together: συνέρχομαι.
come up: προσέρχομαι.
come upon: καταλαμβάνω.
come upon by chance: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.
command (= rule): ἄρχω.
command (= order): ἐπιτάττω, κελεύω, παραγγέλλω (εἶπον).
commander: ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ; ἡγεμών, όνος, ὁ.

common: **κοινός, ή, όν.**
compact, make a: **συντίθεμαι.**
company (of soldiers): **λόχος, ου, ὁ.**
compel: **ἀναγκάζω.**
concerning: **περί** with gen.; **ἀμφί** with gen.
confine: **κατακλείω.**
conquer: **νῑκάω,** (pass.) **ἡττάομαι.**
consider: **σκέπτομαι.**
contend: **ἀγωνίζομαι.**
contest: **ἀγών, ῶνος, ὁ.**
continually: **ἀεί.**
contrary to: **παρά** with acc.
converse: **διαλέγομαι.**
corpse: **νεκρός, οῦ, ὁ.**
country: **χώρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
cow: **βούς, βοός, ἡ.**
cowardly: **κακός, ή, όν.**
Cretan: **Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ.**
crisis: **καιρός, οῦ, ὁ.**
cross: **διαβαίνω.**
crossed, able to be: **διαβατός, ή, όν;** necessary to be: **διαβατέος, ᾱ, ον.**
crowd: **ὄχλος, ου, ὁ; πλῆθος, ους, τό.**
cubit: **πῆχυς, εως, ὁ.**
custom: **νόμος, ου, ὁ.**
cut down: **κατακόπτω.**
cut off: **ἀπολαμβάνω, ἀποκόπτω.**
cut through (in pieces): **διακόπτω.**
Cyrus: **Κῦρος, ου, ὁ.**

D

danger: **κίνδῡνος, ου, ὁ.**
danger, incur: **κινδῡνεύω.**
daric: **δᾱρεικός, οῦ, ὁ.**
Darius: **Δᾱρεῖος, ου, ὁ.**
darkness: **σκότος, ους, τό,** and **σκότος, ου, ὁ.**
daughter: **θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός, ἡ.**
day: **ἡμέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
day's journey: **σταθμός, οῦ, ὁ.**
death, put to: **ἀποκτείνω.**
deceive utterly: **ἐξαπατάω.**
decide: **κρίνω.**
declare: **φημί.**
deed: **ἔργον, ου, τό; πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό.**
deem worthy: **ἀξιόω.**
deep: **βαθύς, εῖα, ύ.**
delay: **μέλλω.**
deliberate: **βουλεύομαι.**
demand: **ἀξιόω.**
deny: **οὔ φημι.**
deprive: **ἀφαιρέομαι.**
descend: **καταβαίνω.**
descent: **κατάβασις, εως, ἡ.**
descry: **καθοράω.**
desert (*verb*): **ἀπολείπω.**
deserted: **ἔρημος, η, ον,** or **ἔρημος, ον.**
deserts (justice): **δίκη, ης, ἡ.**
desire: **δέομαι, ἐθέλω, ἐπιθῡμέω.** See 'wish.'
despondency: **ἀθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
destroy: **ἀπόλλῡμι, λῡ́ω.**
devise: **βουλεύω.**
die: **ἀποθνῄσκω, τελευτάω.**
die off: **ἀποθνῄσκω.**
difficult: **χαλεπός, ή, όν.**
difficulty: **ἀπορίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ; πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό.**
direct: **ἐπιτάττω, παραγγέλλω.**
direct the mind: **προσέχω τὸν νοῦν.**
discouragement: **ἀθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
dismiss: **ἀποπέμπω, ἀφίημι.**
distant, be: **ἀπέχω.**
distinguish oneself: **ἐπιδείκνυμαι.**
distribute: **διαδίδωμι.**
ditch: **τάφρος, ου, ἡ.**
division (military): **τάξις, εως, ἡ.**
do: **ποιέω, πρᾶ́ττω.**
down along: **κατά** with acc.
down from: **κατά** with gen.
down over: **κατά** with acc.
draw near: **προσελαύνω.**
draw up: **τάττω.**
drink (*noun*): **ποτόν, οῦ, τό.**
drive: **ἐλαύνω.**
drive in: **εἰσελαύνω.**
drive out: **ἐξελαύνω.**
drive past: **παρελαύνω.**
drive up: **προσελαύνω.**

E

each: ἕκαστος, η, ον.
eagerly: προθῡ́μως.
earlier than: πρόσθεν . . . πρίν.
earth: γῆ, γῆς, ἡ.
easy: ῥᾴδιος, ᾱ, ον.
effect: πρᾶττω, διαπρᾶττομαι.
either . . . or: ἤ . . . ἤ.
elder: πρεσβύτερος, ᾱ, ον.
elsewhere: ἄλλῃ.
embarrassment: ἀπορίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.
empire: ἀρχή, ῆς, ἡ.
empty: κενός, ή, όν.
encamp: στρατοπεδεύω and -ομαι; see 'camp.'
encounter: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.
end (*noun*): τέλος, ους, τό.
end (*verb*): τελευτάω; put an end to: παύω.
enemy: οἱ πολέμιοι; personal enemy: ἐχθρός, οῦ, ὁ.
enlist: λαμβάνω.
enter: δῡ́ω, δῡ́νω, εἰσέρχομαι.
entire: ὅλος, η, ον; πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; see 'all.'
equip: παρασκευάζω.
escape: ἀποφεύγω.
escape notice: λανθάνω.
Euphrates: Εὐφρᾱ́της, ου, ὁ.
ever: ποτέ.
ever yet: πώποτε.
every: πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; see 'each.'
evident: δῆλος, η, ον; φανερός, ᾱ́, όν.
evident, make: δηλόω.
exceedingly: ἰσχῡρῶς.
excellence: ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ.
exercise: γυμνάζω.
exile: φυγάς, άδος, ὁ.
expedition: στόλος, ου, ὁ; στρατεῑ́ᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.
expedition, make an: στρατεύω.
extend: καθήκω.
extensive: πολύς, πολλή, πολύ.
extreme: ἔσχατος, η, ον.

F

face about: ἀναστρέφομαι.
fact, and in: γάρ, καὶ γάρ.
fail: ἐκλείπω.
faithful: πιστός, ή, όν.
family: γένος, ους, τό.
father: πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ.
fatherland: πατρίς, ίδος, ἡ.
favor: χάρις, ιτος, ἡ.
favor, show: χαρίζομαι.
fear (*noun*): φόβος, ου, ὁ.
fear (*verb*): δέδοικα, φοβέομαι.
fearful: δεινός, ή, όν; φοβερός, ᾱ́, όν.
fearfully: φοβερῶς.
feed: τρέφω.
few: ὀλίγος, η, ον.
field, take the: στρατεύομαι; take the field with: συστρατεύομαι.
fight (*noun*): μάχη, ης, ἡ.
fight (*verb*): μάχομαι.
finally: τέλος.
find: εὑρίσκω, καταλαμβάνω.
find by chance: ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.
finish: τελευτάω.
fire: πῦρ, πυρός, τό.
first: πρῶτος, η, ον.
fish: ἰχθῦς, ύος, ὁ.
fitness: ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ.
flee, flee from: φεύγω; flee away: ἀποφεύγω.
flight: φυγή, ῆς, ἡ.
flight, put to: τρέπω εἰς φυγήν.
fodder: χῖλός, οῦ, ὁ.
follow: ἕπομαι.
following (*adj.*): ὑστεραῖος, ᾱ, ον.
follows, as: ὧδε.
food: σῖτίον, ου, τό; σῖτος, ου, ὁ.
foot: πούς, ποδός, ὁ; on foot: πεζός, ή, όν.
for (*conj.*): γάρ.
for (*prep.*): ἐπί with dat.; περί with gen.
for (= instead of): ἀντί with gen.

force (*noun*): **δύναμις, εως, ἡ.**
force (*verb*): **ἀναγκάζω.**
fordable: **διαβατός, ή, όν.**
forearm: **πῆχυς, εως, ὁ.**
foreign: **βαρβαρικός, ή, όν.**
foreigner: **βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ.**
former: **πρότερος, ᾱ, ον**; **πρόσθεν** (*adv.* as *adj.*).
formerly: **τὸ ἀρχαῖον, τὸ πρόσθεν.**
fortress: **τεῖχος, ους, τό.**
fortunate: **εὐδαίμων, ον.**
forward: **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν.**
fresh: **νέος, ᾱ, ον.**
friend: **φίλος, ου, ὁ.**
friendly: **φίλος, η, ον.**
friendship: **φιλίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
frighten: **φοβέω.**
frightful: **δεινός, ή, όν**; **φοβερός, ᾱ, όν.**
from: **ἀπό** (away from); **ἐκ** (out from); **παρά** and **πρός** (from the side of); **ὑπό** (because of).
front, in: **ἔμπροσθεν.**
fugitive: **φυγάς, άδος, ὁ.**
full: **μεστός, ή, όν**; **πλήρης, ες.**
furnish: **παρέχω.**
future, in the: **τὸ λοιπόν.**

G

games (= contest of games): **ἀγών, ῶνος, ὁ.**
garrison: **φυλακή, ῆς, ἡ.**
gate: **πύλη, ης, ἡ.**
gather together: **ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω.**
gathering: **ἀγών, ῶνος, ὁ.**
gaze at: **θεάομαι.**
general (*adj.*): **κοινός, ή, όν.**
general (*noun*): **στρατηγός, οῦ, ὁ.**
gift: **δῶρον, ου, τό.**
girl: **παῖς, παιδός, ἡ.**
give: **δίδωμι.**
give over: **παραδίδωμι.**
gladly: **ἡδέως.**
go: **εἶμι, ἔρχομαι, πορεύομαι.**
go across: **διαβαίνω.**
go away (or back): **ἄπειμι, ἀπέρχομαι.**
go by: **παρέρχομαι.**
go down: **καταβαίνω.**
go forth: **ἔξειμι, ἐξέρχομαι.**
go forward: **προέρχομαι.**
go on: **ἔπειμι.**
go out: **ἔξειμι, ἐξέρχομαι.**
go past: **παρέρχομαι.**
go through: **διέρχομαι.**
go to: **προσέρχομαι.**
go together: **συνέρχομαι.**
go up (inland): **ἀναβαίνω.**
god: **θεός, οῦ, ὁ.**
goddess: **θεός, οῦ, ἡ.**
gold (*adj.*), golden: **χρῡσοῦς, ῆ, οῦν.**
gold (*noun*): **χρῡσίον, ου, τό.**
gone, be (*or* have gone): **οἴχομαι.**
good: **ἀγαθός, ή, όν.**
grace: **χάρις, ιτος, ἡ.**
grain: **σῖτίον, ου, τό**; **σῖτος, ου, ὁ.**
grant (as a favor): **χαρίζομαι.**
grass: **χῖλός, οῦ, ὁ.**
gratify: **χαρίζομαι.**
gratitude: **χάρις, ιτος, ἡ.**
great: **μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα.**
great (= how great, as great as): **ὅσος, η, ον**; **ὁπόσος, η, ον.**
greave: **κνημῖς, ῖδος, ἡ.**
Greece: **Ἑλλάς, άδος, ἡ.**
Greek (*adj.*): **Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν.**
Greek (*noun*): **Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ.**
Greek force: **Ἑλληνικόν, οῦ, τό.**
groundless: **κενός, ή, όν.**
guard (*noun*): **φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ**; (= garrison) **φυλακή, ῆς, ἡ.**
guard (*verb*): **φυλάττω.**
guest-friend: **ξένος, ου, ὁ.**
guide (*noun*): **ἡγεμών, όνος, ὁ.**
guide (*verb*): **ἡγέομαι.**

H

half (*adj.*): **ἥμισυς, εια, υ.**
half (*noun*): **τὸ ἥμισυ.**
halt: **τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα.**
halting place: **σταθμός, οῦ, ὁ.**

hand: **χείρ, χειρός, ἡ.**
hand, be at: **παραγίγνομαι, πάρειμι.**
handsome: **καλός, ή, όν.**
happen: **γίγνομαι, τυγχάνω.**
happen upon: **ἐντυγχάνω, ἐπιτυγχάνω.**
harbor: **λιμήν, ένος, ὁ.**
hard: **χαλεπός, ή, όν.**
harm: **βλάπτω.**
harsh: **χαλεπός, ή, όν.**
harshly: **ἰσχῡρῶς.**
hasten: **ἵεμαι, σπεύδω.**
have: **ἔχω.**
he (in 'and he,' 'but he'): **ὁ δέ.**
head: **κεφαλή, ῆς, ἡ.**
hear, hear of: **ἀκούω.**
height: **ἄκρον, ου, τό.**
Hellas: **Ἑλλάς, άδος, ἡ.**
Hellenic: **Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν.**
helper: **ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ.**
herald: **κῆρυξ, ῡκος, ὁ.**
here: **αὐτοῦ** (= here on the spot), **ἐνταῦθα, ἐνθάδε.**
higher (*adv.*): **ἀνωτέρω.**
highest (*adv.*): **ἀνωτάτω.**
highest point of: **ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον.**
hill: **λόφος, ου, ὁ.**
himself: **ἑαυτοῦ.**
hinder: **κωλῡ́ω.**
hold: **ἔχω.**
holy: **ἱερός, ᾱ́, όν.**
home (= homeward): **οἴκαδε.**
honor (*noun*): **τῑμή, ῆς, ἡ.**
honor (*verb*): **τῑμάω.**
honorable: **καλός, ή, όν.**
honorably: **καλῶς.**
hoplite: **ὁπλίτης, ου, ὁ.**
horse: **ἵππος, ου, ὁ.**
horse, consisting of: **ἱππικός, ή, όν.**
horseman: **ἱππεύς, έως, ὁ.**
host: **πλῆθος, ους, τό.**
hostile: **ἐχθρός, ᾱ́, όν; πολέμιος, ᾱ, ον; πολεμικός, ή, όν.**
hour: **ὥρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
house: **οἰκίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
how (*interr.*): **πῶς.**
how (*rel.*): **ὅπως, ὅπῃ.**
how great, how much (how many): **ὅσος, η, ον; ὁπόσος, η, ον.**
however: **μέντοι.**
hundred: **ἑκατόν.**
hunt: **θηρεύω.**
hurl: **βάλλω, ἵημι.**
hurt: **βλάπτω.**
husband: **ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ.**

I

I: **ἐγώ.**
if: **εἰ; ἐᾱ́ν** or **ἄν** or **ἤν** with subjv.
impassable: **ἄβατος, ον; ἀδιάβατος, ον; ἄπορος, ον.**
impossible: **ἀδύνατος, ον.**
in: **ἐν.**
in company with: **μετά** with gen.
in front of: **πρό.**
in sight of: **πρός** with gen.
inclose: **κατακλείω.**
indeed: **δή.**
infantry: **οἱ πεζοί.**
inferior, be: **ἡττάομαι.**
inflict (*e.g.* punishment): **ἐπιτίθημι.**
injure: **ἀδικέω, βλάπτω.**
inland: **ἄνω.**
inquire: **πυνθάνομαι;** see also 'ask.'
instead of: **ἀντί.**
intend: **μέλλω.**
interpreter: **ἑρμηνεύς, έως, ὁ.**
into: **εἰς.**
into the midst of: **μετά** with acc.
invisible: **ἀφανής, ές.**
invite: **καλέω.**
Ionian: **Ἰωνικός, ή, όν.**

J

javelin: **παλτόν, οῦ, τό.**
judge: **κρίνω.**
judgment: **γνώμη, ης, ἡ.**
just: **δίκαιος, ᾱ, ον.**
just as: **ὥσπερ.**
justice: **δίκη, ης, ἡ.**
justly: **δικαίως.**

K

kill: **ἀποκτείνω.**
kindle: **καίω** or **κᾶω.**
king: **βασιλεύς, έως, ὁ.**
king, be: **βασιλεύω.**
kingdom: **βασιλεία, ᾱς, ἡ.**
kinglike: **βασιλικός, ή, όν.**
kinship: **γένος, ους, τό.**
knee: **γόνυ, γόνατος, τό.**
know: **γιγνώσκω, οἶδα.**
knowledge, without the knowledge of: **λάθρᾳ.**

L

labor: **κάμνω.**
Lacedaemon: **Λακεδαίμων, ονος, ἡ.**
Lacedaemonian: **Λακεδαιμόνιος, ᾱ, ον.**
land: **γῆ, γῆς, ἡ; χώρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
large: **μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα; πολύς, πολλή, πολύ.**
last: **ἔσχατος, η, ον.**
later (*adj.*): **ὕστερος, ᾱ, ον; ὑστεραῖος, ᾱ, ον.**
latest: **ὕστατος, η, ον.**
law: **νόμος, ου, ὁ.**
lead: **ἄγω, ἡγέομαι.**
lead away (*or* lead back): **ἀπάγω.**
lead down: **κατάγω.**
lead in: **εἰσάγω.**
lead out: **ἐξάγω.**
lead together: **συνάγω.**
lead up: **ἀνάγω.**
leader: **ἡγεμών, όνος, ὁ.**
learn: **γιγνώσκω, μανθάνω.**
learn about: **πυνθάνομαι.**
least, at: **γε.**
least of all: **ἥκιστα.**
leave: **λείπω.**
leave behind: **ἀπολείπω, καταλείπω.**
leave off (*or* leave out): **ἐκλείπω.**
left, what is: **λοιπός, ή, όν.**
lest: **μή.**
lest not: **μὴ οὐ.**
let: **ἐάω.**
letter: **ἐπιστολή, ῆς, ἡ.**
libation: **σπονδή, ῆς, ἡ.**
lie (recline): **κεῖμαι.**
lie down: **κατάκειμαι.**
lie upon: **ἐπίκειμαι.**
light (*verb*): **καίω** or **κᾶω.**
light-armed: **ψῑλός, ή, όν.**
light-armed warrior: **γυμνής, ῆτος, ὁ.**
like: **ὥσπερ.**
line (military): **τάξις, εως, ἡ.**
listen: **ἀκούω.**
little: **ὀλίγος, η, ον.**
live: **ζάω.**
long: **μακρός, ᾱ́, όν.**
longer (*adv.*): **ἔτι.**
look: **βλέπω.**
look down on: **καθοράω.**
look on: **θεάομαι.**
loose: **λῡ́ω.**
lose: **ἀπόλλῡμι.**
Lydia: **Λῡδίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
Lydian: **Λῡ́διος, ᾱ, ον.**

M

magnanimity: **ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ.**
make: **ποιέω.**
man: **ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ; ἄνθρωπος, ου, ὁ.**
manage: **διαπρᾶττομαι.**
manner: **τρόπος, ου, ὁ.**
many: **πολύς, πολλή, πολύ** (in pl.).
many (how many, as many as): **ὅσος, η, ον; ὁπόσος, η, ον.**
march: **ἐλαύνω.**
march in: **εἰσελαύνω.**
march out: **ἐξελαύνω.**
market, market-place: **ἀγορᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ.**
marshal: **τάττω.**
master: **δεσπότης, ου, ὁ.**
matter: **πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό.**
means, by no: **ἥκιστα.**
Medes: **Μῆδοι, ων, οἱ.**
Menon: **Μένων, ωνος, ὁ.**
messenger: **ἄγγελος, ου, ὁ.**
method: **τρόπος, ου, ὁ.**
middle (middle of): **μέσος, η, ον.**

midnight: **μέσαι νύκτες.**
midst, in the: **ἐν μέσῳ.**
might: **κράτος, ους, τό.**
mina: **μνᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ.**
mind: **νοῦς, οῦ, ὁ.**
Mithradates: **Μιθραδᾰ́της, ου, ὁ.**
mixing bowl: **κρᾱτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ.**
money: **ἀργύριον, ου, τό; χρήματα, ων, τά.**
month: **μήν, μηνός, ὁ.**
monthly: **κατὰ μῆνα.**
more (*adv.*): **μᾶλλον.**
most (*adv.*): **μάλιστα.**
mother: **μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ.**
mountain: **ὄρος, ους, τό.**
much (*adj.*): **πολύς, πολλή, πολύ.**
much (*adv.*): **πολύ.**
much (how much, as much as): **ὅσος, η, ον; ὁπόσος, η, ον.**
multitude: **πλῆθος, ους, τό.**
must, one: **χρή**; see 'necessary.'
my: **ἐμός, ή, όν.**
myself: **ἐμαυτοῦ, ῆς.**

N

name: **ὄνομα, ατος, τό.**
narrow: **στενός, ή, όν.**
near: **ἐγγύς; πρός** with dat.; **περί** with acc.
necessary (*adj.*): **ἐπιτήδειος, ᾱ, ον.**
necessary, it is: **δεῖ, χρή, ἀνάγκη (ἐστί).**
necessity: **ἀνάγκη, ης, ἡ.**
need: **δέομαι**; there is need: **δεῖ, χρή.**
neighbor: **γείτων, ονος, ὁ.**
neither . . . nor: **οὔτε (μήτε) . . . οὔτε (μήτε).**
never: **οὔποτε, μήποτε.**
never yet: **οὔπω.**
new: **νέος, ᾱ, ον.**
next: **ὑστεραῖος, ᾱ, ον**; (*adv.*), **ἔπειτα.**
night: **νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ.**
night, by: **νύκτωρ.**
noble: **καλός, ή, όν.**
noble-mindedness: **ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ.**
nobly: **καλῶς.**
noise: **θόρυβος, ου, ὁ.**
no longer, no more: **οὐκέτι.**
no one: **οὐδείς, μηδείς.**
nobody: **οὐδείς, μηδείς.**
nor: **οὐδέ, μηδέ.**
not: **οὐ, μή.**
not even: **οὐδέ, μηδέ.**
not yet: **οὔπω.**
nothing: **οὐδέν, μηδέν.**
now (inferential): **δή.**
now (temporal): **ἤδη, νῦν.**

O

O: **ὦ.**
oath: **ὅρκος, ου, ὁ.**
oath, take: **ὄμνῡμι.**
obey: **πείθομαι.**
observe: **καθοράω, σκέπτομαι.**
occupy: **καταλαμβάνω.**
occupy beforehand: **προκαταλαμβάνω.**
off: **ἀπό.**
offer: **δίδωμι** (pres. and impf.).
offer (= sacrifice): **ἔῡω, θῡ́ομαι.**
often: **πολλάκις**; as often as: **ὁπότε, ὅτε.**
old: **ἀρχαῖος, ᾱ, ον**; of old (*adv.*): **τὸ ἀρχαῖον.**
older: **πρεσβύτερος, ᾱ, ον.**
on: **ἐπί** with gen. or dat.
on account of: **διά** with acc.
on behalf of: **ὑπέρ** with gen.
once (upon a time): **ποτέ.**
once, at: **εὐθύς.**
one another: **ἀλλήλοιν.**
one, the: **ὁ μέν**; see Lesson VI.
only (*adj.*): **μόνος, η, ον.**
opinion: **γνώμη, ης, ἡ.**
opportunity: **καιρός, οῦ, ὁ.**
opposite: **κατά** with acc.
or: **ἤ.**
order (*noun*): **τάξις, εως, ἡ.**
order (*verb*): **κελεύω** (= command), **τάττω** (= marshal).
Orontas: **Ὀρόντᾱς, ᾱ, ὁ.**

other: **ἄλλος, η, ον.**
other (others), the; **ὁ δέ, οἱ δέ;** see Lesson VI.
otherwise: **ἄλλως.**
our: **ἡμέτερος, ᾱ, ον.**
out of: **ἐκ.**
outcry: **κραυγή, ῆς, ἡ.**
outside: **ἔξω.**
over: **ὑπέρ** with gen. or acc.
overtake: **καταλαμβάνω.**
ox: **βούς, βοός, ὁ.**

P

pack up: **συσκευάζω.**
palace: **βασίλεια, ων, τά.**
parasang: **παρασάγγης, ου, ὁ.**
Parysatis: **Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ.**
Pasion: **Πᾶσίων, ωνος, ὁ.**
pass: **ἔκβασις, εως, ἡ; πάροδος, ου, ἡ.**
pass (passing over): **ὑπερβολή, ῆς, ἡ.**
pass along (a watchword): **διαδίδωμι.**
passable: **διαβατός, ή, όν.**
passage: **πάροδος, ου, ἡ.**
pay: **μισθός, οῦ, ὁ.**
peace: **εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ.**
pelt: **βάλλω.**
peltast: **πελταστής, οῦ, ὁ.**
perceive: **αἰσθάνομαι, πυνθάνομαι.**
perish: **ἀποθνῄσκω, ἀπόλλυμαι.**
permit: **ἐάω.**
permitted, it is: **ἔξεστι.**
Persian (*adj.*): **Περσικός, ή, όν.**
Persian (*noun*): **Πέρσης, ου, ὁ.**
persuade: **πείθω.**
pertain to: **προσήκω.**
phalanx: **φάλαγξ, αγγος, ἡ.**
Phrygia: **Φρυγίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
Pisidians: **Πισίδαι, ῶν, οἱ.**
place (*noun*): **τόπος, ου, ὁ; χωρίον, ου, τό.**
place, in the same: **αὐτοῦ.**
place (*verb*): **ἵστημι.**
place, take: **γίγνομαι.**
place, take one's: **καθίσταμαι.**
place together: **συντίθημι.**
place upon: **ἐπιτίθημι.**
plain (*adj.*): **δῆλος, η, ον; φανερός, ᾱ, όν.**
plain (*noun*): **πεδίον, ου, τό.**
plan (*noun*): **γνώμη, ης, ἡ.**
plan (*verb*): **βουλεύομαι.**
plan with: **συμβουλεύω.**
pleased, be: **ἥδομαι.**
pledges: **δεξιαί, ῶν, αἱ; πιστά, ῶν, τά.**
plethrum: **πλέθρον, ου, τό.**
plot (*noun*): **ἐπιβουλή, ῆς, ἡ.**
plot against: **ἐπιβουλεύω.**
plunder: **ἁρπάζω;** plunder utterly: **διαρπάζω.**
point out: **δείκνῡμι, δεικνύω** (and **ἐπιδείκνῡμι**).
possessions: **χρήματα, ων, τά.**
possible, it is: **ἔξεστιν, ἔστιν, οἷόν τέ ἐστιν.**
post, take one's: **τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα.**
power (in the power of): **ἐπί** with [dat.
prepare: **παρασκευάζω.**
prepared: **ἕτοιμος, η, ον,** or **ἑτοιμος, ον.**
present, be: **παραγίγνομαι, πάρειμι.**
primitive: **ἀρχαῖος, ᾱ, ον.**
proceed: **πορεύομαι, προέρχομαι.**
proceed with: **συμπορεύομαι.**
promise: **ὑπισχνέομαι.**
proposed: **εἶπον.**
proposition: **γνώμη, ης, ἡ.**
prosperous: **εὐδαίμων, ον.**
provide: **παρέχω.**
province: **ἀρχή, ῆς, ἡ.**
provisions: **ἐπιτήδεια, ων, τά.**
provisions, get: **ἐπισῑτίζομαι.**
Proxenus: **Πρόξενος, ου, ὁ.**
punish: **κολάζω.**
punishment, inflict . . . on: **δίκην ἐπιτίθημι.**
punishment, suffer: **δίκην δίδωμι.**
pursue: **διώκω.**
put: **τίθημι.**
put together: **συντίθημι.**
put upon: **ἐπιτίθημι.**

Q

quick: **ταχύς, εῖα, ύ.**
quickly: **ταχέως, τάχα, ταχύ.**

R

rally: **ἀναστρέφομαι.**
rapidly: see 'quickly.'
rather: **μᾶλλον.**
ravine: **χαράδρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
reach down: **καθήκω.**
reach to: **προσήκω.**
readily: **προθῡμως.**
ready: **ἕτοιμος, η, ον,** or **ἕτοιμος, ον.**
ready, make: **συσκευάζω.**
ready, make oneself: **παρασκευάζομαι.**
rear: **τρέφω.**
receive: **δέχομαι, λαμβάνω;** of pay: **λαμβάνω, φέρω.**
related: **προσήκων.**
remain: **μένω.**
remaining: **λοιπός, ή, όν.**
remember: **μέμνημαι.**
remind: **μιμνῄσκω.**
reply: **ἀποκρίνομαι.**
report: **ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω.**
rest: **ἀναπαύομαι.**
rest of: **λοιπός, ή, όν;** the rest of: **ὁ ἄλλος,** etc.
restore: **κατάγω.**
return: **ἄπειμι.**
ride: **ἐλαύνω.**
ride in: **εἰσελαύνω.**
ride past: **παρελαύνω.**
ride up: **προσελαύνω.**
right (hand): **δεξιᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ.**
right measure, time, place: **καιρός, οῦ, ὁ.**
right (= on the right hand): **δεξιός, ᾱ́, όν.**
risk, run a: **κινδῡνεύω.**
river: **ποταμός, οῦ, ὁ.**
road: **ὁδός, οῦ, ἡ.**
road by: **πάροδος, ου, ἡ.**
road up: **ἄνοδος, ου, ἡ.**
rob: **ἀφαιρέομαι.**
royal: **βασίλειος, ον;** **βασιλικός, ή, όν.**
rule (*noun*): **ἀρχή, ῆς, ἡ.**
rule (*verb*): **ἄρχω;** rule as king: **βασιλεύω.**
ruler: **ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ.**
run (*noun*): **δρόμος, ου, ὁ.**
run (*verb*): **τρέχω, θέω.**
run away (by stealth): **ἀποδιδρᾰ́σκω.**

S

sack: **διαρπάζω.**
sacred: **ἱερός, ᾱ́, όν.**
sacrifice: **θῡ́ω, θῡ́ομαι.**
safe: **ἀσφαλής, ές.**
safely: **ἀσφαλῶς.**
safety: **σωτηρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
safety, in: **ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ.**
sail: **πλέω.**
sail away: **ἀποπλέω.**
sailing, sailing weather: **πλοῦς, οῦ, ὁ.**
same: **ὁ αὐτός.**
same time, at the: **ἅμα.**
Sardis: **Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ.**
satisfaction, give: **δίκην δίδωμι.**
satrap: **σατράπης, ου, ὁ.**
save: **σῴζω.**
save from (= bring safely back): **ἀποσῴζω.**
say: **λέγω, φημί.**
sea: **θάλαττα, ης, ἡ.**
season: **ὥρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
secretly: **λάθρᾳ.**
secure: **ἀσφαλής, ές.**
see: **θεάομαι, ὁράω.**
seem: **δοκέω;** seem best: **δοκέω.**
seize: **αἱρέω, ἁρπάζω, καταλαμβάνω, συλλαμβάνω.**
seize beforehand: **προκαταλαμβάνω.**
self: **αὐτός.**
send: **πέμπω, ἵημι.**
send after: **μεταπέμπομαι.**
send ahead: **προπέμπω.**
send away: **ἀποπέμπω.**
send down: **καταπέμπω.**

send forward: προπέμπω.
send off: ἀποπέμπω.
send with: συμπέμπω.
sent after: μετάπεμπτος, ον.
sentinel: φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ.
separate: κρίνω.
separated, be: διέχω.
servant: ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ.
serve in war: στρατεύομαι; serve in war with: συστρατεύομαι.
set: ἵστημι, τίθημι; of the sun: δῦω, δύνω.
severe: χαλεπός, ή, όν.
shameful: αἰσχρός, ᾱ́, όν.
sheep: πρόβατον, ου, τό.
shield: ἀσπίς, ίδος, ἡ.
shoot: τοξεύω.
short: βραχύς, εῖα, ύ.
show: δείκνῡμι, δεικνύω (and ἐπιδείκνῡμι), δηλόω, φαίνω.
shun: φεύγω.
shut (= shut up): κατακλείω.
side, on the other: πέρᾱν.
sight, out of: ἀφανής, ές.
silver (*adj.*): ἀργυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν.
silver (*noun*): ἀργύριον, ου, τό.
simple: ἁπλοῦς, ῆ, οῦν.
since: ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὁπότε.
sincere: ἁπλοῦς, ῆ, οῦν.
skillful: δεινός, ή, όν.
slander: διαβάλλω.
slave: ἀνδράποδον, ου, τό.
slay: ἀποκτείνω; (pass.) ἀποθνῄσκω.
sling: σφενδόνη, ης, ἡ.
small: μῑκρός, ᾱ́, όν.
smite: παίω.
snow: χιών, όνος, ἡ.
so as: ὥστε.
so great: τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο.
so long as: ἕστε, ἕως.
so many (much): τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο.
so that: ὥστε.
Socrates: Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ.
soldier: στρατιώτης, ου, ὁ.
some: οἱ μέν. See Lesson VI.
some, somebody, something: τις, τι.
somewhere: που.
Sophaenetus: Σοφαίνετος, ου, ὁ.
source: πηγαί, ῶν, αἱ.
Spartan: Λακεδαιμόνιος, ᾱ, ον.
spear: δόρυ, δόρατος, τό; λόγχη, ης, ἡ.
speech: λόγος, ου, ὁ.
splendor: λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ.
spread (of a report): διέρχομαι.
spring: πηγή, ῆς, ἡ.
stadium: στάδιον, ου, τό.
stage: σταθμός, οῦ, ὁ.
stand: ἵστημι (intr. tenses).
stand up: ἀνίσταμαι.
start up: ἀνίστημι.
station: καθίστημι.
steal: κλέπτω.
steep: ὄρθιος, ᾱ, ον.
still: ἔτι.
stone: λίθος, ου, ὁ.
stop, make to: παύω.
straightway: εὐθύς, ἤδη.
strange: θαυμαστός, ή, όν.
strength: δύναμις, εως, ἡ; κράτος, ους, τό.
strike: παίω.
strong: δυνατός, ή, όν; ἰσχῡρός, ᾱ́, όν.
stronghold: χωρίον, ου, τό.
strongly: ἰσχῡρῶς.
struggle: ἀγωνίζομαι.
such: τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο.
such as: τοιοῦτος οἷος.
suffer: πάσχω.
sufficient: ἱκανός, ή, όν.
suitable: ἐπιτήδειος, ᾱ, ον.
summon: καλέω, μεταπέμπομαι.
summoned: μετάπεμπτος, ον.
sun: ἥλιος, ου, ὁ.
supplies: ἐπιτήδεια, ων, τά.
supply: παρέχω.
support: τρέφω.
supporter: ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ.
suppose: οἴομαι.
sure, to be: μήν.

surely: **γε.**
surpass: **νῑκάω.**
surprised, be: **θαυμάζω.**
surrender: **παραδίδωμι.**
suspicion: **ὑποψῑᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
swear: **ὄμνῡμι.**
sweet: **ἡδύς, εῖα, ύ.**
swift: **ταχύς, εῖα, ύ.**
swiftly: **ταχέως, ταχύ.**
Syennesis: **Συέννεσις, ιος, ὁ.**
Syria: **Συρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**

T

take (= seize): **αἱρέω, λαμβάνω.**
take away for oneself: **ἀφαιρέομαι.**
take back: **ἀπολαμβάνω.**
take off: **ἀπολαμβάνω.**
take together: **συλλαμβάνω.**
talent: **τάλαντον, ου, τό.**
Tarsus: **Ταρσοί, ῶν, οἱ.**
tax: **δασμός, οῦ, ὁ.**
teach: **διδάσκω.**
tear to pieces: **διαρπάζω.**
tent: **σκηνή, ῆς, ἡ.**
terrible: **δεινός, ή, όν; φοβερός, ᾱ́, όν.**
terrify utterly: **ἐκπλήττω.**
than: **ἤ.**
thankful, feel: **χάριν ἔχω.**
that (*conj.*): **ὅτι**; (= in order that) **ἵνα, ὅπως, ὡς.**
that (*dem. pron.*): **ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο.**
that (*rel. pron.*): **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.**
the: **ὁ, ἡ, τό.**
then (inferential): **τοίνυν.**
then (temporal): **τότε, εἶτα, ἔπειτα, ἔνθα, ἐντεῦθεν.**
thence: **ἐντεῦθεν.**
there: **ἐνταῦθα, ἔνθα, αὐτοῦ.**
thereafter: **τὸ λοιπόν.**
therefore: **οὖν, τοίνυν, τοιγαροῦν, ὥστε.**
thereupon: **εἶτα, ἔπειτα.**
thick: **παχύς, εῖα, ύ.**
thickly grown (wooded): **δασύς, εῖα, ύ.**
thief: **κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ.**
think: **ἡγέομαι, νομίζω, οἴομαι, δοκέω.**
this: **ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε**; **οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο.**
Thracian: **Θρᾷξ, Θρᾳκός, ὁ.**
throng: **ὄχλος, ου, ὁ; πλῆθος, ους, τό.**
through: **διά** with gen.
throw: **βάλλω.**
thus: **οὕτω, οὕτως, ὧδε.**
Tigris: **Τίγρης, ητος, ὁ.**
timbers: **ξύλα, ων, τά.**
time: **χρόνος, ου, ὁ.**
time, at any, at some: **ποτέ.**
time, at that: see 'then.'
time (= in the time of): **ἐπί** with gen.
time, fit or proper: **ὥρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ.**
time, right, proper: **καιρός, οῦ, ὁ.**
Tissaphernes: **Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ.**
to: **εἰς** (= into); **ἐπί** with acc.; **παρά** with acc.; **πρός** with acc.; **ὡς** with acc. (of persons).
together with: **ἅμα.**
top of: **ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον.**
toward: **πρός** with gen. or acc.
town: **ἄστυ, εως, τό.**
tree: **δένδρον, ου, τό.**
trench: **διῶρυξ, υχος, ἡ.**
tribute: **δασμός, οῦ, ὁ.**
trireme: **τριήρης, ους, ἡ.**
trouble: **πρᾶγματα, ων, τά.**
truce: **σπονδαί, ῶν, αἱ.**
true: **ἀληθής, ές.**
trumpet: **σάλπιγξ, ιγγος, ἡ.**
trust: **πέποιθα.**
truth, in: **δή, μήν.**
try: **πειράομαι.**
turn (*noun*): **τρόπος, ου, ὁ.**
turn (*verb*): **στρέφω, τρέπω.**
turn about or back: **ἀναστρέφω** and **-ομαι.**
turn out (= happen): **γίγνομαι.**

U

under: **ὑπό** with dat. or acc.; (from under) **ὑπό** with gen.
understand: **ἐπίσταμαι.**
understanding: **γνώμη, ης, ἡ.**
undertake: **ὑπισχνέομαι.**
unguarded: **ἀφύλακτος, ον.**
unjust: **ἄδικος, ον.**
unprepared: **ἀπαράσκευος, ον.**
unprotected: **ψῑλός, ή, όν.**
until: **ἕστε, ἕως, μέχρι, πρίν.**
unwilling: **ἄκων, ουσα, ον.**
up (*adv.*): **ἄνω.**
up (*prep.*), up along, up through: **ἀνά.**
upon: **ἐπί** with dat. or acc.
urge on: **σπεύδω.**
urged: **εἶπον.**
use: **χράομαι.**
useful: **χρήσιμος, η, ον,** or **χρήσιμος, ον.**

V

vain: **κενός, ή, όν.**
very: **μάλα, πάνυ;** **ὡς** with sup.
victory: **νίκη, ης, ἡ.**
view: **σκέπτομαι.**
village: **κώμη, ης, ἡ.**
village chief: **κωμάρχης, ου, ὁ.**
virtue: **ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ.**
visible: **φανερός, ᾱ́, όν.**
voice: **φωνή, ῆς, ἡ.**
voyage: **πλοῦς, οῦ, ὁ.**
vulnerable: **τρωτός, ή, όν.**

W

wage war: **πολεμέω.**
wagon: **ἅμαξα, ης, ἡ.**
wait for: **μένω.**
wall: **τεῖχος, ους, τό.**
want: **δέομαι.**
war: **πόλεμος, ου, ὁ;** make war on, wage war: **πολεμέω.**
warlike: **πολεμικός, ή, όν.**
watch fires: **πυρά, ῶν, τά.**
watchword: **σύνθημα, ατος, τό.**
water: **ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό.**
way: **ὁδός, οῦ, ἡ.**
way down: **κατάβασις, εως, ἡ.**
way to: **ἔφοδος, ου, ἡ.**
way up: **ἄνοδος, ου, ἡ.**
way, in what (*interr.*): **πῶς.**
way, in what (*rel.*): **ὅπῃ, ὅπως.**
weary, am: **κάμνω.**
well (*adv.*): **εὖ.**
well! (in address): **ἀλλά.**
well-disposed: **εὔνους, ουν.**
what sort (of): **οἷος, ᾱ, ον; ὁποῖος, ᾱ, ον.**
whatever: **ὅ τι.**
wheel about: **στρέφω.**
when: **ὅτε, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή;** (with subjv.) **ὅταν, ἐπειδάν;** (= whenever) **ὁπότε, ὅτε.**
whence: **ἔνθεν, ὅθεν.**
where (*interr.* = whither): **ποῖ.**
where (*rel.*): **ἔνθα;** (= whence) **ἔνθεν;** (= whither) **ὅποι.**
where, wherever: **ὅπῃ, ὅπου.**
whether: **εἰ.**
whether . . . or: **πότερον (πότερα) . . . ἤ.**
which: **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ; ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι.**
which, the very one: **ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ.**
while: **ἕστε, ἕως.**
whither (*interr.*): **ποῖ.**
whither (= whithersoever): **ὅποι.**
who, which, what (*interr.*): **τίς, τί.**
who (*rel.*): **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ; ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι.**
whoever (*or* whichever): **ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι.**
whole: **ὅλος, η, ον; πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; ἅπᾶς, ᾶσα, ᾶν; σύμπᾶς, ᾶσα, αν.**
wholly: **πάνυ.**
why (*interr.*): **τί.**
width: **εὖρος, ους, τό.**

wife: **γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ.**
wine: **οἶνος, ου, ὁ.**
wish: **βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.** See 'desire.'
with: **μετά** with gen.; **σύν.**
with the aid of: **σύν.**
within: **εἴσω, ἔνδον.**
without: **ἄνευ,** (outside) **ἔξω.**
woman: **γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ.**
wonder (= wonder at): **θαυμάζω.**
wonderful: **θαυμαστός, ή, όν.**
wood: **ξύλον, ου, τό;** (hewn or split) **ξύλα, ων, τά.**
word: **λόγος, ου, ὁ.**
work: **ἔργον, ου, τό.**
worse (*adj.*): **κακίων, ον; χείρων, ον.**
worse (*adv.*): **κάκῑον, χεῖρον.**
worthy: **ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον.**
wound: **τιτρώσκω.**
write: **γράφω.**
wrong, do, be in the: **ἀδικέω.**

X

Xenias: **Ξενίᾱς, ου, ὁ.**
Xenophon: **Ξενοφῶν, ῶντος, ὁ.**

Y

yearn: **ἐπιθῡμέω.**
yet: **ἔτι** (temporal), **μέντοι** (adversative).
young: **νέος, ᾱ, ον.**
young man: **νεᾱνίσκος, ου, ὁ.**
you: **σύ.**
your (sing.): **σός, σή, σόν.**
your (pl.): **ὑμέτερος, ᾱ, ον.**
yourself: **σεαυτοῦ, ῆς.**

Z

zealously: **προθῡμως.**

GREEK–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

AND INDEX TO THE LESSONS

The Roman numerals indicate the number of the special vocabulary in which a word occurs. References to sections are made by Arabic numerals. If no references are placed under a word, it occurs for the first time in the SELECTIONS FROM THE ANABASIS (pp. 263–279).

For the principal parts of compound verbs see the simple verbs. In the few instances where compounds occur without the simple verbs, the principal parts are given under the compounds. If, in place of an active form, a middle form occurs in the principal parts, the middle form is understood to be used in the active sense. Thus **ἀκούω** *I hear*, **ἀκούσομαι** *I shall hear*.

If a part is omitted from its proper place, the indication is that the part does not occur, at least in Attic Greek.

A

ἀ- or **ἀν-** before vowels, a negative prefix called *alpha privative*, equivalent to Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*.

ἄ-βατος, ον (**ἀ-** priv. and theme **βα-**, cp. **δια-βαίνω**): *not to be trodden on, impassable.* Cp. **ἀ-διά-βατος.** § 476. XXIX.

Ἀβροκόμᾱς, ᾱ (Doric gen., for **ου**), **ὁ**: *Abrocomas*, a satrap of Phoenicia and Syria. XXXI.

ἀγαθός, ή, όν: *good, brave.* §§ 64, 116. Comp. **ἀμείνων, βελτίων, κρείττων**; sup. **ἄριστος, βέλτιστος, κράτιστος**; § 360. 1. III.

ἀγγέλλω (for **ἀγγελ + *yω***, theme **ἀγγελ-**), **ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ἤγγελκα, ἤγγελμαι, ἠγγέλθην**: *announce, report*, with **ὅτι** or partic. in indir. disc. § 669. 3. Cp. **ἄγγελος.** LV.

ἄγγελος, ου, ὁ: *messenger.* XLV.

ἄγε, imv. of **ἄγω** used as an interjection: *come!* **ἄγε** (or **ἄγετε**) **δή**: *come now!* XXIX.

ἀγορᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ: *market-place, market.* IX.

ἀγοράζω (theme **ἀγοραδ-**), **ἀγοράσω, ἠγόρασα, ἠγόρακα, ἠγόρασμαι, ἠγοράσθην**: *buy.* Cp. **ἀγορᾱ́.** XV.

ἄγω, ἄξω (§ 153), **ἤγαγον** (§§ 87, 239, 258), **ἦχα** (§ 445), **ἦγμαι** (§ 466. *a*), **ἤχθην** (§ 387. 1): *lead, bring; carry, convey;* MID. sometimes *marry* (§ 324). § 487. I.

ἀγών, ῶνος, ὁ: *gathering, contest, games.* § 220. XX.

ἀγωνίζομαι (theme **ἀγωνιδ-**), **ἀγωνιοῦμαι** (§ 543), **ἠγωνισάμην, ἠγώνισμαι**: *contend* as in games, *struggle.* Cp. **ἀγών.** LV.

ἀδελφός, οῦ, ὁ: *brother*. The voc. sing. with irreg. accent is **ἄδελφε**. VIII.

ἀ-διά-βατος, ον (ἀ- priv. and **διαβαίνω**): *not to be crossed, impassable*. § 476. VII.

ἀδικέω (**ἄδικος**), **ἀδικήσω, ἠδίκησα, ἠδίκηκα, ἠδίκημαι, ἠδικήθην**: *do wrong to, injure, be in the wrong*. LV.

ἄ-δικος, ον (ἀ- priv. and **δίκη**, cp. **δίκαιος**): *unjust*. XLVI.

ἀ-δύνατος, ον (ἀ- priv. and **δύναμαι**): *impossible*. LX.

ἀεί, adv.: *always, continually, in succession*. XLII.

Ἀθηναῖος, ᾱ, ον: *Athenian*. XXI.

ἀθροίζω (theme **ἀθροιδ-**), **ἀθροίσω, ἤθροισα, ἤθροικα, ἤθροισμαι, ἠθροίσθην**): *gather together, collect, assemble* (trans.); MID. *gather* (intr.), *muster*, with **εἰς** and acc. XXVII, XXX.

ἀθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *discouragement, despondency*. LIV.

ἀθῡ́μως (adv. of **ἄθῡμος** *out of heart, discouraged*): *dejectedly*. **ἀθῡ́μως ἔχειν**: *be discouraged*.

Αἰγύπτιος, ᾱ, ον (**Αἴγυπτος** *Egypt*): *Egyptian*.

αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ᾕρηκα, ᾕρημαι, ᾑρέθην: *take, capture, seize*; MID. *choose*. LI (cp. XXVI and XXXII).

αἰσθάνομαι (theme **αἰσθ-**, pres. tense suffix **ανϕ**), **αἰσθήσομαι** (with lengthened theme), **ᾐσθόμην, ᾔσθημαι**: *perceive*. §§ 441, 442. XXXVIII.

αἰσχρός, ᾱ́, όν: *shameful, disgraceful*. Comp. **αἰσχίων**, sup. **αἴσχιστος**, § 352. *b*. XXXV.

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ᾔτησα, ᾔτηκα, ᾔτημαι, ᾐτήθην: *ask* a favor, *beg, ask for* something *from* somebody (two accs.); MID. *ask* for oneself. LI.

αἰχμ-άλωτος, ον (**αἰχμή** *spear-point* and **ἁλίσκομαι**): *captured by the spear*; **οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι**: *the captives*.

ἀκοντίζω, ἀκοντιῶ, etc.: *hit* with a javelin.

ἀκούσᾱς, 1 aor. act. partic. of **ἀκούω**: *having heard*. Declined in § 209.

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα (§ 447), **ἠκούσθην** (**σ** is irregularly inserted): *hear, hear of, listen*, with object in gen. or acc., or with gen. of person and acc. of thing; may be followed by **ὅτι** clause (§ 262), or by inf. (§ 262. *a*), or by partic. (§ 442. *a*). XVII.

ἀκρό-πολις, εως, ἡ: high part of a city, *citadel*. XXXII.

ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον: *top of, highest point of*; **τὸ ἄκρον** (subst.): *the height*. Cp. Lat. *acus, acūtus, aciēs*. XXXII.

ἄκων, ουσα, ον (for declension cp. **κωλῡ́ων**, § 206): *unwilling*. Used like a partic. in the gen. abs. const. XL.

ἀληθεύω (**ἀληθής**), **ἀληθεύσω, ἠληθευσα**: *speak the truth*.

ἀληθής, ές: *true*. Comp. **ἀληθέστερος**, sup. **ἀληθέστατος**, § 351. *d*. XXXIV.

ἀληθινός, ή, όν (**ἀληθής**): *true, worthy of the name, trusty*.

ἁλ-ίσκομαι (themes **ἁλ-** and **ἁλο-**), **ἁλώσομαι, ἑᾱ́λων** or **ἥλων, ἑᾱ́λωκα** or **ἥλωκα**: *be taken, be captured*. Used as pass. of **αἱρέω**. §§ 573. *a*, 574, 575. LVIII.

ἀλλά (**ἄλλος**), conj.: *otherwise, but*; sometimes in an address, *well!* V.

ἄλλῃ, adv. (dat. fem. of **ἄλλος**, with **ὁδῷ** or **χώρᾳ** understood): *elsewhere, in another place* or *direction*. XLVII.

ἀλλήλοιν, αιν, οιν, reciprocal pron.: *of one another*. § 377. XXXVIII.

ἄλλος, η, ο: *other, another; besides*; preceded by article, *the other, the rest of*. § 124. X.

ἄλλως (adv. of **ἄλλος**): *otherwise.* **ἄλλως ἔχειν**: see **ἔχω**. LIV.

ἄλφιτα, ων, τά: *barley meal.*

ἅμα, adv.: *at the same time, together with*, with dat. **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**: *at the same time with the day, at daybreak.* **ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι**: *at sunset* (§ 591). XIII.

ἅμαξα, ης, ἡ: *carriage, wagon.* § 140, XI.

ἀμείνων: comp. of **ἀγαθός**.

Ἀμπρακιώτης, ου, ὁ: *an Ambracian*, a citizen of Ambracia in Epīrus.

ἀμφί, prep.. with GEN. *concerning, about* (but in prose **περί** is generally used in this sense); with ACC. *about.* **οἱ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον**: *Cyrus and his men* (lit. *those* [the men] *about Cyrus*). **οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτόν**: *those about him.* XVII.

ἄν: modal adv. See §§ 249, 266. *a*, 267, 276, 277, 530. *a*, 531, 545, 546.

ἄν (εἰ + ἄν) = ἐάν: *if*, conj. with subjv. §§ 241, 249, 399. XXII.

ἀνά, prep. with acc. only: *up, up along, up through.* (In composition also *back.*) **ἀνὰ κράτος**: to the limit of strength, *at full speed.* XXVI.

ἀνα-βαίνω: *go up; go inland* ('up' from the coast); *mount* one's horse. XXVI.

ἀναγκάζω (theme **ἀναγκαδ-**, cp. **ἀνάγκη**), **ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα, ἠνάγκακα, ἠνάγκασμαι, ἠναγκάσθην**: *compel, force.* LVI.

ἀνάγκη, ης, ἡ: *necessity;* with or without **ἐστί(ν)**: *it is necessary* (§ 230). XXI.

ἀν-άγω (ἀνά + ἄγω): *lead up;* lead 'up' from the coast; MID. *put to sea* (§ 502). XXXIX.

ἀνα-καίω: *light, kindle.*

ἀνα-λαμβάνω: *take up, take along.*

ἀνα-παύω: *make cease;* MID. *rest.* LIX.

ἀνα-στρέφω: *turn back, turn about* (intr.); PASS. in mid. sense, *turn about, face about, rally.* XLI.

ἀνα-ταράττω: *stir up;* pf. pass. partic. **ἀνα-τεταραγμένον**: *confused.*

ἀνδράποδον, ου, τό (ἀνήρ and **πούς)**: *slave* taken in war. LVII.

ἄνευ, prep. with gen. only: *without.* LVI.

ἀν-έχω, impf. **ἠν-είχον** and 2 aor. **ἠν-έσχον** with double augment: *hold up;* MID. *hold oneself up, endure; restrain oneself.*

ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: *man; husband.* **ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται** (or **Ἕλληνες**): *fellow soldiers* (or *Greeks*). Cp. Lat. *vir.* § 321. XXXI.

ἄνθρωπος, ου, ὁ: *man.* Cp. Lat. *homō.* § 56. III.

ἀνιάω, ἀνιάσω, ἠνίασα, ἠνιάθην: *vex;* fut. mid. as pass. **ἀνιάσομαι**: *shall be grieved* or *hurt.*

ἀν-ίστημι: *make stand up, start up;* (intr.) *stand up.* For intr. tenses see § 555. LVI.

ἄν-οδος, ου, ἡ (ἀνά + ὁδός): *road up, way up.* XXXIX.

ἀντί, prep. with gen. only: *instead of, for;* in comp.: *against.* LVI.

ἀντίος, ᾱ, ον: *face to face, opposite, against*, with dat. **ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου**: *from the opposite side, from the opposing line.*

ἄνω, adv. (cp. **ἀνά**): *up;* up from the sea, *inland, into the interior.* Comp. **ἀνωτέρω** (*higher*), sup. **ἀνωτάτω** (*highest*), § 369. 1. XXXVII.

ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον: *worthy, worth.* With gen., § 402. Comp. **ἀξιώτερος**, sup. **ἀξιώτατος**, § 351. *b.* XXXV.

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος), ἀξιώσω, ἠξίωσα, ἠξίωκα, ἠξίωμαι, ἠξιώθην: *deem worthy; claim* as one's right, *demand, ask.* LIII.

ἀπ-αγγέλλω: *bring back a message, report.* LV.

ἀπ-άγω: *lead away, lead back.* LIV.

ἀ-παράσκευος, ον (ἀ- priv. and **παρασκευάζω**): *unprepared.* XXXVII.

ἅ-πᾶς, ᾶσα, ᾶν (**πᾶς**): *all together, all.* The prefix ἁ- signifies *together;* cp. **ἅμα.** XXVIII.

ἄπ-ειμι (εἶμι): *go away; go back, return.* LX.

ἀπ-ελαύνω: *drive off, ride off.*

ἀπ-έρχομαι, fut. supplied by **ἄπ-ειμι, ἀπ-ῆλθον, ἀπ-ελήλυθα**: *go away, go back.* Cp. Vocab. XIX.

ἀπ-έχω: *be distant, be away,* with gen. of person or place and acc. of extent of space. XVIII.

ἀπ-ῆλθον: *I* or *they went away;* see **ἀπ-έρχομαι.** XIX.

ἁπλοῦς, ᾗ, οῦν: *simple, sincere.* § 609. L.

ἀπό, prep. with gen. only: *off, from, away from.* Cp. Lat. *ab.* X.

ἀπο-βλέπω: *look away* or *off.*

ἀπο-γιγνώσκω: *abandon the idea of,* with gen.

ἀπο-διδρᾰ́σκω (δι-δρᾰ́-σκω, δρᾰ́σομαι, ἔδρᾱν, δέδρᾱκα): *run away* by stealth; *run away from* (with acc.). § 553. LVI.

ἀπο-δίδωμι: *give back, pay.*

ἀπο-θνῄσκω (θνῄσκω *die,* **θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα** *be dead*): *die off, die, perish, be slain, be killed.* X.

ἀπο-θῡ́ω: *sacrifice* what is due on account of a vow.

ἀπο-κόπτω: *cut off.* XLI.

ἀπο-κρῑ́νομαι (mid. of **ἀπο-κρῑ́νω,** see **κρῑ́νω**): give one's decision, *answer, reply.* With **ὅτι** clause, § 669. 1. LV.

ἀπο-κτείνω (κτείνω for **κτεν-γω,** theme **κτεν-**, *kill,* **κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα**): *put to death, slay, kill.* The pass. is supplied by **ἀπο-θνῄσκω.** LV.

ἀπο-λαμβάνω: *take* or *receive back; take off, cut off* (§ 444. I. 12). XXXIII.

ἀπο-λείπω: *leave behind, desert, abandon.* XLII.

ἀπ-όλλῡμι (ὄλλῡμι for **ὀλ-νῡ-μι,** themes **ὀλ-, ὀλε-**, *destroy,* **ὀλῶ, ὤλεσα, ὀλώλεκα** [§ 447] and 2 pf. **ὄλωλα, ὠλόμην**): *destroy* utterly, *lose;* MID. and 2 pf. act., *perish, be lost.* LIX.

ἀπο-πέμπω: *send off* or *away, dismiss.* X.

ἀπο-πλέω: *sail off* or *away.* LI.

ἀπορῐ́ᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (cp. **ἄ-πορος, πορεύομαι**): lack of way out, *embarrassment, difficulty.* XLVII.

ἄπορος, ον: *impassable; needy, without resources* (§ 232). § 118. III.

ἀπο-σπάω, -σπάσω, -ἔσπασα, -ἔσπακα, -ἔσπασμαι, -εσπάσθην: *draw away.*

ἀπο-σῴζω: *save from* something, *bring safely back.* LVIII.

ἀπο-φεύγω: *flee away, escape.* XII.

ἄρα, post-positive particle: *then* (inferential).

ἀργύριον, ου, τό: *silver, money.* L.

ἀργυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν (cp. **ἀργύριον**): *of silver, silver.* § 609. L.

ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ (cp. **ἄρ-ιστος**): *fitness, excellence, bravery; virtue, noble-mindedness, magnanimity.* XXXVII.

Ἀριαῖος, ου, ὁ: *Ariaeus,* a Persian nobleman. **οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου**: *Ariaeus and his men* (§ 557). XXV.

Ἀρίστιππος, ου, ὁ: *Aristippus,* a Thessalian general of mercenary soldiers. XIX.

ἄριστος: see **ἀγαθός.**

ἅρμα, ατος, τό: *chariot* for use in battle. See p. 252, Fig. 22. LVI.

ἁρπάζω (theme **ἁρπαδ-**), **ἁρπάσω** (§ 153) and **ἁρπάσομαι** (dep.), **ἥρπασα** (§ 164), **ἥρπακα** (§ 432. *e*, *f*), **ἥρπασμαι** (§ 467. *a*), **ἡρπάσθην** (§ 387. 2): *seize, make booty of, plunder.* § 487. I.

Ἀρταγέρσης, ου, ὁ: *Artagerses*, commander of the Persian king's bodyguard of six thousand.

Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, ὁ: *Artaxerxes;* in this book, Artaxerxes II, king of Persia is meant, the son of Darius and Parysatis, and brother of Cyrus. XIV.

Ἀρταπάτης, ου, ὁ: *Artapates*, a friend of Cyrus. XXXV.

ἀρχαῖος, ᾱ, ον (**ἀρχή**): *primitive, of old, old, ancient.* **τὸ ἀρχαῖον** (adv. acc.): *of old, formerly.* XXVII.

ἀρχή, ῆς, ἡ: *beginning, rule, province, empire.* § 93. VI.

ἄρχω (cp. **ἀρχή**), **ἄρξω, ἦρξα** (§ 164), **ἦργμαι, ἤρχθην**: *begin, rule, command*, with gen.; MID. *begin*, with gen. or inf. VIII, XXXIV.

ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ: *ruler, commander.* Really the pres. masc. partic. of **ἄρχω**. §§ 195, 199, 200. XVIII.

ἀσπίς, ίδος, ἡ: *shield.* See p. 97, Fig. 10. §§ 195, 196. XVIII.

ἄστυ, εως, τό: *town.* § 282. XXVII.

ἀσφαλής, ές: *secure, safe* (§ 275). **ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ**: *in safety.* Comp. **ἀσφαλέστερος**, sup. **ἀσφαλέστατος**, § 351. *d*. XXVI, XXXV.

ἀσφαλῶς, adv. (**ἀσφαλής**): *securely, safely.* Comp. **ἀσφαλέστερον**, sup. **ἀσφαλέστατα**, §§ 366, 368. XXXVII.

ἅτε, adv. (neut. pl. of **ὅσ-τε**): *as, since*, accompanying causal partic.

αὑτῆς: see **αὐτοῦ**.

αὐτός, ή, ό, as intensive pron.: *self, very;* when preceded by article, *same;* in gen., dat., and acc., used as pron. of third pers.: *him, her, it, them.* §§ 122, 123, 127, 307, 308. X.

αὐτοῦ (cp. **αὐτός**), adv.: *in the very place, here, there.* LIX.

αὐτοῦ, ῆς, οῦ (contracted from **ἑαυτοῦ**), reflexive pron. of third pers.: *of himself, herself*, etc. §§ 376. 3, 379. XXXVIII.

ἀφ-αιρέομαι (mid. of **αἱρέω**): *take away for oneself, deprive, rob* somebody *of* something (two accs.). LI.

ἀφανής, ές: *invisible, out of sight.* XXVI.

ἀφ-ίημι: *let go away, dismiss.* LVII.

ἀφ-ικ-νέ-ομαι (theme **ἱκ-**; **νε-** appears only in pres. system), **ἀφ-ίξομαι, ἀφ-ῑκόμην, ἀφ-ῖγμαι**, dep. mid.: *arrive, come.* LI.

ἀ-φύλακτος, ον (**ἀ-** priv. and **φυλάττω**), *unguarded; off one's guard.* § 476. IV.

Ἀχαιός, οῦ, ὁ: *an Achaean*, inhabitant of Achaea. XXVI.

B

Βαβυλών, ῶνος, ἡ: *Babylon.* XXXII.

βαθύς, εῖα, ύ: *deep.* XLVIII.

βαίνω (themes **βα-** or **βη-, βαν-**), **βήσομαι, ἔβην** (§ 553), **βέβηκα** (§ 432. *a*): *go.* See **ἀνα-βαίνω, δια-βαίνω**, etc.

βάλλω (for **βαλ** + *yω*, themes **βαλ-, βλη-**), **βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην**: *throw, hurl, pelt.* Often with acc. of pers. and dat. of means. LVII.

βαρβαρικός, ή, όν (**βάρβαρος**): *foreign, barbarian, not Greek.* **τὸ βαρβαρικόν**: *the barbarian force.* LVIII.

βαρβαρικῶς: *in a foreign tongue, in the Persian language.*

βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ: *foreigner, barbarian.* VIII.

βασιλεία, ας, ἡ (βασιλεύω): *kingdom.* LVI.

βασίλειος, ον (βασιλεύς): *of a king, royal.* **τὰ βασίλεια** (neut. pl. subst.): the royal buildings, *the palace.* XIX.

βασιλεύς, έως, ὁ, *king.* §§ 290, 292. XXVIII.

βασιλεύω (βασιλεύς), **βασιλεύσω, ἐβασίλευσα**: *be king, rule as king.* XIX.

βασιλικός, ή, όν (βασιλεύς, βασίλειος): *kinglike, fit to be king; royal.* XXXV.

βέλτιστος: see **ἀγαθός.**

βελτίων, ῖον: see **ἀγαθός.**

βιαίως, adv.: *with might, violently.*

βίος, ου, ὁ: *living, subsistence, livelihood.* Bio-logy (**λόγος**).

βλάπτω (theme **βλαβ-**), **βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, βέβλαφα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην**, 2 aor. pass. **ἐβλάβην**: *hurt, harm.* §§ 408, 414, 484, 487, 642. XLI.

βλέπω, βλέψομαι, ἔβλεψα: *look.* XXIX.

βοάω, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα: *cry out, shout.*

βοή, ῆς, ἡ: *outcry, shouting.*

βοη-θέω, βοηθήσω, ἐβοήθησα, βεβοήθηκα, βεβοήθημαι: run to the rescue at an outcry, *run to assist, assist.*

Βοιώτιος, ᾱ, ον: *Boeotian*, an inhabitant of Boeotia. XIV.

βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα, βεβούλευκα, βεβούλευμαι, ἐβουλεύθην: *plan, devise;* the simple verb is commonly dep. mid. **βουλεύομαι**: *take counsel with oneself, plan, deliberate.* Cp. **ἐπι-βουλεύω** and **συμ-βουλεύω.** XXXII.

βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι (with lengthened theme), **βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην** (§ 389), dep. pass.: *wish.* XXX.

βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, ἡ: *ox, cow.* Cp. Lat. *bōs.* § 290. XXVIII.

βραδέως: *slowly.*

βραχύς, εῖα, ύ: *short.* Comp. **βραχύτερος**, sup. **βραχύτατος**, § 351. *c.* **βραχύτερα**: *a shorter distance* (§ 460). XXXV.

Γ

γάρ, postpositive conj.. *for, and in fact;* sometimes *why!* VIII.

γε, enclitic particle, regularly following the emphatic word: *certainly, surely, at least*, etc. LIV.

γείτων, ονος, ὁ: *neighbor.* § 220. XX.

γένος, ους, τό: *kinship, family, birth.* Lat. *genus, gēns.* XXXI.

γερρο-φόρος, ου, ὁ (**γέρρον** *wicker shield* and **φέρω**): one who carries a wicker shield, *wicker-shield bearer.*

γεύω, γεύσω, ἔγευσα, γέγευμαι: *give a taste of;* MID. *taste*, with gen.

γέφῡρα, ᾱς, ἡ: *bridge.* § 140. XI.

γῆ, ῆς, ἡ: *earth, land.* § 594. L.

γίγνομαι (for **γι-γεν-ο-μαι**, reduplicated pres. from theme **γεν-**), **γενήσομαι** (theme **γεν-η-**), **ἐγενόμην, γέγονα** (§ 445), **γεγένημαι** (§ 456): *become, be born, be, get; happen, arise, take place, turn out.* XXXII.

γιγνώσκω (reduplicated pres. from theme **γνο-**, with pres. suffix **σκ**%), **γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην**: *learn, know, judge*, with **ὅτι** or partic. or inf. in indir. disc. Cp. Lat. *(g)nōscō, ī-gnōtus.* §§ 573. *b*, 574, 575. LV.

γνώμη, ης, ἡ (**γιγνώ-ναι**): *opinion, judgment; plan, proposition; understanding.* XXIX.

γονεύς, έως, ὁ (**γίγνομαι**): *parent.*

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: *knee.* Lat. *genū.* § 336. 6. XXXIII.

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι (§ 465. *a*), **ἐγράφην**: *write.* §§ 409, 415. XXIV.

γυμνάζω (theme **γυμναδ-**), **γυμνάσω, ἐγύμνασα, γεγύμνακα, γεγύμνασμαι, ἐγυμνάσθην**: *exercise.* Cp. **γυμνής.** XLII.

γυμνής, ῆτος, ὁ: *light-armed warrior,* javelin hurler, bowman, or slinger. XXI.

Γυμνιάς, άδος, ἡ: *Gymnias,* a city in Armenia.

γυμνικός, ή, όν: *gymnastic, athletic.*

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: *woman, wife.* § 336. 1. XXXIII.

Δ

δακρύω, δακρύσω, ἐδάκρῡσα: *weep.*

δᾱρεικός, οῦ, ὁ: *daric,* a Persian gold coin, worth about $5.40. XXII.

Δᾱρεῖος, ου, ὁ: *Darius.* The person indicated in this book is Darius II, king of Persia, father of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger. XVIII.

δασμός, οῦ, ὁ: *tribute, tax.* XXVII.

δασύς, εῖα, ύ: *thickly grown, thickly wooded,* with dat. (instrumental). Cp. Lat. *dēnsus.* XXVIII.

δέ, postpositive conj.: *and, but,* weaker than **ἀλλά.** V.

δέδια, 2 pf. of **μι**-formation, same in meaning as **δέδοικα**: *fear;* partic. **δεδιώς**: *fearing* (§ 568).

δέδοικα, pf. with pres. meaning (from **δείδω**): *fear;* 1 aor. **ἔδεισα.** Cp. **δεινός.** XLIV.

δέῃ, subjv. of **δεῖ,** impers. verb: *it is necessary.* XXIII.

δεῖ (contracted from **δέει**), fut. **δεήσει,** aor. **ἐδέησε,** impers. verb: *it is necessary.* §§ 223, 479. XX.

δείδω (pres. not found in prose), aor. **ἔδεισα,** 2 pf. **δέδοικα** and (**μι**-form) **δέδια**: *fear;* the pf. forms have pres. meaning. See **δέδοικα.**

δείκ-νῡμι (and **δεικ-νύω,** theme **δεικ-**). **δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην**: *show, point out.* §§ 579, 580, 581, 619, 648. LIX.

δεικνύς, pres. act. partic. of **δείκνῡμι**: *showing.* Declined in § 619.

δείλη, ης, ἡ: *afternoon,* early or late.

δεινός, ή, όν: *fearful, terrible, frightful; skillful.* **τὸ δεινόν** (subst.): *danger.* XLII.

δείσᾱς: see **δείδω.**

δέκα, indecl.: *ten.* Lat. *decem.* XI.

δένδρον, ου, τό: *tree.* Dat. pl. **δένδροις** and **δένδρεσι** (from nom. **τὸ δένδρος**). XXVIII.

δεξιός, ᾱ́, όν: *right, on the right hand* or *side.* **δεξιᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ** (supply **χείρ**): *the right hand,* as a *pledge.* **τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρᾱτος**: *the right* (*of the*) *wing.* Lat. *dexter.* LVIII.

δέοι, opt. of **δεῖ**: *it is necessary* (Vocab. XX). XXXVII.

δέομαι, δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην (cp. § 389), dep. pass.: *want, need; desire, ask, beg.* Often with gen. or with gen. of pers. and inf. Cp. **δεῖ.** LIX.

δέρμα, ατος, τό: *hide, skin.* **Dermatology, epi-dermis.**

δεσπότης, ου, ὁ: *master.* Voc. **δέσποτα.** XLVIII.

δεύτερος, ᾱ, ον: *second.* **(τὸ) δεύτερον**: *for the second time.*

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην: *receive, accept.* XXXII.

δή: postpositive particle, emphasizing the preceding word. **δή** is difficult to render adequately, but is sometimes translated by *now, then, accordingly, very, in truth, indeed.* XXI.

δῆλος, η, ον: *plain, clear, evident.* See § 449 and *a.* XV.

δηλόω (δῆλος), δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθην: *show, make evident.* §§ 529, 622. *a*, 643. LIII.

δηλῶν, pres. act. partic. of **δηλόω**: *showing.* Declined in § 622. *a.*

διά, prep.: with GEN. *through;* with ACC. *on account of, by means of.* XI.

δια-βαίνω: *go across, cross.* XI.

δια-βάλλω: *accuse falsely, slander.* LVIII.

δια-βατέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **δια-βαίνω**, theme **βα-**): necessary *to be crossed.* § 477. 1. XLVIII.

δια-βατός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of **δια-βαίνω**, theme **βα-**): able *to be crossed, fordable* (of a river). Cp. **ἀ-διά-βατος.** § 475. XLVIII.

δια-βήσομαι: fut. of **δια-βαίνω** (Vocab. XI). XXXII.

δια-δίδωμι: *give from hand to hand, distribute.* LVIII.

δια-κόπτω: *cut through, cut in pieces, break through.* XLI.

διᾱκόσιοι, αι, α: *two hundred.* § 421.

δια-λέγομαι (cp. **λέγω** *say*), **δια-λέξομαι**, irreg. pf. **δι-είλεγμαι**, **δι-ελέχθην** (§ 389), dep. pass.: *converse*, with dat. (§ 317). XXX.

δια-λείπω: *leave an interval, be distant.*

δια-πρᾶττομαι (cp. **πρᾶττω**), **δια-πρᾱξομαι, δι-επρᾱξάμην, δια-πέπρᾱγμαι**: carry through to the end, *bring about, accomplish, effect* (for oneself); *manage* that, with acc. and inf. or **ὅπως** clause (§ 535. *a*). XXXIV.

δι-αρπάζω: *tear in pieces, plunder utterly* or *thoroughly, sack.* XIV.

δια-σπείρω (**σπείρω** *sow*, **σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα, ἔσπαρμαι, ἐσπάρην**): *scatter;* MID. (of soldiers) *scatter.*

διδά-σκω (theme **διδαχ-**), **διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδιδάχθην**: *teach.* LX.

διδούς. pres. act. partic. of **δίδωμι**: *giving.* Declined in § 621.

δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα and **ἔδοτον, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην**: *give*, sometimes *offer* (in pres. and impf.). **δίκην διδόναι**: *give satisfaction, suffer punishment.* Cp. **δῶρον.** Lat. *dō, dōnum.* §§ 570, 571, 572, 621, 646. LVIII.

δι-είργω (**εἴργω** *shut out*, **εἴρξω, εἶρξα, εἴργμαι, εἴρχθην**): *separate, shut off.*

δι-έρχομαι: *go through, travel, spread* with **λόγος** (*report*) as subj. See **δι-ῆλθον.**

δι-έχω: *be apart, be separated.* XVII.

δι-ῆλθον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they went through, traveled; spread* with **λόγος** (*word* or *report*) as subject. See **δι-έρχομαι.** XXIV.

Διί: see **Ζεύς.**

δι-ίστημι: *set apart;* intr. tenses, *stand apart, open ranks.*

δίκαιος, ᾱ, ον (**δίκη**): *just.* Comp. **δικαιότερος**, sup. **δικαιότατος**, § 351. *a.* XXV, XXXV.

δικαίως, adv. (**δίκαιος**): *justly.* Comp. **δικαιότερον**, sup. **δικαιότατα**, §§ 366, 368. XXV, XXXVII.

δίκη, ης, ἡ: *justice, deserts.* **δίκην ἐπι-τιθέναι**: *inflict punishment* on somebody (dat.). **δίκην διδόναι**: *give satisfaction, suffer punishment* (§ 576). IX.

δισ-χίλιοι, αι, α: *two thousand.* § 421.

διωκτέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **διώκω**): necessary *to be pursued.* § 477. 2. XLVIII.

διώκω, διώξω or **διώξομαι, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, δεδίωγμαι, ἐδιώχθην**: *pursue.* XVII.

διῶρυξ, υχος, ἡ: *trench, canal.* § 187. XVII.

δοκέω (theme **δοκ-**, but **δοκε-** in pres. system), **δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην**: *seem, be reputed; seem best; think.* § 512. LI.

δόλιχος, ου, ὁ: *long foot-race*, from six to twenty-four times the length of the stadium. **δόλιχον θεῖν**: *run the long race.*

δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: *spear* of a Greek hoplite. See p. 152, Fig. 19. § 336. 5. XXXIII.

δουπέω, ἐδούπησα: *strike* heavily, *clash*, with dat. (of instrument) and **πρός** with acc.

Δρακόντιος, ου, ὁ: *Dracontius*, a soldier from Sparta.

δρεπανη-φόρος, ον: *scythe-bearing*, epithet of two-wheeled Asiatic chariots, which carried, for use on the battle field, scythes fixed to the axles and pointed obliquely downward. See p. 270, Fig. 25.

δρόμος, ου, ὁ (cp. **ἔδραμον**): a *run; race course* (§ 514). **δρόμῳ**: *on the run.* **θεῖν δρόμῳ**: *run with speed, run fast, charge on the run.* See p. 79, Fig. 6. XII.

δύνα-μαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην (or **ἠδυνήθην**), dep. pass.: *be able.* Cp. **δύναμις**. LVI.

δύναμις, εως, ἡ: *force, strength.* XXVII.

δυνατός, ή, όν (**δύναμαι**): *able, strong; possible.* Cp. § 333. XXXIV.

δῦνω: see **δύω.**

δύο, gen. and dat. **δυοῖν**, but generally used indeclinably: *two.* Lat. *duo.* § 423. XV.

δύω (and **δῦνω**), **δύσω, ἔδῡσα** (trans.), **ἔδῡν** (intr.), **δέδῡκα, δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην**: *enter, set* (used of the sun). §§ 580, 582, 648. LIX.

δώ-δεκα (**δύο** + **δέκα**), indecl.: *twelve.* XXXI.

δῶρον, ου, τό: *gift.* Cp. Lat. *dōnum.* XLIII.

E

ἐάν = **εἰ** + **ἄν**, conj. with **subjv.**: *if.* §§ 241, 399. XXII.

ἑαυτοῦ, ῆς, οῦ, reflexive pron. of third pers.: *of himself, herself*, etc. §§ 376. 3, 379. XXXVIII.

ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴᾱσα, εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱμαι, εἰᾰ́θην: *permit, allow, let.* The augment is irreg. §§ 515. *a*, 518. *a.* LII.

ἐγγύς, adv.: *near*, with gen. Comp. **ἐγγύτερον** or **ἐγγυτέρω**, sup. **ἐγγύτατα** or **ἐγγυτάτω**, § 369. 2. XXXVII.

ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ or **μου**: *I.* Lat. *ego.* §§ 304, 306, 308. XXIX.

ἔδεισα: see **δέδοικα.**

ἔδραμον: see **τρέχω.** XI.

ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω (with lengthened theme), **ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα**: *wish, desire.* VI.

ἔθνος, ους, τό: *nation, tribe.* **Ethnology.**

εἰ, proclitic conj.: *if.* **εἰ μή**: *if not, except* (§ 557). **εἴ τι**: *whatsoever* (§ 232). §§ 106, 242, 267, 416, 545. After an interr. verb or equivalent: *whether*, introducing an indirect question. §§ 343. *a*, 363. VII, XXXIV.

εἰ γάρ: used in wishes; see §§ 584, 585.

εἶδον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they saw.* Subjv. **ἴδω**, opt. **ἴδοιμι**, imv. **ἰδέ** (§ 301. *a*), inf. **ἰδεῖν**, partic. **ἰδών**. See **ὁράω.** XIX.

εἰδῶ, εἰδῷς: see **οἶδα.**

εἴθε: used in wishes; see §§ 584, 585.

εἴκοσι(ν), indecl.: *twenty.* XXVI.

εἴληφα: see **λαμβάνω.**

εἱλόμην, 2 aor. mid. of **εἵλον**: *I took for myself, I chose.* Subjv. **ἕλωμαι**, opt. **ἑλοίμην**, imv. **ἑλοῦ**, inf. **ἑλέσθαι**, partic. **ἑλόμενος.** See **αἱρέω.** XXXII.

εἷλον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they took, seized.* Subjv. **ἕλω**, opt. **ἕλοιμι**, imv. **ἕλε**, inf. **ἑλεῖν**, partic. **ἑλών**. See **αἱρέω**. XXVI.

εἶ-μι, impf. **ᾔα**: *go, shall go;* pres. serving as fut. of **ἔρχομαι**. § 651. LX.

εἰμί, impf. **ἦ** or **ἦν**, fut. **ἔσομαι**: *am, be.* §§ 101, 102, etc., 650. VII.

εἶναι: see **εἰμί**. VII.

εἶπον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they said.* Subjv. **εἴπω**, opt. **εἴποιμι**, imv. **εἰπέ** (§ 301. *a*), inf. **εἰπεῖν**, partic. **εἰπών**. With **ὅτι** *that* and finite verb, § 262. In the sense of *commanded, proposed, urged,* **εἶπον** is followed by the inf.; cp. § 98. XXIV, XXXII.

εἴρηκα, pf.: *I have said, I have mentioned.* § 448. Supplies missing pf. act. of **λέγω** *say.* XLV.

εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ: *peace.* LVII.

εἷς, μία, ἕν, gen. **ἑνός, μιᾶς, ἑνός**: *one.* § 422. XLIII.

εἰς, proclitic prep. with acc. only: *into, to; for;* with numerals, *to the number of, about* (§ 219). **εἰς τὴν ἑσπέρᾱν**: *into the evening, at evening.* V.

εἰσ-άγω: *lead in.* XXXV.

εἰσ-ελαύνω: *drive in, ride* or *march in,* with **εἰς** and acc. XXXVIII.

εἰσ-ῆλθον, 2 aor. of **εἰσ-έρχομαι**: *I* or *they came in, entered.* XXI.

εἴσω, adv.: *within,* with gen. XLVI.

εἶτα, adv: *then, thereupon.* X.

εἶχον (§ 80): see **ἔχω**.

ἐκ, before a vowel **ἐξ**, proclitic prep. with gen. only: *out from, from.* V.

ἕκαστος, η, ον: *each;* used in predicate position to modify a noun with the article; used also without the article. XXII.

ἑκάτερος, ᾱ, ον: *each.*

ἑκατέρωθεν: *from both sides, on both sides.*

ἑκατέρωσε: *in both directions.*

ἑκατόν, indecl.: *hundred.* XV.

ἔκ-βασις, εως, ἡ (**ἐκ-βαίνω**): passage out, mountain *pass.* L.

ἐκεῖ, adv.: *there.*

ἐκεῖνος, η, ο: *that, that one, that man; he, him,* etc. §§ 174, 175. *a,* 176, 307. XV.

ἐκκλησί-ᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἐκ-καλέω** *summon forth*): *assembly.* XXXVIII.

ἐκ-κλίνω (**κλίνω** *bend,* **κλινῶ, ἔκλῑνα, κέκλιμαι, ἐκλίθην** and **ἐκλίνην**): *bend out* of line, *turn* in flight.

ἐκ-λείπω: *leave out, abandon;* (intr.) *leave off, fail.* LVIII.

ἐκ-πλέω: *sail forth, sail off.*

ἐκ-πλήττω (**πλήττω**, theme **πληγ-** or **πλαγ-**, *strike,* **πλήξω, ἔπληξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην,** but in comp. **-επλάγην**): *strike out* of one's wits, *terrify utterly, bewilder.* § 466. *a.* XLI.

ἐλαύνω (theme **ἐλα-**; the pres. is for **ἐλα-νυ-ω**), **ἐλῶ** (§ 544. *a*), **ἤλασα** (§ 165), **ἐλήλακα** (§ 447), **ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην**: *drive, ride, march.* XV.

ἐλάχιστος: see **ὀλίγος**.

ἐλελίζω, ἠλέλιξα (**ἐλελεῦ** a war cry): *shout* **ἐλελεῦ**, *raise the war cry, cry out.*

ἐλήλακα: see **ἐλαύνω**.

ἐλήλυθα: see **ἔρχομαι**.

ἐλθέ: imv. of **ἦλθον** (**ἔρχομαι**), § 301. *a.*

ἔλθω: subjv. of **ἦλθον** (**ἔρχομαι**). XXII.

Ἑλλάς, άδος, ἡ: *Hellas,* the name given by the Hellēnes to their own country. From the Romans they received the appellation *Greeks* (Lat. *Graecī*), and their land was called *Greece* (Lat. *Graecia*). XVIII.

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ: *a Greek.* XX.

Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν (**Ἕλλην**): *Hellenic, Greek.* **τὸ Ἑλληνικόν** (neut. subst.): *the Greek force.* XXVII, XXXIX.

Ἑλληνικῶς, adv.: in the Greek tongue, *in Greek.*

Ἑλληνίς, ίδος (Ἕλλην), fem. adj.: *Greek.*

ἐμαυτοῦ, ῆς, reflexive pron. of first pers.: *of myself*, etc. §§ 376. 1, 379. XXXVIII.

ἐμ-βάλλω: *attack.*

ἐμός, ή, όν (cp. **ἐμοῦ**, gen. of **ἐγώ**): *my, mine.* § 126. X.

ἔμ-προσθεν, adv. (**ἐν** + **πρόσθεν**): *in front, before*, sometimes with gen. XLVII.

ἐν, proclitic prep. with dat. only: *in; among.* II.

ἑνδέκατος, η, ον (**ἕν-δεκα** *eleven*): *eleventh.*

ἔνδον, adv.: *within.* **οἱ ἔνδον**: *those within.* XLI.

ἐν-δῦω: *put on.* § 588.

ἕνεκα, prep. with gen. only: *for the sake of.* Usually after its noun.

ἔνθα, rel. adv.: *where;* dem.: *there;* of time, **ἔνθα δή**: *then indeed.* XLIV.

ἔνθα-περ (strengthened **ἔνθα**): *just where, where;* the word *very* may be used with the antecedent to translate **-περ.**

ἔνθεν, rel. adv.: *whence, from which, where.* XXIV.

ἔνιοι, αι, α (from **ἔνι** [*i.e.* **ἔν-εστι**] + **οἵ**): *some.* XLV.

ἐν-νοέω: *have in mind.*

ἐνταῦθα, adv.: *there, thither.* VI.

ἐντεῦθεν, adv.: *thence;* of time, *then.* XI.

ἐν-τυγχάνω: *chance upon, happen upon, come upon by chance, encounter*, with dat. XLVII.

Ἐνυάλιος, ου, ὁ: *Enyalius*, a name of Ares, the Greek god of war.

ἕξ: indecl.: *six.* Lat. *sex.* § 421.

ἐξ: see **ἐκ.**

ἐξ-άγω: *lead out, induce* (§ 394). X.

ἑξακισ-χίλιοι, αι, α: *six thousand.* § 421.

ἑξακόσιοι, αι, α (**ἕξ**): *six hundred.* § 421.

ἐξ-απατάω (**ἀπατάω** *deceive*, **ἀπατήσω, ἠπάτησα, ἠπάτηκα, ἠπάτημαι, ἠπατήθην**): *utterly deceive, cheat.* LIV.

ἐξαπίνης, adv.: *suddenly.*

ἔξ-ειμι (**εἶμι**): *go out, go forth.* LX.

ἐξ-ελαύνω: *drive out; march out* or *forth.* XI.

ἐξ-έρχομαι, fut. **ἔξ-ειμι** (**εἶμι**), 2 aor. **ἐξ-ῆλθον**, 2 pf. **ἐξ-ελήλυθα**: *go forth.* Cp. XXV.

ἔξ-εστι(ν), 3 sing. of **ἔξ-ειμι** (**εἰμί**): *it is possible* or *permitted* (§ 223). **ἐξ-όν**: *it being possible* (§ 566). XX.

ἑξήκοντα (**ἕξ**), indecl.. *sixty.* § 421.

ἐξ-ῆλθον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they went forth.* XXV.

ἐξ-ήχθη: see **ἐξ-άγω.**

ἐξ-ικνέομαι (cp. **ἀφ-ικνέομαι**): *reach, reach* the mark.

ἐξ-όν: see **ἔξεστι(ν).**

ἐξ-οπλίζω: *arm fully;* MID. *fully arm oneself.*

ἔξω, adv.: *without, outside*, sometimes with gen. **οἱ ἔξω**: *those without.* XLI.

ἔξω: see **ἔχω.**

ἐπᾶν (**ἐπεί** + **ἄν**), conj. with subjv.. *when* (§ 248. 2. *a*); *whenever* (§ 400).

ἐπεί, temporal conj.: *when, after* (§ 167); *whenever* (§ 417); causal conj.: *since* (§ 310). XIV, XXIX.

ἐπειδάν (**ἐπειδή** + **ἄν**), conj. with subjv.: *when, after* (§ 248. 2. *a*); *whenever* (§ 400). **ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα**: *as soon as* (§ 533). XXIII.

ἐπειδή (**ἐπεί** and **δή**), temporal conj.: *when, after* (§ 167); causal conj.: *since* (§ 310). **ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα**: *as soon as.* XIV.

ἔπ-ειμι (εἶμι): *go* or *come on, approach.* LX.

ἐπεί-περ (strengthened **ἐπεί**), causal conj.: *since indeed* (§ 310). XXIX.

ἔπειτα, adv.: *thereupon, then, next.* XXXVI.

ἐπήν (**ἐπεί** + **ἄν**), conj. with subjv.: *when* (§ 248. 2. *a*); *whenever* (§ 400).

ἐπί, prep.: with GEN. *on, in the time of;* with DAT. *on, upon, at, in the power of, for;* with ACC. *against* (often with idea of hostility), *to, upon; after*, i.e. *to get* (§§ 405, 451). **ἐπὶ τούτοις**: *upon this, thereupon* (§ 347). **ἐπὶ πολύ**: *for a long distance* (§ 557). VIII.

ἐπι-βουλεύω: *plot against*, with dat. X.

ἐπι-βουλή, ῆς, ἡ: *plot* (against). Cp. **ἐπι-βουλεύω**. XXXVIII.

ἐπι-δείκνῡμι: *show, point out;* MID. in sense of act., and also *distinguish oneself.* LIX.

ἐπι-θῡμέω, ἐπι-θῡμήσω, ἐπ-εθῡμησα: have one's heart set on, *yearn, desire*, with inf. or gen. LII.

ἐπι-κάμπτω (**κάμπτω** *bend*, **κάμψω, ἔκαμψα, κέκαμμαι, ἐκάμφθην**): *bend to, wheel.*

ἐπί-κειμαι: *lie upon, attack*, with dat. LIX.

ἐπι-μελέομαι, ἐπι-μελήσομαι, ἐπι-μεμέλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, dep. pass.: *take care of, care for*, with gen. or object clause; *give heed, observe, watch to see.* LIV.

ἐπ-ιόντες: see **ἔπ-ειμι** (**εἶμι**).

ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι (theme **σῑτιδ-**), **-σῑτιοῦμαι, -σῑτισάμην**: *get provisions* for ones.lf Cp. **σῖτος**. LV.

ἐπί-σταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην: *understand.* LVI.

ἐπι-στήσᾱς: see **ἐφ-ίστημι**.

ἐπιστολή, ῆς, ἡ: *letter.* VIII.

ἐπι-τάττω: *enjoin* something (acc.) *on* somebody (dat.), *direct, command.* XLVII.

ἐπιτήδειος, ᾱ, ον: *suitable, necessary.* **τὰ ἐπιτήδεια** (neut. pl. subst.): *provisions, supplies.* XIII.

ἐπι-τίθημι: *put* or *place upon; put* or *inflict* punishment (**δίκην**) *on* somebody (**τινί**); MID. *set oneself upon, attack*, with dat. LVII.

ἐπι-τυγχάνω: *chance upon, happen upon, find*, with dat. XXXV.

ἕπομαι (for **σέπομαι**), **ἕψομαι**, 2 aor. **ἐσπόμην**, impf. with irreg. augment **εἱπόμην**: *follow*, with dat. (§ 317). Cp. Lat. *sequor.* XLII.

ἐπριάμην, 2 aor.: *I bought.* No pres. from this verb. §§ 550, 646. LVI.

ἑπτά, indecl.. *seven.* Lat. *septem.* § 421.

ἔργον, ου, τό: *work, deed, undertaking.* § 49. II.

ἔρημος, η, ον, or **ἔρημος, ον**: *deserted.* **σταθμοὶ ἔρημοι**: *marches through the desert.* LIII.

ἑρμηνεύς, έως, ὁ: *interpreter.* XXX.

ἔρυμα, ατος, τό: *defense, protection.*

ἔρχομαι, fut. supplied by **εἶμι** (§ 651), 2 aor. **ἦλθον** (Vocab. XVIII), 2 pf. **ἐλήλυθα** (§ 447): *come, go.* For the *simple* **ἐλήλυθα**, **ἥκω** is commonly used. XXX.

ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα, ἠρώτηκα, ἠρώτημαι, ἠρωτήθην: *ask* a question, *inquire.* Cp. **ἠρόμην** (§ 346), which is often used for **ἠρώτησα**. LII.

ἔσεσθαι: see **ἔσομαι**, fut. of **εἰμί**.

ἔσομαι: see **εἰμί**.

ἑσπέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *evening.* Lat. *vesper.*

ἕστε, temporal conj.. *while, so long as, until.* §§ 521, 522. LII.

ἔστι(ν): *it is possible.* See **εἰμί**. § 102. VII.

ἔστω: 3 sing. imv. of **εἰμί**.

ἑστώς, pf. act. partic. of **ἵστημι**: *standing*. Declined in § 624.

ἔσχατος, η, ον: *last, extreme*. § 361. *a*. XXXVI.

ἔσχον (§ 88): see **ἔχω**.

ἑταῖρος, ου, ὁ: *companion*.

ἕτερος, ᾱ, ον: the *other;* pl. subst. *others*. **Hetero-dox** (**δόξα** *opinion*).

ἔτι, adv.: *still, yet, besides, longer, again*. XX.

ἕτοιμος, η, ον, or **ἕτοιμος, ον**: *ready, prepared*. XXXVIII.

εὖ (adv. of **ἀγαθός**): *well*. Comp. **ἄμεινον**, etc., sup. **ἄριστα**, etc., § 369. 3. **εὖ πάσχειν**: *be treated kindly* (§ 537). XXXVII.

εὐ-δαίμων, ον (**δαίμων** *divinity*): having a good divinity, *fortunate, prosperous*. § 222. Comp. **εὐδαιμονέστερος**, sup. **εὐδαιμονέστατος**, § 351. *e*. XX.

εὔ-δηλος, ον: *perfectly clear, very clear*.

εὐθύς, adv.: *straightway, at once*. XIII.

εὔ-νους, ουν: *well disposed*. §§ 499, 610. L.

εὔ-ξεινος, ον (**ξεῖνος** *stranger*): *hospitable*. **ὁ Εὔξεινος Πόντος**: *the Euxine* or *Black Sea*.

εὑρίσκω, εὑρήσω, ηὗρον, ηὕρηκα, ηὕρημαι, ηὑρέθην: *find*. For 2 aor. act. imv. **εὑρέ** see § 301. *a*. XLIV.

εὖρος, ους, τό: *breadth, width*. XXVI.

Εὐφρᾱ́της, ου, ὁ: *Euphrātes*, a great river in western Asia. XV.

εὔχομαι, εὔξομαι, εὐξάμην or **ηὐξάμην, εὖγμαι** or **ηὔγμαι**: *pray, vow*.

εὐ-ώνυμος, ον (**εὖ** and **ὄνομα**): of good name or omen; *left* as opposed to right. The Greeks avoided the use of the regular word for *left*, **ἀριστερός**, because in their regard the left was the side of evil omens; and they regularly referred to the left by the euphemistic word **εὐώνυμος**. **ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου** and **ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ**: *on the left wing*.

ἔφασαν: *they said;* see **φημί**. VIII.

ἔφη: *he said;* see **φημί**. VIII.

ἐφ-ίστημι: *halt, rein in* one's horse.

ἔφοδος, ου, ἡ (**ἐπί** + **ὁδός**): *way to, approach*. XLI.

ἐχθρός, ᾱ́, όν: *hostile*. **ἐχθρός** (subst.), **οῦ, ὁ**: personal *enemy*. To be distinguished from **πολέμιος** and **οἱ πολέμιοι** *the enemy* in war. Comp. **ἐχθίων**, sup. **ἔχθιστος**, § 352. *b*. XXXI.

ἔχω, ἕξω (§ 153) or **σχήσω** (§ 154), **ἔσχον** (§ 88), **ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι**, impf. **εἶχον** (§ 80): *have, hold, occupy; restrain* (§ 335); *consider* (§ 365); *be able*, with inf.; MID. *be next, come next*, with gen. **ἀθῡ́μως ἔχειν**: *be discouraged;* **ἄλλως ἔχειν**: *be otherwise;* **κακῶς ἔχειν**: *be bad;* **καλῶς ἔχειν**: *be good, be well;* **οὕτως ἔχειν**: *be thus* or *so* (§ 536); **ἔχων**: *with* (§ 213. *b*). § 487. I.

ἕως, temporal conj.: *while, so long as, until*. §§ 521, 522. LII.

Z

ζάω, ζήσω: *live*. In contract forms **ζάω** has **η** for **ᾱ** (§ 517). LII.

Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ: *Zeus*, the most exalted of the gods, and honored by all Greeks. For declension see § 606. 2.

H

ἤ, conj.: *or; than* (after comparative idea); **ἤ . . . ἤ**: *either . . . or*. XXVIII.

ἡ, fem. art., proclitic in nom. sing. and nom. pl. **αἱ** (§ 20): *the;* see **ὁ. ἡ δέ**: *and she, but she*, indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. **ἡ** may mean *she*, but only with **μέν** and **δέ**. §§ 93, 632. VI.

ἥ, fem. rel. pron.: *who, which;* see **ὅς.**

ἤγαγον (§ 87): see **ἄγω.**

ἡγεμόσυνα, ων, τά (**ἡγεμών**), adj. with **ἱερά** understood: *thank-offerings for good guidance.*

ἡγεμών, όνος, ὁ (**ἡγέομαι**): *leader, guide, commander.* § 220. XX.

ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἥγημαι, dep. mid.: *lead, guide*, with gen. or dat.; *think, believe.* LI.

ἦγον (§ 82): see **ἄγω.**

ἡδέως, adv. (**ἡδύς**): *gladly.* Comp. **ἥδῑον**, sup. **ἥδιστα**, §§ 366, 368. XXXVII.

ἤδη, adv.: *now, already, straightway.* XXXIII.

ἥδομαι (theme **ἡδ-**): *be pleased;* **ἡσθήσομαι** (fut. pass.): *shall be pleased;* **ἥσθην** (aor. pass.): *was pleased;* with supplementary partic. (§ 439) or dat. of cause (§ 403). Cp. **ἡδύς.** XLIV.

ἡδύς, εῖα, ύ: *sweet.* § 288. Comp. **ἡδῑ́ων** (§ 354), sup. **ἥδιστος** (§ 352. *a*). Cp. Lat. *suāvis.* XXVIII.

ἥκιστα, adv. (sup. of **κακός, ἧττων**): *least of all, by no means* (§ 360. 2). XXXVI.

ἥκω, ἥξω: *come, have come;* pres. with pf. meaning. X.

ἦλθον, 2 aor. of **ἔρχομαι**: *I* or *they came* or *went.* XVIII.

ἥλιος, ου, ὁ: *sun.* LIX.

ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν: *we;* see **ἐγώ** *I* (§ 304).

ἡμελημένως, adv.. *carelessly.*

ἡμέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *day.* XIII.

ἡμέτερος, ᾱ, ον (**ἡμεῖς**): *our, ours.* § 126. X.

ἥμισυς, εια, υ: *half.* **τὸ ἥμισυ** (with **στρατεύματος**): *the half.* **ἥμισυς** takes the gender and the number of its part. gen. Cp. Lat. *sēmi-*, Eng. **hemi-**. XXVIII.

ἤν (**εἰ** + **ἄν**) = **ἐάν**: *if*, conj. with subjv. §§ 241, 399. XXII.

ἦν, 3 sing. impf. of **εἰμί**: *he* (*she* or *it*) *was; it was possible.* III, VII.

ἡνίκα, temporal conj.: *when.*

ἡνί-οχος, ου, ὁ (**ἡνία** *reins* and **ἔχω**): one who holds the reins, *charioteer.*

Ἡρακλῆς, έους, ὁ: *Heracles*, son of Zeus and Alcmene, famed for his deeds of might. He was invoked as a guide of travelers. § 603.

ἠρόμην, 2 aor.: *I asked* (a question) or *inquired;* subjv. **ἔρωμαι**, opt. **ἐροίμην**, imv. **ἐροῦ**, inf. **ἐρέσθαι**, partic. **ἐρόμενος.** The pres. and other tenses are supplied by **ἐρωτάω**, which see. XXXIV.

ἦσαν, 3 pl. impf. of **εἰμί**: *they were.* III.

ἡττάομαι (**ἥττων**), **ἡττήσομαι, ἥττημαι, ἡττήθην**: *be inferior, be conquered;* used as pass. of **νῑκάω.** LIV.

ἥττων: comp. of **κακός.** § 360. 2.

Θ

θ': see **τε.**

θάλαττα, ης, ἡ: *sea.* § 140. XI.

θαυμάζω (theme **θαυμαδ-**), **θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, τεθαύμακα, ἐθαυμάσθην**: *wonder, be surprised; wonder at, admire*, with acc. XIV.

θαυμαστός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of **θαυμάζω**): *admirable, wonderful, strange.* XLVIII.

θέᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *sight, spectacle.*

θεάομαι (θέᾱ), θεάσομαι, ἐθεᾱσάμην, τεθέᾱμαι: *look on, gaze at, see.* LII.

θεός, οῦ, ὁ: *god;* **ἡ**: *goddess.* The voc. case is the same as the nom. VII.

θέω, θεύσομαι: *run.* See also **δρόμος.** LI.

θηρεύω, θηρεύσω, ἐθήρευσα, τεθήρευκα, τεθήρευμαι, ἐθηρεύθην: *hunt, catch* (by hunting). Cp. **θηρίον.** XLII.

θηρίον, ου, τό: *wild beast.* XLII.

Θήχης, ου, ὁ: *Thèches,* the mountain south of Trapezus from which the survivors of the Ten Thousand first saw the Euxine Sea.

θνῄσκω: see **ἀπο-θνῄσκω.** The pf. **τέθνηκα** (§ 432. *b, d*) *be dead, be slain,* commonly occurs without a prefix.

θόρυβος, ου, ὁ: *noise.* LX.

Θρᾷξ, Θρᾳκός, ὁ: *a Thracian, Thracian.* XVII.

θυγάτηρ, τρός, ἡ: *daughter.* § 321. XXXI.

θύρα, ᾱς, ἡ: *door.*

θυσίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (θύω): a *sacrifice.*

θύω, θύσω, ἔθῡσα, τέθυκα (§ 432. *b*), **τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην** (§ 487): *sacrifice, offer* to a god; MID. *sacrifice, offer* for oneself or from one's own resources. XXIII, XXXIV.

θώρᾱξ, ᾱκος, ὁ: *breastplate.* See p. 86, Fig. 7. XVII.

I

ἰδέ (§ 301. *a*), **ἰδεῖν, ἴδοιμι**: see **εἶδον** and **ὁράω.**

ἱδρόω, ἵδρωσα: *sweat.*

ἴδω, ἰδών: see **εἶδον** and **ὁράω.**

ἰέναι: pres. inf. of **εἶμι.**

ἱερός, ᾱ́, όν: *sacred, holy.* **τὰ ἱερά**: *the victims,* then *the omens from the victims* sacrificed (the usual or ordinary offering). XLV.

ἵημι, ἥσω, ἧκα and **εἷτον, εἷκα, εἷμαι, εἵθην**: *send, hurl* (with something, in dat.); MID. *hurl oneself, hasten.* §§ 561, 562, 563, 649. LVII.

ἱκανός, ή, όν: *sufficient, enough, able.* § 333. XXXII.

ἵνα, conj. expressing purpose: *in order that, that.* § 243. XXII.

ἰόντος: see **ἰών** and **εἶμι.**

ἱππεύς, έως, ὁ (ἵππος): *horseman;* pl. *cavalry.* XXVIII.

ἱππικός, ή, όν (ἵππος): *of horse, of cavalry.* LVI.

ἱππόδρομος, ου, ὁ (ἵππος and **δραμεῖν)**: *race track.* **Hippodrome.**

ἵππος, ου, ὁ: *horse.* § 48. **ἐφ' ἵππου**: *on horseback,* with verb meaning *ride* (§ 232). **ἀφ' ἵππου**: *on horseback,* with verb meaning *hunt* (§ 420). II.

ἴσμεν: see **οἶδα.**

ἴσος, η, ον: *equal.* **ἐν ἴσῳ**: *in even step, in step.* Iso-thermal (**θερμός** *hot*).

ἱστᾶς, pres. act. partic. of **ἵστημι**: *setting.* Declined in § 617.

ἴστε: see **οἶδα.**

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα and **ἔστην, ἕστηκα** and **ἕστατον, ἐστάθην**: *set, place, make stand, halt;* intr. tenses: *stand, stand still, stop* (see § 555). Cp. Lat. *stō.* §§ 551, 552, 617, 624, 646, 647. LVI.

ἰσχῡρός, ᾱ́, όν: *strong.* Comp. **ἰσχῡρότερος,** sup. **ἰσχῡρότατος,** § 351. *a.* XXXV.

ἰσχῡρῶς, adv. (**ἰσχῡρός**): *strongly, exceedingly, harshly.* Comp. **ἰσχῡρότερον,** sup. **ἰσχῡρότατα,** §§ 366, 368. XXXVII.

ἰχθῦς, ύος, ὁ: *fish.* § 283. XXVII.

ἴχνος, ους, τό: *track, footprint.*

ἰών: pres. partic. of **εἶμι.**

Ἰωνικός, ή, όν (Ἰωνίᾱ): *of Ionia, Ionian.* XXVII.

K

καθ-εύδω, καθευδήσω, impf. **ἐκάθευδον** and **καθηῦδον**: *sleep.*

καθ-ήκω: *come down, reach down, extend.* XXVI.

κάθ-ημαι: *sit;* pres. partic. **καθήμενος**: *seated.* § 653.

καθ-ίστημι: *set* or *place down, station;* intr. tenses: *be placed, stationed,* or *established; station oneself, take one's place.* For intr. tenses cp. **ἵστημι**, § 555. LVI.

καθ-οράω: *look down on, descry, observe.* Cp. 2 aor. **κατ-είδον.**

καί, conj.: *and, also, even.* **καί . . . καί**: *both . . . and.* **καί . . . δέ**: *and also,* 'also' being represented by **καί.** **καὶ γάρ**: *and in fact;* or *for also, for even;* sometimes may be rendered *yes, for.* III, XV.

καιρός, οῦ, ὁ: the right measure, *right time, right place; proper time; opportunity, crisis.* XLIV.

καίω: see **κᾶω.**

κακίων: comp. of **κακός** (§ 360. 2).

κακός, ή, όν: *bad, cowardly.* Comp. **κακίων, χείρων, ἥττων**; sup. **κάκιστος, χείριστος, ἥκιστα** (adv.); § 360. 2. VI, XXXVI.

κακῶς, adv. (**κακός**): *badly, ill.* Comp. **κάκῖον**, etc., *worse,* sup. **κάκιστα,** etc., § 368. Cp. the adj. **κακός,** § 360. 2. **κακῶς ἔχειν**: see **ἔχω.** **κακῶς ποιεῖν**: see **ποιέω.** XXXVII.

καλέω, καλῶ (fut. for **καλέσω**, § 544), **ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην**: *call, summon, invite; call, name.* LV.

καλός, ή, όν: *beautiful, handsome, noble, honorable* (§ 232. I. 14), *fair, favorable.* Comp. **καλλίων**, sup. **κάλλιστος,** § 360. 3. VI, XXXVI.

καλῶς, adv. (**καλός**): *beautifully, nobly, honorably.* Comp. **κάλλῖον**, sup. **κάλλιστα** (§ 368) *most successfully* (§ 394). **καλῶς ἔχειν**: see **ἔχω.** XXII, XXXVII.

κάμ-νω (theme **καμ-**), **καμοῦμαι, ἔκαμον** (2 aor.), **κέκμηκα**: *labor, be weary.* LX.

κἄν: by crasis (§ 30) for **καὶ ἄν** (= **καὶ ἐάν**).

Καρδοῦχοι, ων, οἱ: the *Cardūchi,* a mountain people on the left bank of the Tigris. XXIV.

κατά, prep.: with GEN. *down from;* with ACC. *down over, down along, along, opposite, against, by* in a local sense; *according to, by* in a distributive sense, as **κατὰ μῆνα**: *by the month, monthly;* **κατὰ ἔθνη**: *by nations, nation by nation.* **κατὰ θάλατταν**: *by sea.* **κατὰ μέσον**: *along* or *opposite the middle, at the middle.* **κατὰ τὸ στέρνον**: *on the breast.* **τὸ καθ' αὑτούς**: *the division opposite themselves.* **κατὰ κράτος**: *with might and main.* XX.

κατα-βαίνω: *go down, descend; enter* games. Cp. **ἀνα-βαίνω.** XXXIV.

κατά-βασις, εως, ἡ (**κατα-βαίνω**): *descent, way down* a mountain side; the *descent* from the interior to the sea. XLVII.

κατ-άγω: *lead down; bring* a ship (especially a captured one) *into harbor; restore* exiles. XLII.

κατα-θεάομαι: *gaze down, survey.*

κατα-καίνω (**καίνω** *kill,* **κανῶ, ἔκανον, κέκονα**): *kill.*

κατά-κειμαι: *lie down.* LIX.

κατα-κλείω: *shut up, confine, inclose.* XLVI.

κατα-κόπτω: *cut down.* XLI.

κατα-λαμβάνω: *seize, occupy, overtake, come upon, find,* with acc. XXXII.

κατα-λείπω: *leave behind, leave, abandon.* XXVI.

κατα-λελειμμένοι: see **κατα-λείπω.**

κατα-λύω: *unloose; unyoke, halt* (intr.).

κατα-πέμπω: *send down*, especially to the sea. XXXIX.

κατα-πηδάω (**πηδάω** *leap*, **πηδήσομαι**, **ἐπήδησα**, **πεπήδηκα**): *jump down.*

κατα-πίπτω (**πίπτω** *fall*, **πεσοῦμαι**, **ἔπεσον**, **πέπτωκα**): *fall down.*

κατα-φανής, ές (**φαίνω**): *in sight, visible.*

κατ-εῖδον, 2 aor.: *I* or *they looked down on, descried, observed.* Cp. **καθ-οράω**. XXIV.

κᾰ́ω or **καίω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην**: *burn, light, kindle.* XXI.

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι: *lie; lie outstretched*, as the dead on the battlefield. This verb is used as the pass. of the pf. tenses of **τίθημι**, in the meaning *be placed, be set.* With **τὰ ὅπλα κεῖται** cp. the act. **θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**. § 654. LIX.

Κελαιναί, ῶν, αἱ: *Celaenae*, a city in Phrygia. XXXIII.

κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην (**σ** is irregularly inserted in the last two parts): *command, bid, order.* VI.

κενός, ή, όν: *empty; vain, groundless.* XXV.

κέρας, κέρᾱτος or **κέρως, τό**: *horn; wing* of an army. See § 602 for declension.

κερδαλέος, ᾱ, ον (**κέρδος**): *profitable.* Comp. **κερδαλεώτερος**.

κέρδος, ους, τό: *gain, profit, pay.*

κεφαλή, ῆς, ἡ: *head.* Cp. Lat. *caput.* LVI.

κῆρυξ, ῡκος, ὁ: *herald.* § 187. XVII.

Κιλικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Cilicia.* XI.

Κίλιξ, ικος, ὁ: *Cilician*, a native of Cilicia. XLI.

Κίλισσα, ης, ἡ: *Cilician woman.* XI.

κινδῡνεύω, κινδῡνεύσω, ἐκινδῡ́νευσα, κεκινδῡ́νευκα, κεκινδῡ́νευμαι, ἐκινδῡνεύθην: *incur danger, run a risk.* XIX.

κίνδῡνος, ου, ὁ: *danger.* **κίνδῡνός ἐστι(ν)**: *there is danger.* Cp. **κινδῡνεύω**. XL.

Κλέαρχος, ου, ὁ: *Clearchus*, a Lacedaemonian general in the service of Cyrus. V.

κλείω, κλείσω, ἔκλεισα, κέκλεικα, κέκλειμαι, ἐκλείσθην (**σ** is irregularly inserted): *shut.* XLVI.

κλέπτω (themes **κλεπ-, κλαπ-, κλοπ-**), **κλέψω, ἔκλεψα, κέκλοφα, κέκλεμμαι, ἐκλάπην**: *steal.* Cp. **κλώψ**. XVIII.

κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ: *thief.* § 187. XVII.

κνημίς, ῖδος, ἡ: *greave.* See p. 101, Fig. 11. XVIII.

κοινός, ή, όν: *common, in common, general.* LIX.

κολάζω (theme **κολαδ-**), **κολάσω, ἐκόλασα, κεκόλασμαι, ἐκολάσθην**: *chastise, punish.* XXXVII.

κολωνός, οῦ, ὁ: *hill, mound* of stones. Cp. Lat. *culmen, collis.*

κονιορτός, οῦ, ὁ (**κόνις** *dust*, and **ὄρνῡμι** *rouse*): *a rising of dust.*

κόπτω (theme **κοπ-**), **κόψω, ἔκοψα, κέκοφα, κέκομμαι, ἐκόπην**: *cut.* §§ 409, 473. XLI.

κράνος, ους, τό: *helmet.* See p. 156, Fig. 20. Cranium.

κρᾱτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ: *mixing bowl.* Lat. *crātēra.* See p. 109, Fig. 12. § 220. XX.

κράτιστος, η, ον: *best;* sup. of **ἀγαθός**.

κράτος, ους, τό: *strength, might;* **ἀνὰ κράτος**: to the limit of strength, *at full speed;* **κατὰ κράτος**: *with might and main.* XLIV.

κραυγή, ῆς, ἡ: *outcry.* LX.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: *Cretan*, a native of Crete. XLVI.

κρίνω (for **κριν** + *yω*, theme **κριν-**), **κρινῶ**, **ἔκρῖνα**, **κέκρικα**, **κέκριμαι**, **ἐκρίθην**: *separate, judge, decide.* Cp. Lat. *cernō.* LV.

κτάομαι, **κτήσομαι**, **ἐκτησάμην**, **κέκτημαι**, **ἐκτήθην**: *acquire;* in pf. *possess, gain.*

κύκλος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *circle;* **κύκλῳ**: *in a circle, around.* Cycle.

κυκλόω, **κυκλώσω**, **ἐκύκλωσα**, **κεκύκλωμαι**, **ἐκυκλώθην**: *encircle, surround.*

κύκλωσις, **εως**, **ἡ** (**κυκλόω**): *an encircling, flank march.*

Κῦρος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *Cyrus.* The person indicated by the name in this book is *Cyrus the Younger*, son of Darius and Parysatis. IV.

κωλύω, **κωλύσω**, **ἐκώλῡσα**, **κεκώλῡκα**, **κεκώλῡμαι**, **ἐκωλύθην**: *hinder.* § 206. VII.

κωλύων, pres. act. partic. of **κωλύω**: *hinaering.* Declined in § 206.

κωμ-άρχης, **ου**, **ὁ** (**κώμη** and **ἄρχω**): *ruler* or *head man of a village, village chief.* XLVI.

κώμη, **ης**, **ἡ**: *village.* § 96. VI.

Λ

λαβέ: 2 aor. act. imv. of **λαμβάνω**. § 301. *ω*.

λάβω: see **λαμβάνω**.

λάθρᾳ, adv.: *secretly;* with gen.: *without the knowledge of.* XXVIII.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, **ᾱ**, **ον** (**Λακεδαιμων**): *Lacedaemonian, Spartan.* XVIII.

Λακεδαίμων, **ονος**, **ἡ**: *Lacedaemon* or *Lacedaemonia.* XXVII.

λαμβάνω (themes **λαβ-**, **ληβ-**, § 218), **λήψομαι**, **ἔλαβον**, **εἴληφα** (§ 448), **εἴλημμαι** (§ 465. *a*), **ἐλήφθην** (§ 387. 1): *take, receive, enlist* (soldiers, § 324); **λαβών**: *with* (§ 213. *b*). § 487. V.

λαμπρότης, **ητος**, **ἡ**: *splendor, brilliancy.* XIX.

λανθάνω (themes **λαθ-**, **ληθ-**, cp. § 218), **λήσω**, **ἔλαθον**, **λέληθα**, **λέλησμαι**: *lie hid, escape notice of;* with supplementary partic. in const. like **τυγχάνω** (§ 215); thus **ἔλαθεν ἐλθών**: *he went secretly*, lit. *he escaped notice going.* XLIV.

λέγω, **λέξω**, **ἔλεξα**, pf. act. supplied by **εἴρηκα**, **λέλεγμαι** (but **δι-εί-λεγμαι**), **ἐλέχθην**: *say*, followed by **ὅτι** or **ὡς** *that* and a finite verb (§§ 260, 261). In pass. followed by inf., § 391. XXIV.

λείπω (themes **λειπ-**, **λοιπ-**, **λιπ-**), **λείψω** (§ 153), **ἔλιπον** (§ 85), **λέλοιπα** (§ 445), **λέλειμμαι** (§§ 462. 1, 465), **ἐλείφθην** (§ 387. 1): *leave.* §§ 85, etc., 483, 487, 641. I.

λελυκώς, pf. act. partic. of **λύω**: *having loosed.* Declined in § 435.

λευκο-θώρᾱξ, **ᾱκος**, **ὁ**, adj.: *with white corslet.*

λευκός, **ἡ**, **όν**: *white.*

λήψομαι (theme **ληβ-**): fut. of **λαμβάνω** (Vocab. V). XXXII.

λίθος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *stone.* LVII.

λιμήν, **ένος**, **ὁ**: *harbor.* § 220. XX.

λιπών, 2 aor. act. partic. of **λείπω**: *having left.* Declined in § 208.

λόγος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *word, speech, report* (§ 263), *account* (§ 533). VIII.

λόγχη, **ης**, **ἡ**: *spear point, spear.* See p. 30, Fig. 2; p. 256, Fig. 23. LVIII.

λοιπός, **ή**, **όν** (**λείπ-ω**): *left, rest of, remaining;* **τὸ λοιπόν** (adv. acc. § 284): *thereafter, in the future.* XXVII.

λόφος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *hill.* XI.

λοχᾱγός, **οῦ**, **ὁ** (**λόχος** and **ἄγω**): *captain.* IV.

λόχος, **ου**, **ὁ**: *company* of soldiers. II.

Λῡδίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Lydia*, a district of western Asia Minor, of which Sardis was the chief city. XXXIX.

Λῡδιος, ᾱ, ον (Λῡδίᾱ): *Lydian.* LVI.

λυθείς, aor. pass. partic. of **λῡ́ω**: *having been loosed.* Declined in § 388.

Λύκιος, ου, ὁ: *Lycius*, commander of the cavalry organized by the Ten Thousand during their retreat.

λῡ́πη, ης, ἡ: *grief.*

λῡ́σᾱς, 1 aor. act. partic. of **λῡ́ω**: *having loosed.* For declension cp. § 209. *b*.

λῡ́σων, fut. act. partic. of **λῡ́ω**: *about to loose.* For declension cp. § 207.

λῡ́ω, λῡ́σω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην: *loose, break, destroy;* MID. *ransom.* §§ 45, etc., 482, 487, 640. I.

λῡ́ων, pres. act. partic. of **λῡ́ω**: *loosing.* For declension cp. §§ 206. *a*, 616. 2.

M

μακρός, ᾱ́, όν: *long.* Comp. **μακρότερος**, sup. **μακρότατος**, § 351. *a*. XXXV.

μάλα, adv.. *very.* Comp. **μᾶλλον** *more*, sup. **μάλιστα** *most.* §§ 369. 4, 370. XXXVII.

μᾶλλον, comp. adv.: *more, better, rather.* See **μάλα**. § 370. XXII.

μανθάνω (themes **μαθ-, μαθη-**, cp. **τυγχάνω**, § 218), **μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα**: *learn.* May be followed by **ὅτι** clause (§ 262), or in sense of *learn how* by inf. (§ 457). See also § 457. *a*. XXIV.

μάντις, εως, ὁ: *soothsayer.*

μάχη, ης, ἡ: *battle, fight.* § 93. VI.

μάχομαι (cp. **μάχη**), **μαχοῦμαι** (for **μαχέσομαι**, § 544), **ἐμαχεσάμην** (with lengthened theme), **μεμάχημαι**: *fight*, with dat. (§ 317), or **πρός** *against* and acc. XXXVII.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: *great, large, loud* (of a noise). Comp. **μείζων**, sup. **μέγιστος** (§ 360. 4). § 337. 1. XXXIII.

μέγιστος, η, ον: see **μέγας**.

μείζων, μεῖζον: see **μέγας**.

μεῖον, adv. (cp. **μῑκρός**) : *less.*

μείων, ον: *smaller, fewer* (in pl.); comp. of **μῑκρός**.

μελανίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**μέλᾱς** *black*) : *blackness.*

μέλει, μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε, impers.: *it is a care*, with dat. of person and **ὅπως** clause.

μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα: *be about, intend*, with fut., pres., or aor. inf.; *delay.* § 156. 2. XIII.

μέμνημαι (pf. with pres. meaning), **μεμνήσομαι** (§ 473), **ἐμνήσθην**: *remember.* For const. see § 457 and *a*. May take obj. in gen. The pres. act. is **μιμνῄσκω** *remind*, which form is made up of the reduplication **μι-** plus the theme **μνη-** (long form of **μνα-**) plus the pres. suffix **ισκ%**; fut. **μνήσω**, 1 aor. **ἔμνησα**. XLVI.

μέν, postpositive particle, used with a word or clause that is contrasted with a following word (in another clause) or a second clause. The second word or clause often has **δέ**, which is sometimes replaced by another conjunction. **μέν** sometimes means *on the one hand;* but more often it is to be omitted in translation. **ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ**: *the one . . . the other;* **οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ**: *some . . . others.* See **δέ**. VI.

μέντοι, postpositive particle: *however, yet.* XV.

μένω (themes **μεν-, μενη-**), **μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα**: *remain, wait for.* Cp. Lat. *maneō*. §§ 541, 542. LV.

Μένων, ωνος, ὁ: *Menon*, a Thessalian general in the service of Cyrus. XXV.

μέσος, η, ον: *middle, middle of* (§ 192); (**τὸ**) **μέσον**: *the middle, the midst* (§ 219); **ἐν μέσῳ**: *in the midst, between*, with gen.; **μέσον ἡμέρᾱς**: *midday*. XVII.

μεστός, ή, όν: *full*, with gen. VI.

μετά, prep.: with GEN. *with, in company with*; with ACC. *into the midst of, after*. XV.

μεταξύ, adv.: *between*, with gen. IX.

μετα-πέμπομαι (mid. of **μετα-πέμπω** *send for*), **-πέμψομαι, -επεμψάμην, -πέπεμμαι**: *send after* to come to oneself; *summon*. XXX.

μετά-πεμπτος, ον (verbal adj. of **μεταπέμπομαι**): *sent after, summoned*. XLVIII.

μέχρι, temporal conj.: *until*. §§ 521, 522. LII.

μή, (1) neg. adv.: *not;* with inf. (§§ 98, 519. *b*), in protases (§§ 106. *b*, 216, etc.), purpose clauses (§§ 243, 268), object clauses (§ 535), prohibitions (§ 309), wishes (§§ 584, 585), with hortatory subjv. (§ 244), and deliberative subjv. (§ 564). (2) conj.: *lest*, after verbs of *fearing;* **μὴ οὐ**: *lest not* (§ 438). VI, XLIV.

μη-δέ: *and not, nor, not even*. Used like **μή**. Cp. **οὐδέ**. XLIII.

μηδ-είς, μηδε-μία, μηδ-έν (**μηδέ** + **εἷς**): *nobody, no one, no, nothing*. Used like **μή**. § 426. *a*. XLIII.

Μῆδοι, ων, οἱ: the *Medes*. LIX.

μήν, μηνός, ὁ: *month*. Lat. *mēnsis*. § 220. XX.

μήν, postpositive adv.: *in truth, certainly;* **γε μήν**: *to be sure, at any rate*. LIX.

μή-ποτε: *never*. Used like **μή** *not*. LIV.

μή-τε . . . μή-τε: *neither . . . nor*. Used like **μή**. Cp. **οὔτε . . . οὔτε**. XLIII.

μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ: *mother*. Lat. *māter*. § 321. XXXI.

Μιθραδᾱτης, ου, ὁ: *Mithradātes*. XLIV.

μῑκρός, ᾱ́, όν: *small*. Comp. **μῑκρότερος**, sup. **μῑκρότατος**, § 360. 5. Comp. also **μείων, μεῖον**: *fewer* (in pl.). XXXVI.

μισθός, οῦ, ὁ: *pay*. XX.

μισθοφορᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ (**μισθός** and **φέρω**): receipt of wages, *pay*.

μνᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ: *mina*, one sixtieth of a talent, *i.e.* about $18. § 594. L.

μόνος, η, ον: *alone, only*. XLVII.

μῦ́ριοι, αι, α: *ten thousand*. § 421.

N

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: *ship*. § 605.

νεᾱνίᾱς, ου, ὁ: *young man*. § 593.

νεᾱνίσκος, ου, ὁ: *young man*. XXI.

νεκρός, οῦ, ὁ: *dead body, corpse*. Cp. Lat. *necō*. LIX.

νέος, ᾱ, ον: *new, fresh, young*. Comp. **νεώτερος**, sup. **νεώτατος**. Cp. Lat. *novus*. XXXV.

νεφέλη, ης, ἡ: *cloud*.

νῑκάω (**νίκη**), **νῑκήσω, ἐνίκησα, νενίκηκα, νενίκημαι, ἐνῑκήθην**: *conquer, surpass*. The pass. is often expressed by **ἡττάομαι**. LII.

νίκη, ης, ἡ: *victory*. XI.

νομίζω (theme **νομιδ-**), **νομιῶ** (§ 543), **ἐνόμισα, νενόμικα, νενόμισμαι, ἐνομίσθην**: *think, consider*. With inf. § 110. VIII.

νόμος, ου, ὁ: *custom, law*. XXXIX.

νοῦς, οῦ, ὁ: *mind*. § 596. L.

νύκτωρ, adv. (cp. **νύξ**): *by night*. XXXIII.

νῦν, adv.: *now* (of time). Lat. *nunc*. XX.

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: *night;* **μέσαι νύκτες**: *midnight* (middle watches of the night). Lat. *nox.* §§ 195, 196, 198. XVIII.

Ξ

Ξενίᾱς, ου, ὁ: *Xenias,* an Arcadian general in the service of Cyrus. XII.

ξένιος, ᾱ, ον (**ξένος**): *hospitable, relating to hospitality;* **ξένια**, neut. pl. subst.: *gifts in token of hospitality, guest-gifts.*

ξένος, ου, ὁ: *guest-friend.* XIX.

Ξενοφῶν, ῶντος, ὁ: *Xenophon,* the author of the *Anabasis.* See pp. 264, 265. LIV.

ξύλινος, η, ον (**ξύλον**): *made of wood, wooden.*

ξύλον, ου, τό: *wood;* pl. of hewn or split *wood; timbers.* XXIV.

Ο

ὁ, ἡ, τό, gen. **τοῦ, τῆς, τοῦ,** def. art.: *the.* The forms of the definite article are often used for possessive pronouns of the first, second, or third person, either singular or plural, as suggested by the context, *i.e. my, your, his, her, our, their.* In this VOCABULARY, placed after a noun, **ὁ, ἡ,** and **τό** indicate its gender. **ὁ δέ**: *and he, but he;* **ἡ δέ**: *and she, but she,* indicating a change of subject from the preceding sentence. **ὁ** may mean *he,* and **ἡ** *she,* but only with **μέν** (which see) and **δέ**. §§ 48, 49, 67–70, 89, 93, 143, 281 (footnote 1), 307, 427, 632. II, VI.

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, dem. pron.: *this,* often with reference to what is to follow; **τάδε**: *these things* as follows (§ 175). §§ 173, 176, 307. XV.

ὁδός, οῦ, ἡ: *way, road.* § 115. IX.

ὅθεν, rel. adv.: *whence, from which place, from what source.* LI.

οἶδα (2 pf. with pres. meaning), **ᾔδη** (2 plup.) or **ᾔδειν, εἴσομαι** (fut.): *know.* § 655. With partic. or **ὅτι** clause, § 669. LX.

οἴκαδε, adv. (cp. **οἰκῖᾱ**): *homeward, home.* XXII.

οἰκέω (cp. **οἰκῖᾱ**), **οἰκήσω, ᾤκησα, ᾤκηκα, ᾤκημαι, ᾠκήθην**: *dwell, inhabit;* **πόλις οἰκουμένη**: *an inhabited city.* The pass. partic. may sometimes be translated *be situated.*

οἰκῖᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *house.* XIII.

οἶμαι: see **οἴομαι.**

οἶνος, ου, ὁ: *wine.* § 60. III.

οἴομαι (often **οἶμαι**), **οἰήσομαι** (with lengthened theme), **ᾠήθην** (§ 389), dep. pass.. *think, suppose.* XXXVIII.

οἷος, ᾱ, ον, rel. pron.: *of what sort, what sort of,* (*such*) *as;* **οἷός τε**: *able;* **οἷόν τ' ἐστίν**: *it is possible.* Lat. *quālis.* LIV.

οἴσω: see **φέρω.**

οἴχομαι, οἰχήσομαι (with lengthened theme): *be gone, have gone* (pres. with pf. meaning). Often with supplementary partic.; cp. § 215. XXX.

ὀκτα-κόσιοι, αι, α: *eight hundred.* § 421.

ὀκτώ, indecl.: *eight.* Lat. *octō.* XXXIX.

ὀλίγος, η, ον: *little, few.* Comp. **ἐλάττων,** sup. **ἐλάχιστος,** § 360. 6. XXXVI.

ὅλος, η, ον: *whole, entire, all.* XVII.

ὁμαλῶς: *evenly, with even step.*

ὄμ-νῡ-μι (and **ὀμ-νύω,** themes **ὀμ-, ὀμο-**), **ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα** (§ 447), **ὀμώμο(σ)μαι, ὠμό(σ)θην**: *swear, promise with an oath, take oath.* LIX.

ὁμο-τράπεζος, ον: sitting *at the same table.* As subst. masc. *table companion.*

ὅμως, adv.. *nevertheless.*

ὄνομα, ατος, τό: *name.* XXXVII.

ὄνος, ου, ὁ: *ass.* Lat. *asinus.* LVI.

ὅπῃ, rel. adv.: *where, wherever; how, in what way.* Cp. **πῃ.** XL.

ὄπισθεν, adv.: *behind.*

ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ: *one who guards the rear;* **οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες**: *the rear guard.*

ὁπλίζω, ὥπλισα, ὥπλισμαι, ὡπλίσθην (**ὅπλον**): *arm;* MID. *arm oneself.*

ὁπλίτης, ου, ὁ (**ὅπλον**): a heavy-armed soldier, *hoplite.* See p. 139, Fig. 18. XII.

ὅπλον, ου, τό: *implement;* commonly pl. **ὅπλα, τά**: *arms* of war. See p. 28, Fig. 1; p. 139, Fig. 18. II.

ὅποι, rel. adv.: *whithersoever, whither, where.* § 343. XXIII.

ὁποῖος, ᾱ, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: *of what sort, what sort of.* XLVII.

ὁπόσος, η, ον, indef. rel. pron. and indir. interr.: *as many as, how great,* (pl.) *how many.* Cp. **ὅσος.** XLII.

ὁπότε, rel. adv.: *when, whenever, as often as; since.* Cp. **ὅτε.** XLII.

ὅπου, rel. adv.: *wherever, where.* § 343. XXIII.

ὅπως, (1) conj.: *in order that, that,* with purpose clause (§§ 243, 268); *how,* with object clause (§ 535). (2) rel. adv.: *how, in what way.* XXII, XXXIX, LIV.

ὁράω (impf. **ἑώρων**), **ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑώρᾱκα** or **ἑόρᾱκα, ἑώρᾱμαι** or **ὦμμαι, ὤφθην**: *see, behold.* With acc. and partic. (rarely with **ὅτι** clause). §§ 440, 441, 520. LII.

ὀρθιος, ᾱ, ον: *steep.* IX.

ὅρκος, ου, ὁ: *oath.* IX.

ὁρμάω, ὁρμήσω, ὥρμησα, ὥρμηκα, ὥρμημαι, ὡρμήθην: *start, hasten;* MID. *set out.*

ὄρνῑς, ῑθος, ὁ and **ἡ**: *bird.* Acc. sing. both **ὄρνῑν** (§ 197) and **ὄρνῑθα.** XVIII.

Ὀρόντᾱς, ᾱ (Doric gen., for **ου**), **ὁ**: *Orontas,* a Persian. XXXI.

ὄρος, ους, τό: *mountain.* § 272. XXVI.

ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, rel. pron.: *who, which, that.* §§ 125, 135, 285. X.

ὅσος, η, ον, rel. pron.. *as great as, as much as, as many as, all that, as* (*many*); *how great, how much, how many;* **ὅσον**, adv. acc.. *as far as;* with numerals, *about* (§ 444). XXXVII.

ὅσ-περ, ἥ-περ, ὅ-περ (strengthened **ὅς**): *the very one which, the very thing which.* XXIX.

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι (or **ὅ,τι**): indef. rel. pron.: *whoever* or *whichever, whatever; who, which, what;* often with conditional force, *if anybody* (= **εἴ τις**), *if anything* (= **εἴ τι**); **ἔστιν ὅστις**: there is who, *somebody.* §§ 228, 343. XXI.

ὅταν = **ὅτε** + **ἄν** (§ 248. 2. *a*), conj. with subjv.: *when, whenever* (§ 400). XXIX.

ὅτε, rel. adv.: *when, at the time when,* commonly with impf. indic.; *whenever,* with opt. (§ 417). XVIII.

ὅτι, conj.: *that,* introducing a quotation (§ 260); *because, since* (§ 310). As adv., like **ὡς,** strengthens a superlative. Thus **ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατος**: *as unprepared as possible.* XXIV, XXXVII.

ὅ τι or **ὅ,τι**: neut. of **ὅστις.**

ὅτου: see **ὅστις.**

ὅτῳ: see **ὅστις.**

οὗ, dat. **οἷ**, pl. **σφεῖς**, indirect reflexive of the third person: *of himself, to himself,* etc. § 378 and *a.* XXXVIII.

οὐ, proclitic neg. adv.: *not;* before a vowel with smooth breathing, written **οὐκ**; before a rough breathing, **οὐχ**. At the end of a sentence, **οὔ**. VI. **οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ**, used in interrogative sentence: *not;* expects the answer *yes*. Cp. Lat. *nōnne*. VII.

οὐδέ (**οὐ** + **δέ**): *nor, not even;* Lat. *nĕ . . . quidem*. § 428. VIII.

οὐδ-είς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν (**οὐδέ** + **εἷς**): *nobody, no one, no, nothing*. § 426. **οὐδέν**: *in no respect, not at all* (cp. § 284). XLIII.

οὐκ-έτι, adv.: *no longer, no more*. XVII.

οὖν, postpositive particle: *therefore, accordingly, at any rate*. XIV.

οὖ-περ (strengthened **οὗ**): *just where, the very place where*.

οὔ-ποτε, adv.. *never*. XXV.

οὔ-πω, adv.: *not yet, never yet*. XXXV.

οὔτε . . . οὔτε (**οὐ** + **τε**): *neither . . . nor*. VIII.

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, dem. pron.: *this, this man, he*, etc.; **ταῦτα**: *these things, this* (§ 177); **ἐκ τούτου**: *thereupon* (§ 588). §§ 171, 172, 175, 176, 307. XV.

οὕτω(s), adv. (**οὗτος**): *thus, in this way* (usually with reference to what goes before), *so;* **οὕτως ἔχειν**: see **ἔχω**. XXXVII.

ὀφθαλμός, οῦ, ὁ: *eye*. **Ophthalmia.**

ὄχλος, ου, ὁ: *crowd, throng; annoyance, bother*. XXXV.

ὄψεσθαι: see **ὁράω**.

Π

παγ-κράτιον, ου, τό (**πᾶς** and **κράτος**): *the pancratium*, an athletic contest composed of both boxing and wrestling.

πάθω: 2 aor. subjv. of **πάσχω**.

παιᾱνίζω, ἐπαιᾱνισα: *sing the paean* or war song.

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ and **ἡ**: *child, boy, girl;* **ἐκ παίδων**: *from boyhood* (§ 203). The gen. (and dat.) dual is exceptionally accented **παίδοιν**, and the gen. pl. **παίδων**. The voc. sing. is **παῖ**. XVIII.

παίω, παίσω, ἔπαισα, πέπαικα, ἐπαίσθην (**σ** is irregularly inserted): *strike, smite*. XII.

παλαίω(**πάλη**), **ἐπάλαισα, ἐπαλαίσθην** (**σ** is irregularly inserted): *wrestle*.

πάλη, ης, ἡ: *wrestling*.

πάλιν, adv.. *back, again*. X.

παλτόν, οῦ, τό: *javelin*, used by barbarians; the Greek hoplite's spear was called **δόρυ**. V.

πάντῃ, adv. (cp. **πᾶς**): *on all sides*.

πάνυ, adv. (cp. **πᾶς**): *wholly, altogether, very*. XXXIX.

παρά, prep.: with GEN. *from* the side of; with DAT. *by* the side of, after verbs of rest; with ACC. *to* the side of, after verbs of motion; *along; contrary to*. IX.

παρ-αγγέλλω: *give directions to, direct, command*, with dat. of pers. or acc. of pers. and inf. LV.

παρα-γίγνομαι: *come* (*to*), *be at hand, be present*. Cp. **πάρ-ειμι**. XXXII.

παρα-δίδωμι: *give over, surrender; pass along* (a watch word: **σύνθημα**). LVIII.

παραμηρίδιον, ου, τό: *protection for the thigh;* pl. *thigh pieces, cuisses*.

παρασάγγης, ου, ὁ: *parasang*, a Persian measure of distance, about 3.3 English miles. Cp. our *league* (3 miles). XV.

παρα-σκευάζω (**σκευάζω**, theme **σκευαδ-**, *prepare*, **σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, ἐσκευάσθην**): *prepare, equip;* MID. *make oneself ready, prepare oneself;* also *prepare* for oneself. §§ 315. I, II, 467. *a*. XXX.

πάρ-ειμι (εἰμί): *be by, be at hand, be present; attend*, with dat. X.

παρ-ελαύνω: *drive past, drive by, march past, ride past.* XI.

παρ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. **παρ-ῆλθον**: *go by, go past.* XLII.

παρ-έχω: *hold beside, furnish, provide, supply; cause* (§§ 405, 502). XIII.

πάροδος, ου, ἡ (**παρά** + **ὁδός**): *road by* or *past, passage, pass.* IX.

Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ: *Parysatis*, wife of Darius II, king of Persia, and mother of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger. XXXI.

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: *every* (in sing.), *all, whole.* §§ 289, 293. XXVIII.

Πᾶσίων, ωνος, ὁ: *Pasion*, a Greek general (from Megara) employed by Cyrus. XLIII.

πάσχω (themes **παθ-, πενθ-, πονθ-**), **πείσομαι** (for **πενθ-σομαι**), **ἔπαθον, πέπονθα** (§ 445): *suffer;* **πάσχω τι** (§ 181); *suffer something*, euphemism for *be hurt* or *be killed;* **κακῶς πάσχειν**: *to be injured;* **εὖ πάσχειν**: *to be treated kindly* (§ 537). XXII.

Πατηγύᾱς, ᾱ (Doric gen., for Attic **ου**), **ὁ**: *Pategyas*, a Persian companion of Cyrus.

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ: *father.* Lat. *pater.* § 321. XXXI.

πατρίς, ίδος, ἡ (cp. **πατήρ**): *fatherland.* XXIX.

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύθην: *make to stop, stop* (trans.), *put an end to;* MID. *stop oneself, cease.* § 439. XXVI, XXXII.

παχύς, εῖα, ύ: *thick* in diameter. XXVIII.

πεδίον, ου, τό: *plain.* § 49. II.

πεζός, ή, όν: *afoot, on foot;* **οἱ πεζοί**: *the infantry.* VII.

πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα (§ 164), **πέπεικα** (§ 432. *f*) and **πέποιθα** (§ 445 and *a*), **πέπεισμαι** (§ 467), **ἐπείσθην** (§ 387. 2): *persuade;* MID. and PASS. *obey*, with dat. § 487. I, XXXIX.

πειράομαι, πειρᾱ́σομαι, ἐπειρᾱσάμην, πεπείρᾱμαι, and **ἐπειρᾱ́θην**: *try, attempt.* § 518. *a.* LII.

πείσομαι: either (1) fut. of **πάσχω**, *suffer* (Vocab. XXII) or (2) fut. mid. of **πείθω** (Vocab. I) in mid. meaning *obey* (with dat.). XXXII.

πειστέον (verbal adj. of **πείθομαι**), impers.: *one must obey*, with dat. § 477. 2. XLVIII.

πελάζω, πελάσω and **πελῶ, ἐπέλασα, ἐπελάσθην**: *approach.*

πελταστής, οῦ, ὁ: a light-armed soldier, *peltast.* See. p. 67, Fig. 4; p. 117, Fig. 14. § 146. XII.

πέμπτος, η, ον (**πέντε**): *fifth.*

πέμπω (themes **πεμπ-, πομπ-**), **πέμψω** (§ 153), **ἔπεμψα** (§ 164), **πέπομφα** (§§ 445, 488), **πέπεμμαι** (§ 465. *b*), **ἐπέμφθην** (§ 387. 1): *send.* § 487. I.

πεντακόσιοι, αι, α (**πέντε**): *five hundred.* XIX.

πέντε, indecl.: *five.* XIII.

πεντε-καί-δεκα, indecl.. *five and ten, fifteen.* XXVII.

πέρᾱν, adv.: *across, on the other side*, with gen.; **ἐν τῷ πέρᾱν**: *on the other side* or *bank.* XXIII.

περί (like **πρό**, never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep.: with GEN. *about, concerning, for*, as a prize; with DAT. (not common in prose) *around, about;* with ACC. *around, about, near, in relation to.* XI.

περι-βάλλω: *throw around, throw* one's arms *around, embrace.*

Πέρσης, ου, ὁ: a *Persian.* Voc. **Πέρσα.** XXIV.

Περσικός, ή, όν (**Πέρσης**): *Persian.* XXIV.

πῃ, enclitic adv.: *anywhere.* XVII.

πηγή, ῆς, ἡ: *spring* of water; generally pl.: *source.* XXXII.

πῆχυς, εως, ὁ: *forearm, cubit,* 1½ Greek feet. § 282. XXVII.

Πίγρης, ητος, ὁ: *Pigres,* interpreter of Cyrus.

πίπτω (themes **πετ-, πτ-,** and **πτω-**), **πεσοῦμαι** (for **πετέομαι**), **ἔπεσον** (for **ἔπετον**), **πέπτωκα**: *fall.* See **κατα-πίπτω.**

Πῐσίδαι, ῶν, οἱ: *Pisidians,* natives of Pisidia. XII.

πιστός, ή, όν (cp. **πείθω**): *trustworthy, faithful;* **πιστά, ῶν, τά,** neut. pl. subst.: *pledges.* Comp. **πιστότερος,** sup. **πιστότατος,** § 351. *a.* VIII.

πλέθρον, ου, τό: *plethrum,* 100 Greek feet. XXVII.

πλεῖστος: see **πολύς.**

πλείων: see **πολύς.**

πλέω, πλεύσομαι (also **πλευσοῦμαι,** contracted from **πλευ-σέ-ο-μαι**), **ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι** (**σ** is irregularly inserted): *sail.* § 508. LI.

πλῆθος, ους, τό: *crowd, throng, host, multitude.* LIII.

πλήθω (cp. **πλῆθος**): *be full;* **ἀμφὶ ἀγορᾶν πλήθουσαν**: *about the time of full market, i.e.* the middle of the forenoon.

πλήν, adv. and conj.: *except, except that;* prep. with gen.: *except.*

πλήρης, ες: *full.* Cp. Lat. *plē-nus.* XXVII.

πλησίον, adv.: *near.*

πλοῖον, ου, τό (**πλέω**): *boat.* See p. 36, Fig. 3. § 60. III.

πλοῦς, οῦ, ὁ (cp. **πλέω**): *voyage; a sailing, sailing weather.* L.

ποδ-ήρης, ες: *reaching to the feet.*

πόθος, ου, ὁ: *desire,* with gen.

ποῖ, interr. adv.: *whither, where?* LVII.

ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην: *do, make.* The mid. is translated like the act., but implies *in* or *for one's own interest;* **κακῶς ποιεῖν**: *do harm to, injure,* with acc. (§ 537). §§ 509, 622, 643. LI.

ποιητέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **ποιέω,** with **ἐστί** or **εἰσί** expressed or understood): *necessary to be done, must be done.* LIV.

ποιῶν, pres. act. partic. of **ποιέω**: *making.* Declined in § 622.

πολεμέω (**πόλεμος**), **πολεμήσω, ἐπολέμησα, πεπολέμηκα, πεπολέμημαι, ἐπολεμήθην**: *wage war, make war on,* with dat. (§ 317), or **πρός** and acc. LII.

πολεμικός, ή, όν (**πόλεμος**): *suited to war, warlike; hostile.* LI.

πολέμιος, ᾱ, ον (**πόλεμος**): *of war, hostile;* **οἱ πολέμιοι** (subst. adj.): *the enemy.* Comp. **πολεμιώτερος** (§ 540. I. 11). § 117. IX.

πόλεμος, ου, ὁ: *war.* XXXVII.

πόλις, εως, ἡ: *city.* § 282. XXVII.

πολλάκις, adv. (**πολύς**): *often.* XLII.

πολύ, adv. (cp. **πολύς**): *much, by far.* § 410. *a.* XXXVII.

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: *much, many; extensive, large; loud* (of noise), § 337. 2; **οἱ πολλοί**: *the many, the most;* **τὸ πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος**: *the most of the army;* **ἐπὶ πολύ**: *over* or *for a long distance.* Comp. **πλείων** or **πλέων,** sup. **πλεῖστος,** § 360. 7. **πλεῖστοι**: *very many* (§ 533); **οἱ πλεῖστοι**: *the most.* XXXIII, XXXVI.

πόντος, ου, ὁ: *sea;* **ὁ Εὔξεινος Πόντος**: *the Euxine* or *Black Sea.*

πορεῖᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *journey.*

πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, πεπόρευμαι, ἐπορεύθην (§ 389), dep. pass.: *go, proceed, travel.* Cp. **ἄπορος.** XXX.

πορευτέος, ᾱ, ον (verbal adj. of **πορεύομαι**): necessary *to be passed over, to be traversed;* neut. impers. *one must proceed.* § 477. 2. XLVIII.

ποταμός, οῦ, ὁ: *river.* § 56. III.

ποτέ, enclitic adv. of time: *ever, at any time, at some time, once* on a time. L.

πότερον (πότερα) . . . ἤ, introducing a double question, direct or indirect: *whether . . . or.* § 362. XXXVI.

ποτόν, οῦ, τό: *drink.* XLVII.

που, indef. adv., enclitic: *somewhere, anywhere.* XLVII.

πούς, ποδός, ὁ: *foot.* Also the Greek unit of length. Lat. *pēs.* §§ 195, 196, 198. XVIII.

πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό (πρᾱ́ττω): something done, *business, deed, matter, difficulty;* pl. sometimes *circumstances,* often *trouble.* XXII.

πρᾱ́ττω (theme **πρᾱγ-**, § 218), **πρᾱ́ξω, ἔπρᾱξα, πέπρᾱγα** and **πέπρᾱχα, πέπρᾱγμαι** (§ 466. *a*), **ἐπρᾱ́χθην** (§ 387. 1): *accomplish, effect, do; fare* (§§ 375, 538). XIX.

πρέσβεις, εων, οἱ: *ambassadors.* The nom. sing. is **πρεσβευτής, οῦ, ὁ.** XXVII.

[**πρέσβυς**, poetic], comp. **πρεσβύτερος** *older,* sup. **πρεσβύτατος** *oldest,* § 351. *c.* Cp. pl. **πρέσβεις.** XXXV.

πρίασθαι: see **ἐπριάμην.**

πρίν, temporal conj.: *before, until;* **πρόσθεν** (Vocab. XXVI) . . . **πρίν** = Lat. *prius . . . quam: earlier than, before.* §§ 523, 524. LII.

πρό (like **περί**, never suffers elision of the final vowel), prep. with gen. only: *before, in front of.* Lat. *prō.* XVII.

πρόβατον, ου, τό: *cattle, sheep.* XXXVI.

προ-δίδωμι: *betray.*

πρό-ειμι (εἶμι): *go forward, advance.*

προ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. **προ-ῆλθον**, 2 pf. **προ-ελήλυθα** (§ 447): *go before, go forward, proceed.* XLV.

προθῡ́μως (adv. of **πρόθῡμος** *ready, eager*): *readily, eagerly, zealously.* Comp. **προθῡμότερον**, sup. **προθῡμότατα.** XXXVII.

προ-θῡ́ω: *sacrifice before;* MID. *offer a preliminary sacrifice* to ascertain something for one's own interest.

προ-ίδοιεν: 2 aor. opt. of **προ-οράω.**

προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: *seize* or *occupy beforehand.* XLVII.

Πρόξενος, ου, ὁ: *Proxenus,* a Theban general employed by Cyrus. XIV.

προ-οράω, 2 aor. **προ-εῖδον**: *see in front* of oneself, *see approaching.*

προ-πέμπω: *send forward* or *ahead.* XXX.

πρός, prep.: with GEN. *from the side of, from, toward;* **πρὸς (τῶν) θεῶν**: *before the gods, in the sight of the gods;* with DAT. *near, beside, in addition to;* with ACC. *to, toward, against; with reference to* (§ 335). II, XXIX.

προσ-ανᾱλίσκω (ἀνᾱλίσκω *spend,* **ἀνᾱλώσω, ἀνήλωσα, ἀνήλωκα, ἀνήλωμαι, ἀνηλώθην**): *spend besides, spend in addition.*

πρόσ-ειμι (εἶμι): *come on, advance.*

προσ-ελαύνω: *drive up, ride up, draw near.* XX.

προσ-έρχομαι: *go to, come to, come up,* sometimes with dat. of pers. or with **εἰς** and acc. XXXVI.

προσ-έχω, with **τὸν νοῦν**: *direct the mind to,* with dat. L.

προσ-ήκω: *come to, reach to, pertain to;* pres. partic. *related,* with dat. XXXI.

πρόσθεν, adv. (cp. **πρός**): *forward* (of space): *before, former* (of time); **ἡ πρόσθεν** (§ 70) **νύξ**: *the night before*; **ὁ πρόσθεν λόγος**: *the previous account* (§ 533). XXVI. **τὸ πρόσθεν** (adv. acc.): *before, formerly*; **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**: *to the front* (§ 319). XXXVII.

προσ-κυνέω, προσ-κυνήσω, προσ-εκύνησα: *do homage to, salute.*

προ-στατέω, προ-εστάτησα: *stand before, manage*, with gen.

πρότερος, ᾱ, ον: *former, earlier* (§ 361). XXXVI.

προυδεδώκεσαν: contracted from **προ-εδεδώκεσαν**, plup. of **προ-δίδωμι**.

προ-φαίνω: *show forth*; MID. *appear.*

πρῶτος, η, ον: *first* (§ 361); **οἱ πρῶτοι**: *the van* (§ 375); adv. **πρῶτον**: *first* (§ 284). XXIII.

πυγμή, ῆς, ἡ: *boxing.*

πυκνός, ή, όν: *closely set, closely standing, closely planted.* XXVIII.

πύλη, ης, ἡ: *gate.* XLVI.

πυνθάνομαι (themes **πευθ-, πυθ-**, cp. § 218), **πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι**: *inquire, ask; learn, perceive.* §§ 441, 442. XXXIX.

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: *fire*; **πυρά, τά**: *watch fires.* § 336. 3. XXXIII.

πώ-ποτε, adv. of time: *ever yet, ever.* LI.

πῶς, interr. adv.: *how, in what way?* LI.

P

ῥᾴδιος, ᾱ, ον: *easy.* Comp. **ῥᾴων**, sup. **ῥᾷστος**, § 360. 8. XXXII.

Σ

σάλπιγξ, γγος, ἡ: *trumpet.* See p. 90, Fig. 8. XVII.

Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ: *Sardis*, a city in Lydia. XXVII.

σατράπης, ου, ὁ: *satrap*, Persian name for a provincial governor appointed by the king. XXIV.

σαυτοῦ, ῆς (contracted from **σεαυτοῦ, ῆς**), reflexive pron. of second person: *of yourself*, etc. §§ 376. 2, 379. XXXVIII.

σεαυτοῦ, ῆς, reflexive pron. of second person: *of yourself*, etc. §§ 376. 2, 379. XXXVIII.

Σιλᾱνός, οῦ, ὁ: *Silānus*, a soothsayer.

σῖτίον, ου, τό (dim. of **σῖτος**): *grain, food.* XLVII.

σῖτος, ου, ὁ: *grain, food*; in the pl. the declension irregularly changes to neut. **σῖτα, τά**. IV.

σκεπτέον (verbal adj. of **σκέπτομαι**), impers.: *it must be considered, one must consider*, with **ὅπως** clause (§ 535). § 477. 2. XLVIII.

σκέπτομαι, σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι, dep. mid.. *view, observe, consider.* The pres. and **impf.** are rare in Attic. XXXIV.

σκηνή, ῆς, ἡ: *tent.* VI.

σκηνόω (σκηνή), ἐσκήνωσα, (κατ-) ἐσκήνωκα: *stay in a tent, camp.* LIII.

σκληρός, ᾱ́, όν: *hard, rough*; **ἐν σκληρῷ**: *in a rough place.*

σκότος, ους, τό: *darkness.* Also **ὁ σκότος**, gen. **ου**. XXVIII.

σός, σή, σόν (cp. **σοῦ**, gen. of **σύ**): *thy, your* (sing.), *yours.* § 126. X.

Σοφαίνετος, ου, ὁ: *Sophaenetus*, a Greek general, from Stymphālus in Arcadia, employed by Cyrus. XLIII.

σπάνις, εως, ἡ: *scarcity, want*, with gen.

Σπαρτιᾱ́της, ου, ὁ (Σπάρτη *Sparta*): *a Spartan.*

σπεύδω (theme **σπευδ-**), **σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα**: *urge on, hasten.* XLII.

σπονδή, ῆς, ἡ: *libation*; pl. *truce.* IX.

σπουδή, ῆς, ἡ (σπεύδω): *haste,*

στάδιον, ου, τό: *stadium* (race course): then a measure of distance, *stade*, 600 Greek feet. Pl. both **στάδιοι, οἱ**, and **στάδια, τά**. See p. 95, Fig. 9. XVII.

σταθμός, οῦ, ὁ: *day's journey, stage; halting place* (first meaning, but less common). XI.

στενός, ή, όν: *narrow*. IX.

στέρνον, ου, τό: *breast*.

στῖφος, ους, τό: *crowd*.

στόλος, ου, ὁ: *expedition*. IX.

στρατεῖᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (στρατεύω): *expedition*. LI.

στράτευμα, ατος, τό (cp. **στρατιᾱ́**): *army*. §§ 195, 199. XVIII.

στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα, ἐστράτευκα (§ 432. *c*), **ἐστράτευμαι**: *make an expedition*; dep. MID. *take the field, serve in war*. Cp. **στράτευ-μα**, etc. XXXI.

στρατηγός, οῦ, ὁ: *general*. III.

στρατιᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ: *army*. § 114. IX.

στρατιώτης, ου, ὁ (στρατιᾱ́, etc.): *soldier*. § 146. XII.

στρατοπεδεύω (στρατόπεδον) and dep. mid. **στρατοπεδεύομαι, ἐστρατοπεδευσάμην, ἐστρατοπέδευμαι** (§ 456): *encamp*. XL.

στρατό-πεδον, ου, τό: *camp*. Cp. **στράτευμα**. XXIX.

στρέφω (themes **στρεφ-, στραφ-**), **στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι** (§ 490), **ἐστράφην** (§ 489): *turn; wheel about*. §§ 409, 487. XLI.

σύ, σοῦ: *you* (sing.), §§ 304, 306, 308. XXIX.

συγ-καλέω (σύν + καλέω): *call together*. LV.

Συέννεσις, ιος (non-Attic gen.), **ὁ**: *Syennesis*, king of Cilicia. XXXVIII.

συλ-λαμβάνω: *take together, seize, arrest*. Cp. Lat. *comprehendō*. § 465. *a*. X.

συλ-λέγω, συλ-λέξω, συν-έλεξα, συν-είλοχα (§ 448), **συν-είλεγμαι, συν-ελέχθην** and **συν-ελέγην** (§ 409): *gather together, collect*. This **-λέγω** is a different verb from **λέγω** *say*. §§ 415, 487. XIV.

συμ-βουλεύω (σύν + βουλεύω): *plan with, advise*, with dat.; MID. *consult* (§ 514), with dat. XIV.

σύμ-μαχος, ου, ὁ (μάχη): *fellow-fighter, ally*. XXVIII.

σύμ-πᾶς, ᾶσα, αν (σύν + πᾶς): *all together, all, whole*. XLIII.

συμ-πέμπω (σύν + πέμπω): *send* a person (in acc.) *with* a person (in dat.). X.

συμ-πορεύομαι: *proceed with, accompany*. XXXVII.

σύν, prep. with dat. only: *with, with the aid of*. III.

συν-άγω: *lead together, collect*. XII.

συν-αντάω, συνήντησα: *meet*.

συν-ειλημμένος: see **συλ-λαμβάνω**.

συν-είλοχα: see **συλ-λέγω**.

συν-έλαβον: see **συλ-λαμβάνω**.

συν-έρχομαι, 2 aor. **συν-ῆλθον**: *go* or *come together, assemble*. XLIII.

σύνθημα, ατος, τό (συν-τίθημι): *agreement; watchword*. XXIX.

συν-τάττω: *draw up together, form in line*; MID. *form in line* (intr.).

συν-τίθημι: *place* or *set together*; MID. place oneself in agreement with somebody, *agree* with somebody (dat.), *make a compact*. May be followed by inf. of indir. disc. LVII.

Συρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Syria*. XIX.

συ-σκευάζω (σύν + σκευάζω, theme **σκευαδ-**, *prepare*, **σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, ἐσκευάσθην**): *make ready* (by getting things together, **συν-**), *pack up*, with acc.; MID. *pack up* one's own baggage, *pack up*. XXXIV.

συ-σπειράομαι, συν-εσπείρᾱμαι, συν-εσπειρᾱ́θην: *be coiled up together, be drawn up in close array.*

συ-στρατεύω (**σύν** + **στρατεύω**), usually dep. MID. **συ-στρατεύομαι**: *take the field with, serve in war with,* with dat. XXXI.

συχνός, ή, όν: *considerable, much.*

σφάγιον, ου, τό: victim for a propitiatory sacrifice; **τὰ σφάγια**: *the omens from the propitiatory sacrifices* (a special offering).

σφενδόνη, ης, ἡ: *sling.* See p. 112, Fig. 13. XXI.

σχεδόν, adv.: *nearly; chiefly.*

σῴζω (themes **σῳδ-** and **σω-**), **σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σέσω(σ)μαι, ἐσώθην**: *save;* MID. *save oneself.* XXX.

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ: *Socrates,* (1) the Achaean, a general employed by Cyrus; to be distinguished from (2) the famous philosopher of Athens. § 273. XXVI.

σωτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ (**σῴζω**): *savior.*

σωτηρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**σωτήρ**): *safety.* XX.

σωτήριος, ᾱ, ον (**σωτήρ**): *bringing safety, salutary.* Neut. pl. **σωτήρια** (supply **ἱερά**): *thank-offerings for safety.*

T

τ': see **τε**.

τὰ μέν . . . τὰ δέ (cp. **ὁ, ἡ, τό**): *some . . . others.*

τάλαντον, ου, τό: *talent,* an amount of money = about $1080. XXIII.

τάξις, εως, ἡ (**τάττω**): *order, arrangement;* military *line, column, division;* **ἐν τάξει**: *in line.* XXXVIII.

τάραχος, ου, ὁ (**ταράττω** *stir up*): *disturbance, confusion.*

Ταρσοί, ῶν, οἱ: *Tarsus,* the chief city of Cilicia. XXXIII.

τάττω (theme **ταγ-**, cp. § 182, NOTE), **τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαι** (§ 466), **ἐτάχθην**: *arrange, draw up, marshal* troops. XXXVIII.

ταῦτα: neut. pl. of **οὗτος**.

τάφρος, ου, ἡ: *ditch.* IX.

τάχα or **ταχέως**, adv.: *swiftly, quickly, rapidly* = **ταχύ**. Comp. **θᾶττον**, sup. **τάχιστα**, § 368. **ὡς** (or **ὅτι**) **τάχιστα**: *as quickly as possible* (§ 373); **ἐπειδὴ** (or **ἐπειδάν**) **τάχιστα**: *as soon as* (§ 533). XXV.

τάχιστος: see **ταχύς**.

ταχύ, adv.: *quickly,* § 367. XXII.

ταχύς, εῖα, ύ: *swift, quick.* Comp. **θᾶττων**, sup. **τάχιστος**, § 352. *a.* **τὴν ταχίστην** [**ὁδόν**]: *by the quickest way* (§ 356). XXXV.

τε, enclitic conj.: *and;* **τε . . . καί**: *both . . . and.* VII.

τέθνηκα (§ 432. *b, d*): see **θνῄσκω** and **ἀπο-θνῄσκω**. XLIV.

τεῖχος, ους, τό: *wall; fortress.* XXVI.

τέκνον, ου, τό: *child.* XLII.

τελευτάω (**τελευτή** *end*), **τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα, ἐτελευτήθην**: *end, finish, die.* LIII.

τέλος, ους, τό: *end.* As adv. acc.: *finally* (§ 284). XXVII.

τετρακισχίλιοι, αι, α: *four thousand.* § 421.

τέτταρες, α: *four.* §§ 421, 425.

Τίγρης, ητος, ὁ: *Tigris,* a great river of western Asia. L.

τιθείς, pres. act. partic. of **τίθημι**: *placing.* Declined in § 620.

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα and **ἔθετον, τέθηκα, ἐτέθην**: *put, set.* The pf. pass. is supplied by **κεῖμαι**. **τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: *set down one's arms, rest one's arms* on the ground; therefore (1) *take a military position, take one's post;* (2) *halt.* §§ 559, 560. 620, 646. LVII.

τῑμάω (τῑμή), τῑμήσω, ἐτίμησα, τετίμηκα, τετίμημαι, ἐτῑμήθην: *honor.* §§ 518, 622, 643. LII.

τῑμή, ῆς, ἡ: *honor.* XXXIX.

τῑμῶν, pres. act. partic. of **τῑμάω**: *honoring.* Declined in § 622.

τίς, τί, interr. pron.: *who? which? what?* **τί**: *what?* often as adv: *why?* (§ 284). §§ 226, 343. XXI.

τις, τι, enclitic indef. pron.: *any, some, anybody, somebody, anything, something; a certain.* § 227. XXI.

Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ: *Tissaphernes*, a Persian satrap. § 273. *b.* XXVI.

τιτρώσκω (theme **τρω-**, reduplicated in pres. **τι-τρω**, and with the pres. suffix **σκ**/ε), **τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην**: *wound.* XLVI.

τό: see **ὁ; τὸ καθ' αὑτούς**: *the division opposite themselves* (§ 526). II.

τοι-γαρ-οῦν, strong particle of inference: *therefore.* XXXIX.

τοίνυν, inferential particle, post-positive: *therefore, then.* LIII.

τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο (declined like **οὗτος**, § 171), dem. pron.: *of such a sort, such*, often understood or expressed as antecedent of **οἷος. τοιοῦτος οἷος**: *such as.* The neut. is also **τοιοῦτον** as well as **τοιοῦτο.** Cp. Lat. *tālis.* LIV.

τόξευμα, ατος, τό (τοξεύω): *arrow.* XVIII.

τοξεύω, τοξεύσομαι, ἐτόξευσα, τετόξευμαι, ἐτοξεύθην: *shoot* with bow (**τόξον**) and arrow. XLVI.

τόξον, ου, τό: *bow.* XXXIII.

τοξότης, ου, ὁ (τόξον): *bowman.* See p. 68, Fig. 5. § 146. XII.

τόπος, ου, ὁ: *place.* L.

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο (declined like **οὗτος**, § 171), dem. pron.: *so much, so great, so many;* often followed by correlative word like **ὅσος** *as.* The neut. is also **τοσοῦτον** as well as **τοσοῦτο.** Cp. Lat. *tantus.* XLV.

τότε, adv. of time: *then, at that time.* XXIV.

Τραπεζούντιος, ᾱ, ον (Τραπεζοῦς): *Trapezuntian.* Subst. nom. pl. *the Trapezuntians.*

Τραπεζοῦς, οῦντος, ἡ: *Trapezus*, a Greek city on the Euxine Sea, modern Trebizond.

τρεῖς, τρία: *three.* §§ 421, 424. Cp. Lat. *trēs.*

τρέπω (themes **τροπ-, τρεπ-, τραπ-**), **τρέψω, ἔτρεψα** and **ἔτραπον, τέτροφα** and **τέτραφα, τέτραμμαι** (§ 490), **ἐτρέφθην** and **ἐτράπην** (§§ 409, 489): *turn;* **τρέπω εἰς φυγήν**: *put to flight.* There are two aorists in the mid. voice also: **ἐτρεψάμην** and **ἐτραπόμην.** XIV.

τρέφω (themes **τροφ-, τρεφ-, τραφ-**, for **θροφ-**, etc.), **θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι** (§ 490), **ἐτράφην** (§ 409): *feed, support, rear.* XLI.

τρέχω, fut. **δραμοῦμαι**, 2 aor. **ἔδραμον** (XI), pf. **δεδράμηκα**, mid. **δεδράμημαι**: *run.* XXIII.

τριᾰ́κοντα, indecl. **(τρεῖς)**: *thirty.* § 421.

τριᾱκόσιοι, αι, α: *three hundred.* § 421.

τριήρης, ους, ἡ: *trireme.* See p. 125, Fig. 15; p. 132, Fig. 16. § 274. XXVI.

τρισ-χίλιοι, αι, α: *three thousand.* § 421.

τρίτος, η, ον (τρεῖς): *third;* **τῇ τρίτῃ [ἡμέρᾳ]**: *on the third day.*

τροπή, ῆς, ἡ (τρέπω): *rout.*

τρόπος, ου, ὁ (τρέπω): *turn, manner, method, character.* LI.

τρω-τός, ή, όν (verbal adj. of **τιτρώσκω**): *able to be wounded, vulnerable.* XLVIII.

τυγχάνω (themes **τευχ-**, **τυχ-**, **τυχη-**, § 218), **τεύξομαι**, **ἔτυχον**, **τετύχηκα**: *hit*, with gen.; *happen*, *chance*, with supplementary partic. XIX.

Υ

ὕδωρ, **ὕδατος**, **τό**: *water; rain.* § 336. 4. XXXIII.

ὑμεῖς: *you* (pl.), see **σύ**, § 304.

ὑμέτερος, **ᾱ**, **ον** (**ὑμεῖς**): *your* (pl.), *yours.* § 126. X.

ὑπ-άρχω: begin, *support*, *serve*, with dat.

ὑπέρ, prep.: with GEN. *over*, *above*; *on behalf of*; with ACC. *over*, *beyond.* XXIX.

ὑπερβολή, **ῆς**, **ἡ** (**ὑπερ-βάλλω** *hurl over*, *pass over*): passing over, *pass.* XLIV.

ὑπηρέτης, **ου**, **ὁ**: *servant*, *helper*, *supporter.* XXXIX.

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι (**ἴσχω**, strong form of **ἔχω**, with pres. suffix **νε-**), **ὑποσχήσομαι**, **ὑπ-εσχόμην**, **ὑπ-έσχημαι**: *undertake*, *promise*, with inf. § 519. LII.

ὑπό, prep.: with GEN. *from under*, *by* (with pass. verb, § 390); *because of*, *from*; with DAT. *under*, *beneath* (with verbs of rest); with ACC. *under* (with verbs of motion). XXXIX.

ὑπο-ζύγιον, **ου**, **τό** (**ζυγόν** *yoke*): something *under the yoke*, *beast of burden.* XLVIII.

ὑπο-χωρέω (**χωρέω** *give place*, *withdraw*, **χωρήσω**, **ἐχώρησα**, **κεχώρηκα**, **κεχώρημαι**, **ἐχωρήθην**): *retreat.*

ὑποψίᾱ, **ᾱς**, **ἡ**: *suspicion.* XXIV.

ὑστεραῖος, **ᾱ**, **ον**: *later*, *following*; **τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ** (supply **ἡμέρᾳ**): *on the following day* (§ 180); **εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίᾱν** (**ἡμέρᾱν**): *on the morrow*, *on the following day* (§ 568). XV.

ὕστερος, **ᾱ**, **ον**: *later* (§ 361); **ὕστερον**, adv. acc.: *later.* XXXVI.

Φ

φαίνω (for **φαν** + *yω*, theme **φαν-**), **φανῶ**, **ἔφηνα**, **πέφηνα** (*have appeared*), **πέφασμαι**, **ἐφάνθην** (*was shown*) and **ἐφάνην** (*appeared*): *bring to light*, *show*; MID. and PASS. usually *appear.* In mid. and pass. the verb may take a supplementary partic. like **δῆλός ἐστι(ν)** (§ 449). §§ 541, 542, 644, 645. LV.

φάλαγξ, **αγγος**, **ἡ**: *line of battle*, *phalanx.* § 187. XVII.

φανερός, **ά**, **όν**: *visible*, *clear*, *evident.* § 449. XLV.

φᾱσί(ν): *they say:* see **φημί.** VIII.

φέρω (themes **φερ-**, **οἰ-**, **ἐνεκ-**, **ἐνεγκ-**), **οἴσω**, **ἤνεγκα** or **ἤνεγκον**, **ἐνήνοχα**, **ἐνήνεγμαι**, **ἠνέχθην**: *bear*, *carry*; *carry away*, *receive* (as pay). Cp. Lat. *ferō.* LX.

φεύγω (themes **φευγ-**, **φυγ-**), **φεύξομαι** or **φευξοῦμαι** (for **φευξέομαι**), **ἔφυγον**, **πέφευγα** (§ 445): *flee*, *flee from*, *avoid*, *shun.* Lat. *fugiō.* V.

φη-μί (theme **φα-**), **φήσω**, **ἔφησα**: *say*, *declare*; **οὔ φημι**: *deny*, *say . . . not* (§ 156. 1. *a*). With inf. §§ 110, 652. Cp. Lat. *fārī.* LX.

φησί(ν): *he says;* see **φημί.** VIII.

φθέγγομαι, **φθέξομαι**, **ἐφθεγξάμην**, **ἔφθεγμαι**: *shout.*

φιλίᾱ, **ᾱς**, **ἡ** (**φίλος**): *friendship.* XL.

φιλο-νῑκίᾱ, **ᾱς**, **ἡ** (**φίλος** and **νίκη**): striving for victory, *rivalry.*

φίλος, **η**, **ον**: *friendly.* Subst. **φίλος**, **ου**, **ὁ**: *friend.* § 48. II, VIII.

φοβερός, **ά**, **όν** (**φόβος**): *fearful*, *terrible.* Comp. **φοβερώτερος**, sup. **φοβερώτατος**, § 351. *b.* XXXV.

φοβερῶς, adv. (**φοβερός**): *fearfully.* Comp. **φοβερώτερον**, sup. **φοβερώτατα**, § 368. XXXVII.

φοβέω (φόβος), φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην: *frighten;* MID. with dep. aor. pass.: *be afraid, fear.* The mid. forms are common (**φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην**). LI.

φόβος, ου, ὁ: *fear.* VII.

Φρυγίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *Phrygia.* LVI.

φυγάς, άδος, ὁ (φεύγω): *fugitive, exile.* XVIII.

φυγή, ῆς, ἡ (φεύγω): *flight;* **φυγῇ**: *in flight.* XII.

φυλακή, ῆς, ἡ (φυλάττω): *guard, garrison;* **φυλακᾶς φυλάττειν**: *to do guard duty* (§ 181). VI.

φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ (φυλάττω): *guard, sentinel.* XVII.

φυλάττω (theme **φυλακ-**, § 182, NOTE), **φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι** (§ 462. 2), **ἐφυλάχθην**: *guard;* MID. *guard oneself, be on one's guard* (*against*, with acc.). XV, XXX.

φωνή, ῆς, ἡ (cp. **φα-, φημί**): *voice.* LIV.

X

χαλεπός, ή, όν: *hard, difficult, harsh, severe.* Comp. **χαλεπώτερος**, sup. **χαλεπώτατος**, § 351. *b.* XXXV.

Χάλος, ου, ὁ: *Chalus*, a river in Syria. XXVII.

χαράδρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *ravine.* XLIV.

χαρίζομαι (theme **χαριδ-**), **χαριοῦμαι** (§ 543), **ἐχαρισάμην, κεχάρισμαι**, dep. mid.: *show a favor* to somebody (dat.), *gratify, grant* something (acc.) to somebody (dat.) *as a favor.* Cp. **χάρις**. XXXIV.

χάρις, ιτος, ἡ: *grace, favor, gratitude;* **χάριν ἔχειν**: *to feel thankful*, with dat. §§ 195, 197. XVIII.

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: *hand.* § 336. 2. XXXIII.

Χειρίσοφος, ου, ὁ: *Cheirisophus*, a Spartan general. See pp. 264, 265. XII.

χίλιοι, αι, α: *thousand.* XVII.

χῖλός, οῦ, ὁ: *grass*, green *fodder.* XXI.

χιών, όνος, ἡ: *snow.* XXXIV.

χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, with pass. aor. **ἐχρήσθην**: *use, have the service of*, with dat. of means; cp. Lat. *ūtor* with abl. In contract forms **χράομαι** has **η** for **ᾱ** (§ 517). § 518. *a.* LII.

χρή (**ἐστί** is understood, but never expressed): *there is need, it behooves, it is necessary; one must.* Inf. **χρῆναι**. § 223. XX.

χρῆμα, ατος, τό (χράομαι): a thing of use; commonly pl., *possessions, money, wealth.* XIX.

χρήσιμος, η, ον or **χρήσιμος, ον (χράομαι)**: *useful.* XXI.

χρόνος, ου, ὁ: *time.* XXXIX.

χρῦσίον, ου, τό: *gold.* XIV.

χρῡσοῦς, ῆ, οῦν: *golden, of gold, gold.* § 609. L.

χώρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *country, place, post, land.* § 115. IX.

χωρίον, ου, τό: *place, stronghold.* IV.

χωρίς, adv.. *apart;* prep. with gen.: *apart from.* XXXVIII.

Ψ

ψῑλός, ή, όν: *bare, unprotected; light-armed.* XLVI.

Ω

ὦ, interj.: *O*, often preceding the voc. case. IV.

ὧδε, adv. (cp. **ὅδε**): *thus, as follows.* XXXVIII.

ᾠήθην: see **οἴομαι**.

ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν, pres. partic. of **εἰμί**: *being.* Declined in § 205.

ὥρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ: *season, hour; fit* or *proper time;* **ὥρᾱ (ἐστίν)**: *it is the proper time, it is high time,* with inf. (§ 230). Lat. *hōra.* XXI.

ὡς, (1) rel. adv. (cp. **ὅς**): introducing a comparison, *as;* with causal partic., *as, as if* (§§ 213. *a*, 401. *b*); with partic. of purpose, *as if, apparently* (§ 332); with numerals, *about;* of degree, *how, in what way* (§§ 312, 533); with sup. to express the very highest degree, cp. Lat. *quam* with sup.; thus **ὡς μακρότατος**: *as long as possible* (§ 358); **ὡς τάχιστα**: *as quickly as possible;* **ὡς μάλιστα**: *as much as possible* (§ 373). (2) Conj.: of time, *as, when;* introducing a quotation, *that* (§ 260); introducing a purpose clause, *in order that, that* (§§ 243, 268); introducing the inf. like **ὥστε**, *so as* (3) As prep. with acc.: *to,* used only with names of persons and **βασιλεύς**, *king* of Persia. XXII, XXIV, XXVI, XXVIII, XXXV.

ὡς = οὕτως. οὐδ' ὡς: *not even thus, i.e.* not even under these circumstances.

ὥσπερ, rel. adv.. *just as, as, as if, like.* XLI.

ὥστε, conj.: *so that, so as, therefore,* with indic. or inf. § 147. XII.

ὤφελον: *I ought,* used in wishes; see § 586.

ENGLISH INDEX

Supplementary to the Table of Contents, pp. 11–15.
References are to sections.

Accent, 12–19; of ā-stems, 94, 95; of o-stems, 57–59, 61; of monosyllables of the consonant declension, 189; of verbs, 44; of contracted syllables, 271. *b*, 504, 505.
Accusative case, summary of uses of, 658.
Agent, with pass. verb, 390, 458; with verbal in **-τέος**, 478.
Agreement, rules of, 53. *h*, *i*, *j*, *k*, 71, 135, 285.
Aorist indic. and inf., meaning of, 84.
Article, uses of, 54, 89, 143, 281 (footnote 1), 292, 427. See also Attributive position and Predicate position.
Asking, verbs of, 675.
Aspiration, 31.
Attraction of the rel. pron., 285.
Attributive phrases, 70.
Attributive position, 67, 69; of poss. adj., 126; of poss. gen., 72; of poss. gen. of reflexive pron., 379; of name of river, 178.
Augment, 77–79; verbs with irreg., 674.
Breathings, 3, 19.
Compound verbs, 128–132.
Conditional rel. protases, 248, 400, 417, 418.
Conditions, summary of forms of, 668.
Contraction, principles of, 271. *a*, 353. *a*, 498, 504, 507, 508, 516, 517, 528, 552.
Correlative pronouns and adverbs, 638.
Crasis, 30.
Dative case, summary of uses of, 660.
Deponent verbs, 316.
Deponent pass. verbs, 389; list of, 673.
Diaeresis, mark of, 19. *a*.
Double questions, 362, 363.
Elision, 29.
Enclitics, 21, 103–105, 305.
Euphonic rules: see Rules of euphony.
Genitive case, summary of uses of, 659.
Imperative mood, summary of uses of, 664; meaning of tenses of, 303.
Indicative mood in dependent clauses, summary of uses of, 661.
Indirect disc., 110, 156. 1, 260–262, 276, 277, 391, 441, 442, 449, 512, 519. *a*, 520, 530, 531, 546; summary of constructions of, 669.
Indirect questions, 343–345.
Infinitive, summary of uses of, 665; tenses of, 84, 110. *a*, 156. 1.
Liquids, 27.
Middle voice, 315; some verbs whose meanings change in the, 671.
Mutes, classes of, 27, 28.
Negations, emphatic, 428.
Negative with inf., 98, 110. *e*, 223. *c*; for neg. with other constructions, see **μή** and **οὐ** in Greek-Eng. Vocab.
Numerals, 421

Object clenses, after verbs of fearing, 438; after verbs of striving, 535 and *a*.
Optative mood, summary of uses of, 663; meaning of tenses of, 259.
Participles, summary of uses of, 666; meaning of tenses of, 214, 441.
Passive voice expressed by a change of verb, 672.
Personal endings of verbs, 639.
Personal use of **λέγεται**, 391; of **δοκέω**, 512.
Predicate position, 68, 69; of dem. pron., 176; of **μέσος**, 192; of **πᾶς**, 293; of poss. gen. of personal pron., 308.
Predicate subst. without the art., 107.
Principal parts of verbs, 485–487.
Proclitics, 20, 105.
Prohibitions, 309.
Purpose, how expressed, 667.
Questions: see Double questions, Indirect questions, **οὐ** in Greek-Eng. Vocab., and 33.
Recessive accent, 44.
Reduplication, 432, 447, 448.
Result clauses, 147.
Rules of euphony: **ν** before other consonants, 133; mutes before **σ**, 153; mutes before mutes, 387; mutes before **μ**, 462; **σ** dropped between two consonants, 463.
Subjunctive mood, summary of uses of, 662; meaning of tenses of, 240.
Suffixes used in forming nouns and adjectives, 491–496.
Syllables, division of, 8, 9, 132.
Synopsis of the **ω**-verb, 482–484.
Tenses, primary and secondary, 39.
Thematic vowel, 41.
Theme of verb, 40.
Vowel changes in themes, 488–490.
Wishes, 584–586.

Iambic Law, words of 2 syllables.
⏑ — = ⏑ ⏑ when accent falls immediately before or after ⏑ ⏑ / - ⏑ ⏑
⏑ ⏑ ⏑

All books are subject to recall after two weeks.
OLIN LIBRARY - CIRCULATION
DATE DUE

JUL 2 1 1993

PHASED
DETERIORATION

FRAGILE DOES NOT
CIRCULATE

MAR 2 5 1996

2001

GAYLORD PRINTED IN U.S.A.

FRAGILE DOES NOT
CIRCULATE

PHASED CONSERVATION